AS-002745
CSL
(132)

THE BĀBUR-NĀMA IN ENGLISH

(MEMOIRS OF BABUR).

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
GSL

OTHER ORIENTAL WORKS

HENRY BEVERIDGE* (*primus*), Advocate —

A Comprehensive History of India 3 vol. London and Glasgow, 1862.

HENRY BEVERIDGE* (*secundus*), Indian Civil Service, retired —

Akbar-nāma trs. (Persian), Calcutta, 1894–1921.

ANNETTE SUSANNAH BEVERIDGE —

Kaiser Akbar trs. (German), Calcutta, 1890.

Humayun-nāma Pers. text ed. and trs. RAS. 1902. (Out of print.)

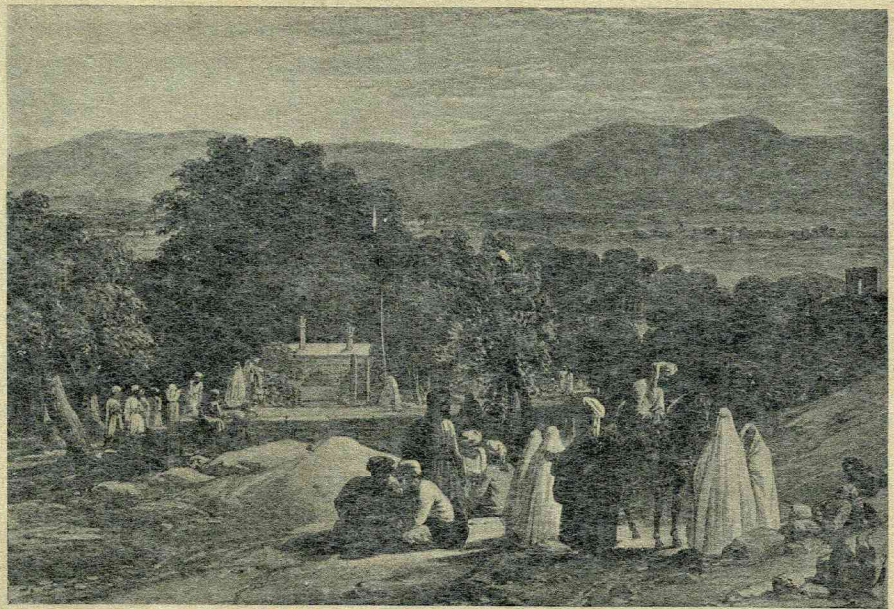
Bibi Brooke's **Key of the Hearts of Beginners** trs. (Persian), London, 1908.

Notes on the MSS. of the Bābur-nāma (Turki), *JRAS.* 1900–2–5–6–7–8–9.

The Bābur-nāma Facsimile edited and indexed for the Gibb Trust, London, 1905.

* *See* Bibliography of Dunfermline (Erskine Beveridge (*secundus*), LL.D.).

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार



View from above Babur's Grave and Shah-jahan's Mosque.

To face p. 367.]

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

The Bābur-nāma in English

(Memoirs of Bābur)

1599.

BY

Ẓahiru'd-dīn Muḥammad Bābur Pādshāh *Ghāzī*

Translated from the original Turki Text

BY

ANNETTE SUSANNAH BEVERIDGE.

Issued in Four Fasciculi :—Farghana 1912—Kabul 1914—Hindustan 1917—Preface, Indices, etc. 1921.

Vol. I

SOLD BY

LUZAC & CO., 40 Great Russell Street, London.

1921

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

GSL

This work
is dedicate to
Bābur's
fame.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार
GSL

HERTFORD
STEPHEN AUSTIN AND SONS, LIMITED

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE : Introductory.—Cap. I. Babur's exemplars in the Arts of peace, p. xxvii.—Cap. II. Problems of the mutilated Babur-nama, p. xxxi.—Cap. III. The Turki MSS. and work connecting with them, p. xxxviii.—Cap. IV. The Leyden and Erskine "Memoirs of Baber", p. lvii.—Postscript of Thanks, p. lx.

SECTION I.—FARGHĀNA

899 AH.—Oct. 12th 1493 to Oct. 2nd 1494 AD.—Bābur's age at the date of his accession—**Description of Farghāna** (pp. 1 to 12)—Death and biography of 'Umar Shaikh (13 to 19 and 24 to 28)—Biography of Yūnas *Chaghatāī* (18 to 24)—Bābur's uncles Aḥmad *Mīrān-shāhī* and Maḥmūd *Chaghatāī* (The Khān) invade Farghāna—Death and biography of Aḥmad—Misdoings of his successor, his brother Maḥmūd 1–42

900 AH.—Oct. 2nd 1494 to Sep. 21st 1495 AD.—Invasion of Farghāna continued — Bābur's adoption of orthodox observance—Death and biography of Maḥmūd *Mīrān-shāhī* —Samarkand affairs—revolt of Ibrāhīm *Sārū* defeated—Bābur visits The Khān in Tāshkint—tribute collected from the Jīgrak tribe—expedition into Aūrātīpā . . 43–56

901 AH.—Sep. 21st 1495 to Sep. 9th 1496 AD.—Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā's* campaign against Khusrau Shāh—Bābur receives Aūzbeg sulṭāns—Revolt of the Tarkhāns in Samarkand—Bābur's first move for Samarkand . . . 57–64

902 AH.—Sep. 9th 1496 to Aug. 30th 1497 AD.—Bābur's second move for Samarkand—Dissensions of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* and his sons—Dissensions between Khusrau Shāh and Mas'ūd *Mīrān-shāhī* 65–71

903 AH.—Aug. 30th 1497 to Aug. 19th 1498 AD.—Bābur's second attempt on Samarkand is successful—**Description of Samarkand** (pp. 74 to 86)—his action there—Mughūls demand and besiege Andijān for Bābur's half-brother Jahāngīr—his mother and friends entreat his help—he leaves Samarkand in his cousin 'Alī's hands—has a relapse of illness on the road and is believed dying—on the news Andijān is surrendered by a Mughūl to the Mughūl faction —Having lost Samarkand and Andijān, Bābur is hospitably entertained by the Khujandīs—he is forced to dismiss Khalīfa—The Khān (his uncle) moves to help him but is

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

GSL

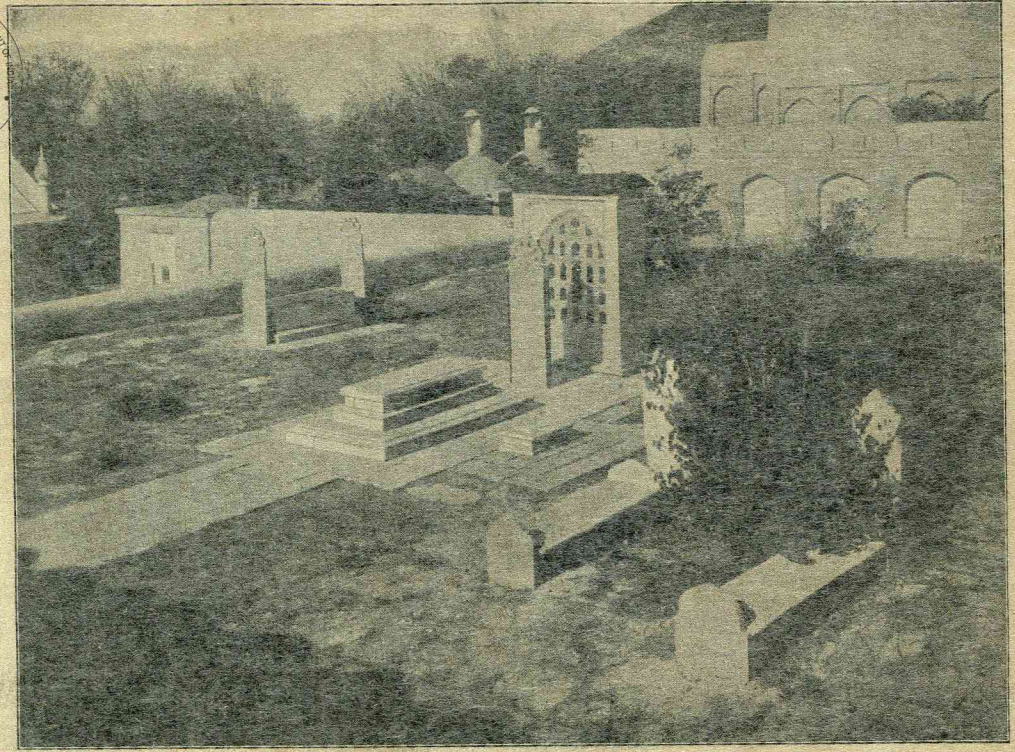
persuaded to retire—many followers go to Andijān where were their families—he is left with 200–300 men—his mother and grandmother and the families of his men sent to him in Khujand—he is distressed to tears—The Khān gives help against Samarkand but his troops turn back on news of Shaibānī—Bābur returns to Khujand—speaks of his ambition to rule—goes in person to ask The Khān's help to regain Andijān—his force being insufficient, he goes back to Khujand—Affairs of Khusrau Shāh and the Tīmūrid Mīrzās—Affairs of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* and his sons —Khusrau Shāh blinds Bābur's cousin Mas'ūd—Bābur curses the criminal 72–96

904 AH.—Aug. 19th 1498 to Aug. 8th 1499 AD.—Bābur borrows Pashāghar for the winter and leaves Khujand—rides 70–80 miles with fever—a winter's tug-of-war with Samarkand—his force insufficient, he goes back to Khujand—unwilling to burthen it longer, goes into the summer-pastures of Aūrātīpā—invited to Marghīnān by his mother's uncle 'Alī-dost—a joyful rush over some 145 miles — near Marghīnān prudent anxieties arise and are stilled—he is admitted to Marghīnān on terms—is attacked vainly by the Mughūl faction—accretions to his force—helped by The Khān—the Mughūls defeated near Akhsī—Andijān recovered—Mughūls renew revolt—Bābur's troops beaten by Mughūls—Tambal attempts Andijān . . 97–107

905 AH.—Aug. 8th 1499 to July 28th 1500 AD.—Bābur's campaign against Aḥmad *Tambal* and the Mughūl faction—he takes Māzū—Khusrau Shāh murders Bāī-sunghar *Mīrān-shāhī*—Biography of the Mīrzā—Bābur wins his first ranged battle, from Tambal supporting Jahāngīr, at Khūbān—winter-quarters—minor successes—the winter-camp broken up by Qambar-i-'alī's taking leave—Bābur returns to Andijān—The Khān persuaded by Tambal's kinsmen in his service to support Jahāngīr—his troops retire before Bābur—Bābur and Tambal again opposed—Qambar-i-'alī again gives trouble—minor action and an accommodation made without Bābur's wish—terms of the accommodation—The self-aggrandizement of 'Alī-dost *Mughūl*—Bābur's first marriage—a personal episode—Samarkand affairs—'Alī quarrels with the Tarkhāns—The Khān sends troops against Samarkand—Mīrzā Khān invited there by a Tarkhān—'Alī defeats The Khān's Mughūls—Bābur invited to Samarkand —prepares to start and gives Jahāngīr rendezvous for the

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · संस्कृत भवन · संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

GSL



[To face p. 445.]

Babur's Grave.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

attempt—Tambal's brother takes Aūsh—Bābur leaves this lesser matter aside and marches for Samarkand—Qambar-i-'alī punishes himself—Shaibānī reported to be moving on Bukhārā—Samarkand begs wait on Bābur—the end of 'Alī-dost — Bābur has news of Shaibānī's approach to Samarkand and goes to Kesh — hears there that 'Alī's Aūzbeg mother had given Samarkand to Shaibānī on condition of his marriage with herself . . 108–126

906 AH.—July 28th 1500 to July 17th 1501 AD.—Shaibānī murders 'Alī — a son and two grandsons of Aḥrārī's murdered — Bābur leaves Kesh with a number of the Samarkand begs—is landless and isolated—takes a perilous mountain journey back into Aūrātīpā—comments on the stinginess shewn to himself by Khusrau Shāh and another —consultation and resolve to attempt Samarkand—Bābur's dream-vision of success—he takes the town by a surprise attack—compares this capture with Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā's* of Herī—his affairs in good position—birth of his first child—his summons for help to keep the Aūzbeg down—literary matters — his force of 240 grows to allow him to face Shaibānī at Sar-i-pul—the battle and his defeat—Mughūls help his losses—he is besieged in Samarkand—a long blockade—great privation—no help from any quarter—Futile proceedings of Tambal and The Khān . 127–145

907 AH.—July 17th 1501 to July 7th 1502 AD.—Bābur surrenders Samarkand—his sister Khān-zāda is married by Shaibānī—incidents of his escape to Dīzak—his 4 or 5 escapes from peril to safety and ease—goes to Dikh-kat in Aūrātīpā—incidents of his stay there—his wanderings bare-head, bare-foot—sends gifts to Jahāngīr, and to Tambal a sword which later wounds himself — arrival from Samarkand of the families and a few hungry followers—Shaibānī Khān raids in The Khān's country—Bābur rides after him fruitlessly—Death of Nuyān Kūkūldāsh—Bābur's grief for his friend—he retires to the Zar-afshān valley before Shaibānī—reflects on the futility of his wanderings and goes to The Khān in Tāshkīnt—Mughūl conspiracy against Tambal *Mughūl*—Bābur submits verses to The Khān and comments on his uncle's scant study of poetic idiom—The Khān rides out against Tambal—his standards acclaimed and his army numbered—of the *Chīngīz-tūrā*—quarrel of Chīrās and Begchīk chiefs for the post of danger—Hunting—Khujand-river reached 146–156

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

908 AH.—July 7th 1502 to June 26th 1503 AD.—Bābur comments on The Khān's unprofitable move—his poverty and despair in Tāshkīnt—his resolve to go to Khitāī and ruse for getting away—his thought for his mother—his plan not accepted by The Khān and Shāh Begīm—The Younger Khān (Aḥmad) arrives from Kāshghar—is met by Bābur—a half-night's family talk—gifts to Bābur—the meeting of the two Khāns—Aḥmad's characteristics and his opinion of various weapons—The Khāns march into Farghāna against Jahāngīr's supporter Tambal—they number their force—Bābur detached against Aūsh, takes it and has great accretions of following—An attempt to take Andijān frustrated by mistake in a pass-word—Author's Note on pass-words—a second attempt foiled by the over-caution of experienced begs—is surprised in his bivouac by Tambal—face to face with Tambal—his new *gosha-gīr*—his dwindling company—wounded—left alone, is struck by his gift-sword—escapes to Aūsh—The Khān moves from Kāsān against Andijān—his disposition of Bābur's lands—Qambar-i-'alī's counsel to Bābur rejected—Bābur is treated by the Younger Khān's surgeon—tales of Mughūl surgery—Qambar-i-'alī flees to Tambal in fear through his unacceptable counsel—Bābur moves for Akhsī—a lost chance—minor actions—an episode of Pāp—The Khān's do not take Andijān—Bābur invited into Akhsī—Tambal's brother Bāyazīd joins him with Nāṣir *Mīrān-shāhī*—Tambal asks help from Shaibānī—On news of Shaibānī's consent the Khāns retire from Andijān—Bābur's affairs in Akhsī—he attempts to defend it—incidents of the defence—Bābur wounded—unequal strength of the opponents—he flees with 20–30 men—incidents of the flight—Bābur left alone—is overtaken by two foes—his perilous position—a messenger arrives from Tambal's brother Bāyazīd—Bābur expecting death, quotes Niẓāmī—(the narrative breaks off in the middle of the verse) 157–182

Translator's Note.—908 to 909 AH.—1503 to 1504 AD.—Bābur will have been rescued—is with The Khāns in the battle and defeat by Shaibānī at Archīān—takes refuge in the Asfara hills—there spends a year in misery and poverty—events in Farghāna and Tāshkīnt—Shaibānī sends the Mughūl horde back to Kāshgar—his disposition of the women of The Khān's family—Bābur plans to go to Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* in Khurāsān—changes his aim for Kābūl 182–185

[End of Translator's Note.]

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

SECTION II.—KĀBUL

910 AH.—June 14th 1504 to June 4th 1505 AD.—Bābur halts on an alp of Ḥiṣār—enters his 22nd (lunar) year—delays his march in hope of adherents—writes a second time of the stinginess of Khusrau Shāh to himself—recalls Sherīm Taghāī *Mughūl's* earlier waverings in support—is joined by Khusrau Shāh's brother Bāqī Beg—they start for Kābul—Accretions of force—their families left in Fort Ajar (Kāhmard)—Jahāngīr marries a cousin—Bāqī advises his dismissal to Khurāsān—Bābur is loyal to his half-brother—Jahāngīr is seduced, later, by disloyal Begchīk chiefs—Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* summons help against Shaibānī—Despair in Bābur's party at Ḥusain's plan of "defence, not attack"—Qambar-i-'alī dismissed to please Bāqī—Khusrau makes abject submission to Bābur—Mīrzā Khān demands vengeance on him—Khusrau's submission having been on terms, he is let go free—Bābur resumes his march—first sees Canopus—is joined by tribesmen—Khusrau's brother Walī flees to the Aūzbegs and is executed—Risks run by the families now fetched from Kāhmard—Kābul surrendered to Bābur by Muqīm *Arghūn*—Muqīm's family protected—**Description of Kābul** (pp. 199 to 277)—Muqīm leaves for Qandahār—Allotment of fiefs—Excess levy in grain—Foray on the Sulṭān Mas'ūdī Hazāra—Bābur's first move for Hindūstān—Khaibar traversed—Bīgrām visited—Bāqī Beg prevents crossing the Sind—and persuades for Kohāt—A plan for Bangash, Bannū and thence return to Kābul—Yār-i-husain *Daryā-khānī* asks for permission to raise a force for Bābur, east of the Sind—Move to Thāl, Bannū, and the Dasht—return route varied without consulting Bābur—Pīr Kānū's tomb visited—through the Pawat-pass into Dūkī—horse-food fails—baggage left behind—men of all conditions walk to Ghaznī—spectacle of the Āb-istāda—mirage and birds—Jahāngīr is Bābur's host in Ghaznī—heavy floods—Kābul reached after a disastrous expedition of four months—Nāṣir's misconduct abetted by two Begchīk chiefs—he and they flee into Badakhshān—Khusrau Shāh's schemes fail in Herāt—imbroglio between him and Nāṣir—Shaibānī attempts Ḥiṣār but abandons the siege on his brother's death—Khusrau attempts Ḥiṣār and is there killed—his followers revolt against Bābur—his death quenches the fire of sedition . . . 188–245

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

911 AH.—June 4th 1505 to May 24th 1506 AD.—Death of Bābur's mother—Bābur's illness stops a move for Qandahār —an earth-quake—campaign against and capture of Qalāt-i-ghilzāī — Bāqī Beg dismissed towards Hindūstān.— murdered in the Khaibar—Turkmān Hazāra raided— Nijr-aū tribute collected.—Jahāngīr misbehaves and runs away—Bābur summoned by Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* against Shaibānī—Shaibānī takes Khwārizm and Chīn Sūfī is killed—Death and biography of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (256 to 292)—his burial and joint-successors 246–293

912 AH.—May 24th 1506 to May 13th 1507 AD.—Bābur, without news of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā's* death, obeys his summons and leaves Kābul—Jahāngīr flees from Bābur's route—Nāṣir defeats Shaibānī's men in Badakhshān—Bābur, while in Kāhmard, hears of Ḥusain's death—continues his march with anxious thought for the Tīmūrid dynasty—Jahāngīr waits on him and accompanies him to Herāt—Co-alition of Khurāsān Mīrzās against Shaibānī—their meeting with Bābur—etiquette of Bābur's reception—an entertainment to him—of the *Chingīz-tūrā*—Bābur claims the ceremonial observance due to his military achievements—entertainments and Bābur's obedience to Muhammadan Law against wine—his reflections on the Mīrzās—difficulties of winter-plans (300, 307)—he sees the sights of Herī—visits the Begīms—the ceremonies observed—tells of his hitherto abstention from wine and of his present inclination to drink it—Qāsim Beg's interference with those pressing Bābur to break the Law—Bābur's poor carving—engages Ma'ṣūma in marriage—leaves for Kābul—certain retainers stay behind—a perilous journey through snow to a wrong pass out of the Herīrūd valley—arrival of the party in Yaka-aūlāng—joy in their safety and comfort—Shibr-tū traversed into Ghūr-bund—Turkmān Hazāra raided—News reaches Bābur of conspiracy in Kābul to put Mīrzā Khān in his place—Bābur concerts plans with the loyal Kābul garrison —moves on through snow and in terrible cold—attacks and defeats the rebels—narrowly escaped death—attributes his safety to prayer—deals mercifully, from family considerations, with the rebel chiefs—reflects on their behaviour to him who has protected them—asserts that his only aim is to write the truth — letters-of-victory sent out — Muh. Ḥusain *Dūghlāt* and Mīrzā Khān banished—Spring excursion to Koh-dāman—Nāṣir, driven from Badakhshān, takes refuge with Bābur 294–322

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

BĀBUR IN PRAYER, DEVOTING HIMSELF FOR HIS SON.

To face p. 702.

913 AH.—May 13th 1507 to May 2nd 1508 AD.—Raid on the Ghiljī Afghāns—separation of the Fifth (*Khams*)—wild-ass hunting—Shaibānī moves against Khurāsān—Irresolution of the Tīmūrid Mīrzās—Infatuation of Ẓū'n-nūn *Arghūn*—Shaibānī takes Herī—his doings there—Defeat and death of two *Bāī-qarās*—The Arghūns in Qandahār make overtures to Bābur—he starts to join them against Shaibānī—meets Ma'ṣūma in Ghaznī on her way to Kābul—spares Hindūstān traders—meets Jahāngīr's widow and infant-son coming from Herāt—The Arghūn chiefs provoke attack on Qandahār—Bābur's army—organization and terminology—wins the battle of Qandahār and enters the fort—its spoils—Nāṣir put in command—Bābur returns to Kābul rich in goods and fame—marries Ma'ṣūma—Shaibānī lays siege to Qandahār—Alarm in Kābul at his approach—Mīrzā Khān and Shāh Begīm betake themselves to Badakhshān—Bābur sets out for Hindūstān leaving 'Abdu'r-razzāq in Kābul—Afghān highwaymen—A raid for food—Māhchuchak's marriage—Hindūstān plan abandoned—Nūr-gal and Kūnār visited—News of Shaibānī's withdrawal from Qandahār—Bābur returns to Kābul—gives Ghaznī to Nāṣir—assumes the title of Pādshāh—Birth of Humāyūn, feast and chronogram 323–344

914 AH.—May 2nd 1508 to April 21st 1509 AD.—Raid on the Mahmand Afghāns—Seditious offenders reprieved—Khusrau Shāh's former retainers march off from Kābul—'Abdu'r-razzāq comes from his district to near Kābul—not known to have joined the rebels—earlier hints to Bābur of this "incredible" rebellion—later warnings of an immediate rising 345–346

Translator's Note.—914 to 925 AH.—1508 to 1519 AD.—Date of composition of preceding narrative—Loss of matter here seems partly or wholly due to Bābur's death—Sources helping to fill the Gap—Events of the remainder of 914 AH.—The mutiny swiftly quelled—Bābur's five-fold victory over hostile champions—Sa'īd *Chaghatāī* takes refuge with him in a quiet Kābul—Shaibānī's murders of Chaghatāī and Dūghlāt chiefs 347–366

915 AH.—April 21st 1509 to April 11th 1510 AD.—Beginning of hostilities between Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī* and Shaibānī—Ḥaidar *Dūghlāt* takes refuge with Bābur.

916 AH.—April 11th 1510 to March 31st 1511 AD.—Ismā'īl defeats the Aūzbegs near Merv—Shaibānī is killed—20,000

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
xiv
GSL

Mughūls he had migrated to Khurāsān, return to near Qūndūz—Mīrzā Khān invites Bābur to join him against the Aūzbegs—Bābur goes to Qūndūz—The 20,000 Mughūls proffer allegiance to their hereditary Khān Sa'īd—they propose to set Bābur aside—Sa'īd's worthy rejection of the proposal—Bābur makes Sa'īd The Khān of the Mughūls and sends him and his Mughūls into Farghāna—significance of Bābur's words, "I made him Khān"—Bābur's first attempt on Ḥiṣār where were Ḥamza and Mahdī *Aūzbeg*—beginning of his disastrous intercourse with Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī*—Ismā'īl sends Khān-zāda Begīm back to him—with thanks for the courtesy, Bābur asks help against the Aūzbeg—it is promised under dangerous conditions.

917 AH.—March 31st 1511 to March 19th 1512 AD.—Bābur's second attempt on Ḥiṣār—wins the Battle of Pul-i-sangīn—puts Ḥamza and Mahdī to death—his Persian reinforcement and its perilous cost—The Aūzbegs are swept across the Zar-afshān—The Persians are dismissed from Bukhārā—Bābur occupies Samarkand after a nine-year's absence—he gives Kābul to Nāṣir—his difficult position in relation to the Shī'a Ismā'īl—Ismā'īl sends Najm Ṣānī to bring him to order.

918 AH.—March 19th 1512 to March 9th 1513 AD.—The Aūzbegs return to the attack—'Ubaid's vow—his defeat of Bābur at Kūl-i-malik—Bābur flees from Samarkand to Ḥiṣār—his pursuers retire—Najm Ṣānī from Balkh gives him rendezvous at Tīrmīẓ—the two move for Bukhārā—Najm perpetrates the massacre of Qarshī—Bābur is helpless to prevent it—Najm crosses the Zar-afshān to a disadvantageous position—is defeated and slain—Bābur, his reserve, does not fight—his abstention made a reproach at the Persian Court against his son Humāyūn (1544 AD. ?)—his arrow-sped message to the Aūzbeg camp—in Ḥiṣār, he is attacked suddenly by Mughūls—he escapes to Qūndūz—the retributive misfortunes of Ḥisār—Ḥaidar on Mughūls—Ayūb *Begchīk's* death-bed repentance for his treachery to Bābur—Ḥaidar returns to his kinsfolk in Kāshghar.

919 AH.—March 9th 1513 to Feb. 26th 1514 AD.—Bābur may have spent the year in Khishm—Ismā'īl takes Balkh from the Aūzbegs—surmised bearing of the capture on his later action.

920 AH.—Feb. 26th 1514 to Feb. 15th 1515 AD.—Ḥaidar's account of Bābur's misery, patience and courtesy this year

in Qūndūz—Bābur returns to Kābul—his daughter Gulrang is born in Khwāst—he is welcomed by Nāṣir who goes back to Ghaznī.

921 AH.—Feb. 15th 1515 to Feb. 5th 1516 AD.—Death of Nāṣir—Riot in Ghaznī led by Sherīm Ṭaghāī *Mughūl*—quiet restored — many rebels flee to Kāshghar—Sherīm refused harbourage by Sa'īd Khān and seeks Bābur's protection—Ḥaidar's comment on Bābur's benevolence.

922 AH.—Feb. 5th 1516 to Jan. 24th 1517 AD.—A quiet year in Kābul apparently—Birth of 'Askarī.

923 AH.—Jan. 24th 1517 to Jan. 13th 1518 AD.—Bābur visits Balkh—Khwānd-amīr's account of the affairs of Muhammad -i-zamān Mīrza *Bāī-qarā*—Bābur pursues the Mīrzā—has him brought to Kābul—gives him his daughter Ma'ṣūma in marriage—An expedition to Qandahār returns fruitless, on account of his illness—Shāh Beg's views on Bābur's persistent attempts on Qandahār—Shāh Beg's imprisonment and release by his slave Saṃbal's means.

924 AH.—Jan. 13th 1518 to Jan. 3rd 1519 AD.—Shāh Beg's son Ḥasan flees to Bābur—stays two years—date of his return to his father—Bābur begins a campaign in Bajaur against Ḥaidar-i-'alī *Bajaurī*—takes two forts.

[End of Translator's Note.]

925 AH.—Jan. 3rd to Dec. 23rd 1519 AD.—Bābur takes the Fort of Bajaur—massacres its people as false to Islām—Khwāja Kalān made its Commandant — an excessive impost in grain — a raid for corn — Māhīm's adoption of Dil-dār's unborn child—Bābur marries Bībī Mubārika—Repopulation of the Fort of Bajaur—Expedition against Afghān tribesmen—Destruction of the tomb of a heretic qalandar —Bābur first crosses the Sind—his long-cherished desire for Hindūstān—the ford of the Sind—the Koh-i-jūd (Salt-range) — his regard for Bhīra, Khūsh-āb, Chīn-ab and Chīnīūt as earlier possessions of the Turk, now therefore his own—the Kalda-kahār lake and subsequent location on it of the Bāgh-i-ṣafā—Assurance of safety sent to Bhīra as a Turk possession—History of Bhīra *etc.* as Turk possessions—Author's Note on Tātār Khān *Yūsuf-khail*—envoys sent to Balūchīs in Bhīra—heavy floods in camp—Offenders against Bhīra people punished—Agreed tribute collected —Envoy sent to ask from Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* the lands once dependent on the Turk—Daulat Khān arrests and keeps

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
xvi

GSL

the envoy who goes back later to Bābur *re infectâ*—news of Hind-āl's birth and cause of his name—description of a drinking-party—Tātār Khān *Kakar* compels Minūchihr Khān *Turk*, going to wait on Bābur, to become his son-in-law—Account of the Kakars—excursions and drinking-parties—Bhīra appointments—action taken against Hātī Khān *Kakar*—Description and capture of Parhāla—Bābur sees the sambal plant—a tiger killed—Gūr-khattrī visited—Loss of a clever hawk—Khaibar traversed—mid-day halt in the Bāgh-i-wafā—Qarā-tū garden visited—News of Shāh Beg's capture of Kāhān—Bābur's boys carried out in haste to meet him—wine-parties—Death and biography of Dost Beg—Arrival of Sulṭānīm *Bāī-qarā* and ceremonies observed on meeting her — A long-imprisoned traitor released—Excursion to Koh-dāman—Hindū Beg abandons Bhīra — Bābur has (intermittent) fever — Visitors from Khwāst—Yūsuf-zāī chiefs wait on Bābur—Khalīfa's son sends a wedding-gift — Bābur's amusement when illness keeps him from an entertainment—treatment of his illness—A Thursday reading of theology (*see* Add. Note p. 401)—Swimming—Envoy from Mīrzā Khān—Tribesmen allowed to leave Kābul for wider grazing-grounds—Bābur sends his first *Dīwān* to Pūlād *Aūzbeg* in Samarkand—Arrivals and departures—Punitive expedition against the 'Abdu'r-raḥman Afghāns—punishment threatened and inflicted (p. 405) on defaulters in help to an out-matched man—Description of the Rustam-maidān—return to Kābul—Excursion to Koh-dāman — snake incident — Tramontane begs warned for service—fish-drugging—Bābur's non-pressure to drink, on an abstainer—wine-party—misadventure on a raft—tooth-picks gathered—A new retainer—Bābur shaves his head—Hind-āl's guardian appointed—Aūzbeg raiders defeated in Badakhshān — Various arrivals — Yūsuf-zāī campaign — Bābur dislocates his wrist—*Varia*—Dilah-zāk chiefs wait on him—Plan to store corn in Hash-nagar—Incidents of the road—Khaibar traversed—Bārā urged on Bābur as a place for corn—Kābul river forded at Bārā—little corn found and the Hash-nagar plan foiled—Plan to store Pashāwar Fort — return to 'Alī-masjid — News of an invasion of Badakhshān hurries Bābur back through the Khaibar—The Khiẓr-khail Afghāns punished — Bābur first writes since dislocating his wrist—The beauty and fruits of the Bāgh-i-wafā—incidents of the return march to Kābul—Excursion to the Koh-dāman—beauty of its harvest crops and autumnal

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

trees—a line offensive to Khalīfa (*see* Add. Note p. 416)—Humāyūn makes a good shot—Beauty of the harvest near Istālīf and in the Bāgh-i-pādshāhī—Return to Kābul—Bābur receives a white falcon in gift—pays a visit of consolation to an ashamed drinker—Arrivals various—he finishes copying 'Alī-sher's four *Dīwāns*—An order to exclude from future parties those who become drunk—Bābur starts for Lāmghān 367–419

926 AH.—Dec. 23rd 1519 to Dec. 12th 1520 AD.—Excursion to Koh-dāman and Kohistān—incidents of the road—Bābur shoots with an easy bow, for the first time after the dislocation of his wrist—Nijr-aū tribute fixed—Excursions in Lāmghān—Kāfir head-men bring goat-skins of wine—Halt in the Bāgh-i-wafā—its oranges, beauty and charm—Bābur records his wish and intention to return to obedience in his 40th year and his consequent excess in wine as the end approached—composes an air—visits Nūr-valley—relieves Kwāja Kalān in Bajaur—teaches a talisman to stop rain—his opinion of the ill-taste and disgusting intoxication of beer—his reason for summoning Khwāja Kalān, and trenchant words to Shāh Ḥasan relieving him—an old beggar loaded with gifts—the raft strikes a rock—Description of the Kīndīr spring—Fish taken from fish-ponds—Hunting—Accident to a tooth—Fishing with a net—A murderer made over to the avengers of blood—A Qoran chapter read and start made for Kābul—(here the diary breaks off). 420–425

Translator's Note.—926 to 932 AH.—1520 to 1525 AD.—Bābur's activities in the Gap—missing matter less interesting than that lost in the previous one—its distinctive mark is biographical—*Dramatis personæ*—Sources of information 426–444

926 AH.—Dec. 23rd 1519 to Dec. 12th 1520 AD.—Bābur's five expeditions into Hindūstān—this year's cut short by menace from Qandahār—Shāh Beg's position—particulars of his menace not ascertained—**Description of Qandahār-fort**—Bābur's various sieges—this year's raised because of pestilence within the walls—Shāh Beg pushes out into Sind.

927 AH.—Dec. 12th 1520 to Dec. 1st 1521 AD.—Two accounts of this year's siege of Qandahār—(i) that of the *Ḥabību's-siyar*—(ii) that of the *Tārīkh-i-sind*—concerning the dates involved—Mīrzā Khān's death.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · xviii · GSL

928 AH.—Dec. 1st 1521 to Nov. 20th 1522 AD.—Bābur and Māhīm visit Humāyūn in Badakhshān—Expedition to Qandahār—of the duel between Bābur and Shāh Beg—the Chihil-zīna monument of victory—Death of Shāh Beg and its date—Bābur's literary work down to this year.

929 AH.—Nov. 20th 1522 to Nov. 10th 1523 AD.—Hindūstān affairs—Daulat Khān *Lūdī*, Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* and Bābur—Dilawār (son of Daulat Khān) goes to Kābul and asks help against Ibrāhīm—Bābur prays for a sign of victory—prepares for the expedition—'Ālam Khān *Lūdī* (apparently in this year) goes to Kābul and asks Bābur's help against his nephew Ibrāhīm—Birth of Gul-badan.

930 AH.—Nov. 10th 1523 to Oct. 27th 1524 AD.—Bābur's fourth expedition into Hindūstān—differs from earlier ones by its concert with malcontents in the country—Bābur defeats Bihār Khān *Lūdī* near Lāhor—Lāhor occupied—Dībalpūr stormed, plundered and its people massacred—Bābur moves onward from Sihrind but returns on news of Daulat Khān's doings—there may have been also news of Aūzbeg threat to Balkh—The Panj-āb garrison—Death of Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī* and of Shāh Beg—Bābur turns for Kābul—plants bananas in the Bāgh-i-wafā.

931 AH.—Oct. 29th 1524 to Oct. 18th 1525 AD.—Daulat Khān's large resources—he defeats 'Ālam Khān at Dībalpūr—'Ālam Khān flees to Kābul and again asks help—Bābur's conditions of reinforcement—'Ālam Khān's subsequent proceedings detailed *s.a.* 932 AH.—Bābur promises to follow him speedily—is summoned to Balkh by its Aūzbeg menace—his arrival raises the siege—he returns to Kābul in time for his start to Hindūstān in 932 . . . 426–444

[End of Translator's Note.]

SECTION III.—HINDŪSTĀN

932 AH.—Oct. 18th 1525 to Oct. 8th 1526 AD.—Bābur starts on his fifth expedition into Hindūstān—is attacked by illness at Gandamak—Humāyūn is late in coming in from Badakhshān—Verse-making on the Kābul-river—Bābur makes a satirical verse such as he had forsworn when writing the *Mubīn*—attributes a relapse of illness to his breach of vow—renews his oath—Fine spectacle of the lighted camp at Alī-masjid—Hunting near Bīgrām—Preparations for ferrying the Sind—Order to make a list of all with the army,

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

and to count them up—continuation of illness—Orders sent to the Lāhor begs to delay engagement till Bābur arrived —The Sind ferried (for the first time) and the army tale declared as 12,000 good and bad—The eastward march—unexpected ice—Rendezvous made with the Lāhor begs—Jat and Gūjūr thieves—a courier sent again to the begs—News that 'Ālam Khān had let Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* defeat him near Dihlī—particulars of the engagement—he takes refuge with Bābur—The Lāhor begs announce their arrival close at hand—Ibrāhīm's troops retire before Bābur's march—Daulat Khān *Lūdī* surrenders Milwat (Malot)—waits on Bābur and is reproached—Ghāzī Khān's abandonment of his family censured—Jaswān-valley—Ghāzī Khān pursued —Bābur advances against Ibrāhīm *Lūdī*—his estimate of his adversary's strength—'Ālam Khān's return destitute to Bābur—Bābur's march leads towards Pānīpat—Humāyūn's first affair succeeds—reiterated news of Ibrāhīm's approach —Bābur's success in a minor encounter—he arrays and counts his effective force—finds it under the estimate—orders that every man in the army shall collect carts towards Rūmī defence—700 carts brought in—account of the defences of the camp close to the village of Pānīpat—Bābur on the futility of fear; his excuses for the fearful in his army—his estimate of Ibrāhīm's army and of its higher possible numbers—Author's Note on the Aūzbeg chiefs in Hisār (918 AH. 1512 AD.)—Preliminary encounters—Battle and victory of Pānīpat—Ibrāhīm's body found—Dihlī and Āgra occupied by Bābur — he makes the circuit of a Farghāna-born ruler in Dihlī—visits other tombs and sees sights—halts opposite Tūghlūqābād—the *khuṭba* read for him in Dihlī—he goes to Āgra—Author's Note on rulers in Gūālīār—The (Koh-i-nūr) diamond given by the Gūālīār family to Humāyūn — Bābur's dealings with Ibrāhīm's mother and her entourage—**Description of Hindūstān** (pp. 478 to 521)—Revenues of Hind (p. 521)—Āgra treasure distributed—local disaffection to Bābur—discontent in his army at remaining in Hindūstān—he sets the position forth to his Council—Khwāja Kalān decides to leave—his and Bābur's verses on his desertion—Bābur's force grows locally —action begun against rebels to Ibrāhīm in the East—Gifts made to officers, and postings various—Bīban *Jalwānī* revolts and is beaten—The Mīr of Bīāna warned—Mention of Rānā Sangā's failure in his promise to act with Bābur—Sangā's present action—Decision in Council to leave Sangā

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

aside and to march to the East—Humāyūn leads out the army—Bābur makes garden, well and mosque near Āgra—Progress of Humāyūn's campaign—News of the Aūzbegs in Balkh and Khurāsān—Affairs of Gujrāt . . 445–535

933 AH.—Oct. 8th 1526 to Sep. 27th 1527 AD.—Birth announced of Bābur's son Fārūq—incomplete success in casting a large mortar—*Varia*—Humāyūn summoned from the East to act against Sangā—Plundering expedition towards Biāna—Tahangar, Gūālīār and Dūlpūr obtained—Ḥamīd Khān *Sārang-khānī* defeated—Arrival of a Persian embassy—Ibrāhīm's mother tries to poison Bābur—**Copy of Bābur's letter detailing the affair** — his dealings with the poisoner and her agents—Humāyūn's return to Āgra—Khw. Dost-i-khawānd's arrival from Kābul — Reiterated news of the approach of Rānā Sangā—Bābur sends an advance force to Biāna—Ḥasan Khān *Miwātī*—Tramontane matters disloyal to Bābur—Trial-test of the large mortar (p. 536)—Bābur leaves Āgra to oppose Sangā—adverse encounter with Sangā by Biāna garrison—Alarming reports of Rājpūt prowess—Spadesmen sent ahead to dig wells in Madhākūr *pargana*—Bābur halts there—arrays and moves to Sīkrī—various joinings and scoutings—discomfiture of a party reconnoitring from Sīkrī—the reinforcement also overcome—The enemy retires at sight of a larger troop from Bābur—defence of the Sīkrī camp Rūmī fashion, with ditch besides—Continued praise of Rājpūt prowess—Further defence of the camp made to hearten Bābur's men—20–25 days spent in the above preparations—arrival of 500 men from Kābul—also of Muḥ. Sharīf an astrologer who augurs ill for Bābur's success—Archers collected and Mīwāt overrun—Bābur reflects that he had always wished to cease from the sin of wine — verses about his then position — resolves to renounce wine—details of the destruction of wine and precious vessels, and of the building of a commemorative well and alms-house—his oath to remit a tax if victorious is recalled to him—he remits the *tamghā*—Shaikh Zain writes the *farmān* announcing the two acts—Copy of the *farmān* — Great fear in Bābur's army — he adjures the Ghāzī spirit in his men who vow to stand fast—his perilous position — he moves forward in considerable array—his camp is laid out and protected by ditch and carts—An omen is taken and gives hope—Khalīfa advising, the camp is moved—While tents were being set up, the

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
सत्यमेव जयते · भारत सरकार

GSL

enemy appears—The battle and victory of Kānwa—described in a copy of the Letter-of-victory—Bābur inserts this because of its full particulars (pp. 559 to 574)—assumes the title of Ghāzī—Chronograms of the victory and also of that in Dībalpūr (930 AH.)—pursuit of the fugitive foe—escape of Sangā—the falsely-auguring astrologer banished with a gift—a small revolt crushed—a pillar of heads set up—Bābur visits Biāna—Little water and much heat set aside plan to invade Sangā's territory—Bābur visits Mīwāt—give some historical account of it—Commanders rewarded—Alwār visited—Humāyūn and others allowed to leave Hindūstān—Despatch of the Letter-of-victory—Various excursions—Humāyūn bidden farewell—Chandwār and Rāprī recovered—Apportionment of fiefs—Bīban flees before Bābur's men—Dispersion of troops for the Rains—Misconduct of Humāyūn and Bābur's grief—Embassy to 'Irāq—Tardī Beg *khāksār* allowed to return to the darwesh-life—Bābur's lines to departing friends—The Ramẓān-feast—Playing-cards—Bābur ill (seemingly with fever)—visits Dūlpūr and orders a house excavated—visits Bārī and sees the ebony-tree—has doubt of Bāyazīd *Farmūlī's* loyalty—his remedial and metrical exercises—his Treatise on Prosody composed—a relapse of illness—starts on an excursion to Kūl and Sambal 536–586

934 AH.—Sep. 27th 1527 to Sep. 15th 1528 AD.—Bābur visits Kūl and Sambal and returns to Āgra—has fever and ague intermittently for 20–25 days—goes out to welcome kinswomen—a large mortar bursts with fatal result—he visits Sīkrī—starts for Holy War against Chandīrī—sends troops against Bāyazīd *Farmūlī*—incidents of the march to Chandīrī—account of Kachwa—account of Chandīrī—its siege—Meantime bad news arrives from the East—Bābur keeping this quiet, accomplishes the work in hand—Chandīrī taken—change of plans enforced by defeat in the East—return northwards—Further losses in the East—Rebels take post to dispute Bābur's passage of the Ganges—he orders a pontoon-bridge—his artillery is used with effect, the bridge finished and crossed and the Afghāns worsted—Tukhtabūghā *Chaghatāī* arrives from Kāshgar—Bābur visits Lakhnau—suffers from ear-ache—reinforces Chīn-tīmūr against the rebels—Chīn-tīmūr gets the better of Bāyazīd *Farmūlī*—Bābur settles the affairs of Aūd (Oude) and plans to hunt near 587–602

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

GSL

Translator's Note (part of 934 AH.)—On the *cir.* half-year's missing matter—known events of the Gap:—Continued campaign against Bīban and Bāyazīd—Bābur at Jūnpūr, Chausa and Baksara—swims the Ganges—bestows Sarūn on a Farmūlī—orders a Chār-bāgh made—is ill for 40 days—is inferred to have visited Dūlpūr, recalled 'Askarī from Multān, sent Khw. Dost-i-khāwand to Kābul on family affairs which were causing him much concern—Remarks on the Gap and, incidentally, on the Rāmpūr Dīwān and verses in it suiting Bābur's illnesses of 934 AH.

[End of Translator's Note.]

935 AH. Sep. 15th 1528 to Sep. 5th 1529 AD.—'Askarī reaches Āgra from Multān—Khwānd-amīr and others arrive from Khurāsān—Bābur prepares to visit Gūālīār—bids farewell to kinswomen who are returning to Kābul—marches out—is given an unsavoury medicament—inspects construction-work in Dūlpūr—reaches Gūālīār—**Description of Gūālīār** (p. 607 to p. 614)—returns to Dūlpūr—suffers from ear-ache—inspects work in Sīkrī and reaches Āgra—visit and welcomes to kinswomen—sends an envoy to take charge of Rantanbhūr—makes a levy on stipendiaries—sends letters to kinsfolk in Khurāsān—News arrives of Kāmrān and Dost-i-khāwand in Kābul—of Ṭahmāsp *Ṣafawī's* defeat at Jām of 'Ubaidu'l-lāh *Aūzbeg*—of the birth of a son to Humāyūn, and of a marriage by Kāmrān—he rewards an artificer—is strongly attacked by fever—for his healing translates Ahrārī's *Wālidiyyah-risāla*—account of the task—Troops warned for service—A long-detained messenger returns from Humāyūn—Accredited messengers-of-good-tidings bring the news of Humāyūn's son's birth—an instance of rapid travel—Further particulars of the Battle of Jām—Letters written and summarized—**Copy of one to Humāyūn inserted here**—Plans for an eastern campaign under 'Askarī—royal insignia given to him—Orders for the measurement, stations and up-keep of the Āgra-Kābul road—the *Mubīn* quoted—A feast describes—'Askarī bids his Father farewell—Bābur visits Dūlpūr and inspects his constructions—Persian account of the Battle of Jām—Bābur decides contingently to go to the East—Balūchī incursions—News reaches Dūlpūr of the loss of Bihār (town) and decides Bābur to go East—News of Humāyūn's action in Badakhshān—Bābur starts from Āgra—honoured arrivals in the assembly-camp—incidents of the march—congratula-

tions and gifts sent to Kāmrān, Humāyūn and others—also specimens of the Bāburī-script, and copies of the translation of the *Wālidiyyah-risāla* and the Hindūstān Poems—commends his building-work to his workmen—makes a new ruler for the better copying of the *Wālidiyyah-risāla* translation—letters written—**Copy of one to Khwāja Kalān inserted here**—Complaints from Kitīn-qarā *Aūzbeg* of Bābur's begs on the Balkh frontier—Bābur shaves his head—Māhīm using his style, orders her own escort from Kābul to Āgra—Bābur watches wrestling—leaves the Jumna, disembarks his guns, and goes across country to Dugdugī on the Ganges—travels by litter—'Askarī and other Commanders meet him—News of Bīban, Bāyazīd and other Afghāns—Letters despatched to meet Māhīm on her road—Bābur sends a copy of his writings to Samarkand—watches wrestling—hears news of the Afghāns—(here a surmised survival of record displaced from 934 AH.)—fall of a river-bank under his horse—swims the Ganges—crosses the Jumna at Allahābād (Piag) and re-embarks his guns—wrestling watched—the evil Tons—he is attacked by boils—a Rūmī remedy applied—a futile attempt to hunt—he sends money-drafts to the travellers from Kābul—visits places on the Ganges he had seen last year—receives various letters below Ghāzīpūr—has news that the Ladies are actually on their way from Kābul—last year's eclipse recalled—Hindu dread of the Karmā-nāśā river—wrestling watched—Rūmī remedy for boils used again with much discomfort—fall of last year's landing-steps at Baksara—wrestling—Negociations with an envoy of Naṣrat Shāh of Bengal—Examination into Muḥammad-i-zāman's objections to a Bihār appointment—despatch of troops to Bihār (town)—Muḥammad-i-zamān submits requests which are granted—a small success against Afghāns—Royal insignia given to Muḥammad-i-zamān, with leave to start for Bihār—Bābur's boats—News of the Bengal army—Muḥammad-i-zāman recalled because fighting was probable—Dūdū Bībi and her son Jalāl escape from Bengal to come to Bābur—Further discussions with the Bengal envoy—Favourable news from Bihār—Bābur in Arrah—Position of the Bengal army near the confluence of Gang and Sārū (Ganges and Gogrā)—Bābur making further effort for peace, sends an envoy to Naṣrat Shāh—gives Naṣrat's envoy leave to go conveying an ultimatum—Arrival of a servant from Māhīm west of the Bāgh-i-ṣafā—Bābur visits lotus-beds near Arrah—also

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · XXIV

GSL

Munīr and the Son—Distance measured by counting a horse's paces—care for tired horses—Bābur angered by Junaid *Barlās*' belated arrival — Consultation and plans made for the coming battle—the Ganges crossed (by the Burh-ganga channel) and move made to near the confluence — Bābur watches 'Alī-qulī's stone-discharge — his boat entered by night—Battle and victory of the Gogrā—Bābur praises and thanks his Chaghatāī cousins for their great services—crosses into the Nirhun *pargana*—his favours to a Farmūlī—News of Bīban and Bāyazīd—and of the strange deaths in Sambal—Chīn-tīmūr sends news from the west of inconveniences caused by the Ladies' delay to leave Kābul —and of success against the Balūchī—he is ordered to Āgra—Settlement made with the Nuhānī Afghāns—Peace made with Nasrat Shāh—Submissions and various guerdon —Bīban and Bāyazīd pursued—Bābur's papers damaged in a storm—News of the rebel pair as taking Luknūr (?)— Disposition of Bābur's boats—move along the Sārū—(a surmised survival of the record of 934 AH.)—Account of the capture of Luknūr (?)—Dispositions against the rebel pair—fish caught by help of a lamp—incidents of the march to Adampūr on the Jumna—Bīban and Bāyazīd flee to Mahūba—Eastern Campaign wound up—Bābur's rapid ride to Āgra (p. 686)—visits kinswomen—is pleased with Indian-grown fruits—Māhīm arrives—her gifts and Humāyūn's set before Bābur—porters sent off for Kābul to fetch fruits— Account of the deaths in Sambal brought in—sedition in Lāhor — wrestling watched — sedition of Rahīm-dād in Gūālīār—Mahdī Khwāja comes to Āgra . . 605–689

936 AH.—Sep. 5th 1529 to Aug. 25th 1530 AD.—Shaikh Ghaus comes from Gūālīār to intercede for Rahīm-dād—Gūālīār taken over 690

Translator's Note.—936 and 937 AH.—1529 and 1530 AD.—Sources from which to fill the Gap down to Bābur's death (December 26th 1530)—Humāyūn's proceedings in Badakhshān—Ḥaidar *Dūghlāt's* narrative of them—Humāyūn deserts his post, goes to Kābul, and, arranging with Kāmrān, sends Hind-āl to Badakhshān— goes on to Āgra and there arrives unexpected by his Father—as he is unwilling to return, Sulaimān *Mīrān-shāhī* is appointed under Bābur's suzerainty—Sa'īd Khān is warned to leave Sulaimān in possession—Bābur moves westward to support him and visits Lāhor—waited on in

Sihrind by the Rāja of Kahlūr — received in Lāhor by Kāmrān and there visited from Kābul by Hind-āl — leaves Lāhor (March 4th 1530 AD.)—from Sihrind sends a punitive force against Mundāhir Rājpūts—hunts near Dihlī — appears to have started off an expedition to Kashmīr — family matters fill the rest of the year — Humāyūn falls ill in Saṃbal and is brought to Āgra—his disease not yielding to treatment, Bābur resolves to practise the rite of intercession and self-surrender to save his life — is urged rather to devote the great diamond (Koh-i-nūr) to pious uses—refuses the substitution of the jewel for his own life—performs the rite—Humāyūn recovers —Bābur falls ill and is bedridden till death—his faith in the rite unquestionable, belief in its efficacy general in the East—Plan to set Bābur's sons aside from the succession—The *Ṭabaqāt-i-akbarī* story discussed (p. 702 to 708)—suggested basis of the story (p. 705) — Bābur's death (Jūmāda I. 5th 937 AH.—Dec. 26th 1530 AD.) and burial first, near Āgra, later near Kābul—Shāh-jahān's epitaph inscribed on a tablet near the grave—Bābur's wives and children—Mr. Erskine's estimate of his character 691–716.

[**End of Translator's Note.**]

APPENDICES

A. Site and disappearance of old Akhsī.
B. The birds Qīl-qūyīrūgh and Bāghrī-qarā.
C. On the *gosha-gīr*.
D. The Rescue-passage.
E. Nagarahār and Nīng-nahār.
F. The name Dara-i-nūr.
G. On the names of two Dara-i-nūr wines.
H. On the counter-mark Bih-būd of coins.
I. The weeping-willows of f. 190*b*.
J. Bābur's excavated chamber at Qandahār.
K. An Afghan Legend.
L. Māhīm's adoption of Hind-āl.
M. On the term Bahrī-quṭās.
N. Notes on a few birds.
O. Notes by Humāyūn on some Hindūstān fruits.
P. Remarks on Bābur's Revenue List.
Q. On the Rāmpūr Dīwān.
R. Plans of Chandīrī and Gūālīār.
S. The Bābur-nāma dating of 935 AH.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
GSL

CONTENTS

T. On L:knū (Lakhnau) and L:knūr (Lakhnur *i.e.* Shahābād in Rāmpūr).
U. The Inscriptions in Bābur's Mosque at Ajodhya (Oude).
V. Bābur's Gardens in and near Kābul.

Indices:—I. Personal, II. Geographical, III. General, p. 717 *et seq.*
Omissions, Corrigenda, Additional Notes.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

Plane-tree Avenue in Babur's (later) Burial-garden [1] . . . . . *facing* p. xxvii
View from above his grave and Shah-jahan's Mosque [1] . . . . . *facing* p. 367 184
His Grave [2] . . . . . *facing* p. 445
Babur in Prayer [3] . . . . . *facing* p. 702
His Signature . . . . . App. Q, lxi
Plans of Chandiri and Gualiar . . . . App. R, lxvii

[1] From Atkinson's *Sketches in Afghanistan* (I.O. Lib. & B.M.).
[2] *See* p. 710 (where for "Daniels" read Atkinson).
[3] *See* Gul-badan Begim's *Humayun-nama* Index III, *in loco*.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
सत्यमेव जयते
संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

GSL

Plane-tree Avenue in Babur's (later) Burial-garden.

To face p. xxvii.]

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

PREFACE.

O Spring of work! O Source of power to Be!
Each line, each thought I dedicate to Thee;
Each time I fail, the failure is my own,
But each success, a jewel in Thy Throne.
JESSIE E. CADELL.

INTRODUCTORY.

THIS book is a translation of Babur Padshah's Autobiography, made from the original Turki text. It was undertaken after a purely-Turki manuscript had become accessible in England, the Haidarabad Codex (1915) which, being in Babur's *ipsissima verba*, left to him the control of his translator's diction — a control that had been impracticable from the time when, under Akbar (1589), his book was translated into Persian. What has come down to us of pure text is, in its shrunken amount, what was translated in 1589. It is difficult, here and there, to interpret owing to its numerous and in some places extensive *lacunae*, and presents more problems than one the solution of which has real importance because they have favoured suggestions of malfeasance by Babur.

My translation has been produced under considerable drawback, having been issued in four *fasciculi*, at long intervals, respectively in June 1912, May 1914, October 1917, and September 1921. I have put with it of supplementary matter what may be of service to those readers whom Babur's personality attracts and to those who study Turki as a linguistic entertainment, but owing to delays in production am unable to include the *desiderata* of maps.

CHAPTER I.

BABUR'S EXEMPLARS IN THE ARTS OF PEACE.

Babur's civilian aptitudes, whether of the author and penman, the maker of gardens, the artist, craftsman or sportsman, were nourished in a fertile soil of family tradition and example. Little about his teaching and training is now with his mutilated book, little indeed of

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

any kind about his præ-accession years, not the date of his birth even, having escaped destruction.[1] Happily Haidar Mirza (*q.v.*) possessed a more complete Codex than has come down to us through the Timurid libraries, and from it he translated many episodes of Baburiana that help to bridge gaps and are of special service here where the personalities of Bābur's early environment are being named.

Babur's home-milieu favoured excellence in the quiet Arts and set before its children high standard and example of proficiency. Moreover, by schooling him in obedience to the Law, it planted in him some of Art's essentials, self-restraint and close attention. Amongst primal influences on him, his mother Qut-luq-nigar's ranked high ; she, well-born and a scholar's daughter, would certainly be educated in Turki and Persian and in the home-accomplishments her governess possessed (*ātūn* q.v.). From her and her mother Aisan-daulat, the child would learn respect for the attainments of his wise old grandfather Yunas Khan. Aisan-daulat herself brought to her grandson much that goes to the making of a man ; nomad-born and sternly-bred, she was brave to obey her opinion of right, and was practically the boy's ruling counsellor through his early struggle to hold Farghana. With these two in fine influence must be counted Khan-zada, his five-years elder sister who from his birth to his death proved her devotion to him. Her life-story tempts, but is too long to tell ; her girlish promise is seen fulfilled in Gul-badan's pages. 'Umar Shaikh's own mother Shah Sultan Begim brought in a type of merit widely differing from that of Aisan-daulat Begim ; as a town-lady of high Tarkhan birth, used to the amenities of life in a wealthy house of Samarkand, she was, doubtless, an accomplished and cultured woman.

'Umar Shaikh's environment was dominated for many years by two great men, the scholar and lover of town-life Yunas Khan and the saintly Ahrari (*i.e.* Khwaja 'Ubaidu'l-lah) who were frequently with him in company, came at Babur's birth and assisted at his

[1] Cf. Cap. II, PROBLEMS OF THE MUTILATED BABUR-NAMA and *Tarīkh-i-rashīdi*, trs. p. 174.

nothing. Ahrari died in 895–1491 when the child was about seven years old but his influence was life-long ; in 935–1529 he was invoked as a spiritual helper by the fever-stricken Babur and his mediation believed efficacious for recovery (pp. 619, 648). For the babe or boy to be where the three friends held social session in high converse, would be thought to draw blessing on him ; his hushed silence in the presence would sow the seed of reverence for wisdom and virtue, such, for example, as he felt for Jami (*q.v.*). It is worth while to tell some part at least of Yunas' attainments in the gentler Arts, because the biography from which they are quoted may well have been written on the information of his wife Aisan-daulat, and it indicates the breadth of his exemplary influence. Yunas was many things—penman, painter, singer, instrumentalist, and a past master in the crafts. He was an expert in good companionship, having even temper and perfect manners, quick perception and conversational charm. His intellectual distinction was attributed to his twelve years of wardship under the learned and highly honoured Yazdi (Sharafu'd-din 'Ali), the author of the *Zafar-nama* [Timur's Book of Victory]. That book was in hand during four years of Yunas' education ; he will thus have known it and its main basis Timur's Turki *Malfūzāt* (annals). What he learned of either book he would carry with him into 'Umar Shaikh's environment, thus magnifying the family stock of Timuriya influence. He lived to be some 74 years old, a length of days which fairly bridged the gap between Timur's death [807–1404] and Babur's birth (888–1483). It is said that no previous Khan of his (Chaghatai) line had survived his 40th year ; his exceptional age earned him great respect and would deepen his influence on his restless young son-in-law 'Umar Shaikh. It appears to have been in 'Umar's 20th year (*cir.*) that Yunas Khan began the friendly association with him that lasted till Yunas' death (892–1483), a friendship which, as disparate ages would dictate, was rather that of father and son than of equal companionship. One matter mentioned in the Khān's biography would come to Babur's remembrance in the future days when he, like Yunas, broke the Law against intoxicants and, like him, repented and returned.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

That two men of the calibre and high repute of Ahrari and Yunas maintained friendly guidance so long over 'Umar cannot but be held an accreditment and give fragrance of goodness to his name. Apart from the high justice and generosity his son ascribes to him, he could set other example, for he was a reader of great books, the Qoran and the *Masnawi* being amongst his favourites. This choice, it may be, led Abu'l-fazl to say he had the darwesh-mind. Babur was old enough before 'Umar's death to profit by the sight of his father enjoying the perusal of such books. As with other parents and other children, there would follow the happy stilling to a quiet mood, the piquing of curiosity as to what was in the book, the sight of refuge taken as in a haven from self and care, and perhaps, Babur being intelligent and of inquiring mind and 'Umar a skilled reciter, the boy would marvel at the perennial miracle that a lifeless page can become eloquent—gentle hints all, pointers of the way to literary creation.

Few who are at home in Baburiana but will take Timur as Babur's great exemplar not only as a soldier but as a chronicler. Timur cannot have seemed remote from that group of people so well-informed about him and his civilian doings; his Shahrukhi grandchildren in Samarkand had carried on his author-tradition; the 74 years of Yunas Khan's life had bridged the gap between Timur's death in 807–1405 and Babur's birth in 888–1483. To Babur Timur will have been exemplary through his grandson Aulugh Beg who has two productions to his credit, the *Char-ulus* (Four Hordes) and the Kurkani Astronomical Tables. His sons, again, Babur (*qalandar*) and Ibrahim carried on the family torch of letters, the first in verse and the second by initiating and fostering Yazdi's labours on the *Zafar-nama*. Wide-radiating and potent influence for the Arts of Peace came forth from Herat during the reign of that Sultan Husain Mirza whose Court Babur describes in one of the best supplements to his autobiography. Husain was a Timurid of the elder branch of Bai-qara, an author himself but far more effective as a Macænas; one man of the shining galaxy of competence that gave him fame, set pertinent example for Babur the author, namely, the Andijani

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

of noble Chaghatai family, 'Ali-sher *Nawa'i* who, in classic Turki verse was the master Babur was to become in its prose. That the standard of effort was high in Herat is clear from Babur's dictum (p. 233) that whatever work a man took up, he aspired to bring it to perfection. Elphinstone varies the same theme to the tune of equality of excellence apart from social status, writing to Erskine (August, 1826), that "it gives a high notion of the time to find" (in Babur's account of Husain's Court) "artists, musicians and others, described along with the learned and great of the Age".

My meagre summary of Babur's exemplars would be noticeably incomplete if it omitted mention of two of his life-long helpers in the gentler Arts, his love of Nature and his admiration for great architectural creations. The first makes joyous accompaniment throughout his book; the second is specially called forth by Timur's ennoblement of Samarkand. Timur had built magnificently and laid out stately gardens; Babur made many a fruitful pleasaunce and gladdened many an arid halting-place; he built a little, but had small chance to test his capacity for building greatly; never rich, he was poor in Kabul and several times destitute in his home-lands. But his sword won what gave wealth to his Indian Dynasty, and he passed on to it the builder's unused dower, so that Samarkand was surpassed in Hindustan and the spiritual conception Timur's creations embodied took perfect form at Sikandra where Akbar lies entombed.

CHAPTER II.

PROBLEMS OF THE MUTILATED BABUR-NAMA.

Losses from the text of Babur's book are the more disastrous because it truly embodies his career. For it has the rare distinction of being contemporary with the events it describes, is boyish in his boyhood, grows with his growth, matures as he matured. Undulled by retrospect, it is a fresh and spontaneous recital of things just seen, heard or done. It has the further rare distinction of shewing a boy who, setting a future task before him — in his case the revival of Timurid power, — began to chronicle his adventure in the book which

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

through some 37 years was his twinned comrade, which by its special distinctions has attracted readers for nearly a half-millennium, still attracts and still is a thing apart from autobiographies which look back to recal dead years.

Much circumstance makes for the opinion that Babur left his life-record complete, perhaps repaired in places and recently supplemented, but continuous, orderly and lucid; this it is not now, nor has been since it was translated into Persian in 1589, for it is fissured by *lacunæ*, has neither Preface nor Epilogue,[1] opens in an oddly abrupt and incongruous fashion, and consists of a series of fragments so disconnected as to demand considerable preliminary explanation. Needless to say, its dwindled condition notwithstanding, it has place amongst great autobiographies, still revealing its author playing a man's part in a drama of much historic and personal interest. Its revelation is however now like a portrait out of drawing, because it has not kept the record of certain years of his manhood in which he took momentous decisions, (1) those of 1511–12 [918] in which he accepted reinforcement — at a great price — from Isma'il the Shi'a Shah of Persia, and in which, if my reading be correct, he first (1512) broke the Law against the use of wine,[2] (2) those of 1519–1525 [926–932], in which his literary occupations with orthodox Law (*see Mubin*) associated with cognate matters of 932 AH. indicate that his return to obedience had begun, in which too was taken the decision that worked out for his fifth expedition across the Indus with its sequel of the conquest of Hind.—The loss of matter so weighty cannot but destroy the balance of his record and falsify the drawing of his portrait.

a. *Problem of Titles.*

As nothing survives to decide what was Babur's chosen title for his autobiography, a modern assignment of names to distinguish it

[1] The suggestion, implied by my use of this word, that Babur may have definitely closed his autobiography (as Timur did under other circumstances) is due to the existence of a compelling cause *viz.* that he would be expectant of death as the price of Humayun's restored life (p. 701).

[2] Cf. p. 83 and n. and Add. Note, P. 83 for further emendation of a contradiction effected by some malign influence in the note (p. 83) between parts of that note, and between it and Babur's account of his not-drinking in Herat.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

from its various descendants is desirable, particularly so since the revival of interest in it towards which the Facsimile of its Haidarabad Codex has contributed.[1]

Babur-nama (History of Babur) is a well-warranted name by which to distinguish the original Turki text, because long associated with this and rarely if ever applied to its Persian translation.[2] It is not comprehensive because not covering supplementary matter of biography and description but it has use for modern readers of classing Babur's with other Timuriya and Timurid histories such as the *Zafar-Humayun-Akbar-namas.*

Waqi'āt-i-baburi (Babur's Acts), being descriptive of the book and in common use for naming both the Turki and Persian texts, might usefully be reserved as a title for the latter alone.

Amongst European versions of the book *Memoirs of Baber* is Erskine's peculium for the Leyden and Erskine Perso-English translation — *Mémoires de Baber* is Pavet de Courteille's title for his French version of the Bukhara [Persified-Turki] compilation—*Babur-nama in English* links the translation these volumes contain with its purely-Turki source.

b. *Problems of the Constituents of the Books.*

Intact or mutilated, Babur's material falls naturally into three territorial divisions, those of the lands of his successive rule, Farghana (with Samarkand), Kabul and Hindustan. With these are distinct sub-sections of description of places and of obituaries of kinsmen.

The book might be described as consisting of annals and diary, which once met within what is now the gap of 1508–19 (914–925). Round this gap, amongst others, bristle problems of which this change of literary style is one; some are small and concern the mutilation alone, others are larger, but all are too intricate for terse

[1] Teufel held its title to be *waqi'* (this I adopted in 1908), but it has no definite support and in numerous instances of its occurrence to describe the acts or doings of Babur, it could be read as a common noun.

[2] It stands on the reverse of the frontal page of the Haidarabad Codex; it is Timur-pulad's name for the Codex he purchased in Bukhara, and it is thence brought on by Kehr (with Ilminski), and Klaproth (Cap. III); it is used by Khwafi Khan (d. *circ.* 1732), *etc.*

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

GSL

statement and all might be resolved by the help of a second MS. *e.g.* one of the same strain as Haidar's.

Without fantasy another constituent might be counted in with the three territorial divisions, namely, the grouped *lacunæ* which by their engulfment of text are an untoward factor in an estimate either of Babur or of his book. They are actually the cardinal difficulty of the book as it now is; they foreshorten purview of his career and character and detract from its merits; they lose it perspective and distort its proportions. That this must be so is clear both from the value and the preponderating amount of the lost text. It is no exaggeration to say that while working on what survives, what is lost becomes like a haunting presence warning that it must be remembered always as an integral and the dominant part of the book.

The relative proportions of saved and lost text are highly significant:—Babur's commemorable years are about 47 and 10 months, *i.e.* from his birth on Feb. 14th 1483 to near his death on Dec. 26th 1530; but the aggregate of surviving text records some 18 years only, and this not continuously but broken through by numerous gaps. That these gaps result from loss of pages is frequently shewn by a broken sentence, an unfinished episode. The fragments—as they truly may be called—are divided by gaps sometimes seeming to remove a few pages only (cf. *s.a.* 935 AH.), sometimes losing the record of 6 and *cir.* 18 months, sometimes of 6 and 11 years; besides these actual clefts in the narrative there are losses of some 12 years from its beginning and some 16 months from its end. Briefly put we now have the record of *cir.* 18 years where that of over 47 could have been.[1]

c. *Causes of the gaps.*

Various causes have been surmised to explain the *lacunæ*; on the plea of long intimacy with Babur's and Haidar's writings, I venture to say that one and all appear to me the result of accident. This opinion rests on observed correlations between the surviving and the

[1] That Babur left a complete record much indicates beyond his own persistence and literary bias, *e.g.* cross-reference with and needed complements from what is lost; mention by other writers of Babur's information, notably by Haidar.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

lost record, which demand complement—on the testimony of Haidar's extracts, and firmly on Babur's orderly and persistent bias of mind and on the prideful character of much of the lost record. Moreover occasions of risk to Babur's papers are known.

Of these occasions the first was the destruction of his camp near Hisar in 1512 (918; p. 357) but no information about his papers survives; they may not have been in his tent but in the fort. The second was a case of recorded damage to "book and sections" (p. 679) occurring in 1529 (935). From signs of work done to the Farghana section in Hindustan, the damage may be understood made good at the later date. To the third exposure to damage, namely, the attrition of hard travel and unsettled life during Humayun's 14 years of exile from rule in Hindustan (1441–1555) it is reasonable to attribute even the whole loss of text. For, assuming — as may well be done — that Babur left (1530) a complete autobiography, its volume would be safe so long as Humayun was in power but after the Timurid exodus (1441) his library would be exposed to the risks detailed in the admirable chronicles of Gul-badan, Jauhar and Bayazid (*q.v.*). He is known to have annotated his father's book in 1555 (p. 466 n. 1) just before marching from Kabul to attempt the re-conquest of Hindustan. His Codex would return to Dihli which he entered in July 1555, and there would be safe from risk of further mutilation. Its condition in 1555 is likely to have remained what it was found when 'Abdu'r-rahim translated it into Persian by Akbar's orders (1589) for Abu'l-fazl's use in the *Akbar-nama*. That Persian translation with its descendant the *Memoirs of Baber*, and the purely-Turki Haidarabad Codex with its descendant the *Babur-nama in English*, contain identical contents and, so doing, carry the date of the mutilation of Babur's Turki text back through its years of safety, 1589 to 1555, to the period of Humayun's exile and its dangers for camel-borne or deserted libraries.

d. *Two misinterpretations of lacunæ.*

Not unnaturally the frequent interruptions of narrative caused by *lacunæ* have been misinterpreted occasionally, and sometimes

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

detractory comment has followed on Babur, ranking him below the accomplished and lettered, steadfast and honest man he was. I select two examples of this comment neither of which has a casual origin.

The first is from the *B.M. Cat. of Coins of the Shahs of Persia* p. xxiv, where after identifying a certain gold coin as shewing vassalage by Babur to Isma'il *Safawi*, the compiler of the Catalogue notes, "We can now understand the omission from Babar's 'Memoirs' of the occurrences between 914 H. and 925 H." Can these words imply other than that Babur suppressed mention of minting of the coins shewing acknowledgment of Shi'a suzerainty? Leaving aside the delicate topic of the detraction the quoted words imply, much negatives the surmise that the gap is a deliberate "omission" of text:—(1) the duration of the Shi'a alliance was 19–20 months of 917–918 AH. (p. 355), why omit the peaceful or prideful and victorious record of some 9–10 years on its either verge? (2) Babur's Transoxus campaign was an episode in the struggle between Shaibaq Khan (Shaibani) *Auzbeg* and Shah Isma'il — between Sunni and Shi'a; how could "omission" from his book, always a rare one, hide what multitudes knew already? "Omission" would have proved a fiasco in another region than Central Asia, because the Babur–Haidar story of the campaign, vassal-coinage included,[1] has been brought into English literature by the English translation of the *Tarikh-i rashidi*. Babur's frank and self-judging habit of mind would, I think, lead him to write fully of the difficulties which compelled the hated alliance and certainly he would tell of his own anger at the conduct of the campaign by Isma'il's Commanders. The alliance was a tactical mistake; it would have served Babur better to narrate its failure.

The second misinterpretation, perhaps a mere surmising gloss, is Erskine's (*Memoirs* Supp. p. 289) who, in connection with 'Alam Khan's request to Babur for reinforcement in order to oust his nephew Ibrahim, observes that "Babur probably flattered 'Alam Khan with the hope of succession to the empire of Hindustan." This idea does not fit the record of either man. Elphinstone was angered by Erskine's remark which, he wrote (Aug. 26th 1826) "had a bad

[1] App. H, xxx.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

effect on the narrative by weakening the implicit confidence in Babur's candour and veracity which his frank way of writing is so well-calculated to command." Elphinstone's opinion of Babur is not that of a reader but of a student of his book; he was also one of Erskine's staunchest helpers in its production. From Erskine's surmise others have advanced on the detractor's path saying that Babur used and threw over 'Alam Khan (*q.v.*).

e. *Reconstruction.*

Amongst the problems mutilation has created an important one is that of the condition of the beginning of the book (p. 1 to p. 30) with its plunge into Babur's doings in his 12th year without previous mention of even his day and place of birth, the names and status of his parents, or any occurrences of his præ-accession years. Within those years should be entered the death of Yunas Khan (1487) with its sequent obituary notice, and the death of [Khwaja 'Ubaidu'l-lah] Ahrari (1491). Not only are these customary entries absent but the very introductions of the two great men are wanting, probably with the also missing account of their naming of the babe Babur. That these routine matters are a part of an autobiography planned as Babur's was, makes for assured opinion that the record of more than his first decade of life has been lost, perhaps by the attrition to which its position in the volume exposed it.

Useful reconstruction if merely in tabulated form, might be effected in a future edition. It would save at least two surprises for readers, one the oddly abrupt first sentence telling of Babur's age when he became ruler in Farghana (p. 1), which is a misfit in time and order, another that of the sudden interruption of 'Umar Shaikh's obituary by a fragment of Yunas Khan's (p. 19) which there hangs on a mere name-peg, whereas its place according to Babur's elsewhere unbroken practice is directly following the death. The record of the missing præ-accession years will have included at the least as follows :—Day of birth and its place—names and status of parents—naming and the ceremonial observances proper for Muhammadan children—visits to kinsfolk in Tashkint, and to Samarkand (æt. 5, p. 35) where he

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

was betrothed—his initiation in school subjects, in sport, the use of arms—names of teachers—education in the rules of his Faith (p. 44), appointment to the Andijan Command *etc., etc.*

There is now no fit beginning to the book; the present first sentence and its pendent description of Farghana should be removed to the position Babur's practice dictates of entering the description of a territory at once on obtaining it (cf. Samarkand, Kabul, Hindustan). It might come in on p. 30 at the end of the topic (partly omitted on p. 29 where no ground is given for the manifest anxiety about Babur's safety) of the disputed succession (Haidar, trs. p. 135) Babur's partisan begs having the better of Jahangir's (*q.v.*), and having testified obeisance, he became ruler in Farghana; his statement of age (12 years), comes in naturally and the description of his newly acquired territory follows according to rule. This removal of text to a later position has the advantage of allowing the accession to follow and not precede Babur's father's death.

By the removal there is left to consider the historical matter of pp. 12–13. The first paragraph concerns matter of much earlier date than 'Umar's death in 1494 (p. 13); it may be part of an obituary notice, perhaps that of Yunas Khan. What follows of the advance of displeased kinsmen against 'Umar Shaikh would fall into place as part of Babur's record of his boyhood, and lead on to that of his father's death.

The above is a bald sketch of what might be effected in the interests of the book and to facilitate its pleasant perusal.

Chapter III.

The Turki MSS. and work connecting with them.

This chapter is a literary counterpart of "Babur Padshah's Stone-heap," the roadside cairn tradition says was piled by his army, each man laying his stone when passing down from Kabul for Hindustan in the year of victory 1525 (932).[1]

[1] p. 446, n. 6. Babur's order for the cairn would fit into the lost record of the first month of the year (p. 445).

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

For a title suiting its contents is " Babur Padshah's Book-pile," because it is fashioned of item after item of pen-work done by many men in obedience to the dictates given by his book. Unlike the cairn, however, the pile of books is not of a single occasion but of many, not of a single year but of many, irregularly spacing the 500 years through which he and his autobiography have had Earth's immortality.

Part I. The MSS. themselves.

Preliminary.—Much of the information given below was published in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society from 1900 onwards, as it came into my possession during a search for reliable Turki text of the *Babur-nama*. My notes were progressive; some MSS. were in distant places, some not traceable, but in the end I was able to examine in England all of whose continued existence I had become aware. It was inevitable that some of my earlier statements should be superseded later; my Notes (*see s.n.* JRAS.) need clearing of transitory matter and summarizing, in particular those on the Elphinstone Codex and Klaproth's articles. Neither they nor what is placed here makes claim to be complete. Other workers will supplement them when the World has renewed opportunity to stroll in the bye-paths of literature.

Few copies of the *Babur-nama* seem to have been made; of the few I have traced as existing, not one contains the complete autobiography, and one alone has the maximum of dwindled text shewn in the Persian translation (1589). Two books have been reputed to contain Babur's authentic text, one preserved in Hindustan by his descendants, the other issuing from Bukhara. They differ in total contents, arrangement and textual worth; moreover the Bukhara book compiles items of divers diction and origin and date, manifestly not from one pen.

The Hindustan book is a record—now mutilated—of the Acts of Babur alone; the Bukhara book as exhibited in its fullest accessible example, Kehr's Codex, is in two parts, each having its preface, the first reciting Babur's Acts, the second Humayun's.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

The Bukhara book is a compilation of oddments, mostly translated from compositions written after Babur's death. Textual and circumstantial grounds warrant the opinion that it is a distinct work mistakenly believed to be Babur's own; to these grounds was added in 1903 the authoritative verdict of collation with the Haidarabad Codex, and in 1921 of the colophon of its original MS. in which its author gives his name, with the title and date of his compilation (JRAS. 1900, p. 474). What it is and what are its contents and history are told in Part III of this chapter.

Part II. Work on the Hindustan MSS.

Babur's Original Codex.

My latest definite information about Babur's autograph MS. comes from the *Padshah-nama* (Bib. Ind. ed. ii, 4), whose author saw it in Shah-i-jahan's private library between 1628 and 1638. Inference is justified, however, that it was the archetype of the Haidarabad Codex which has been estimated from the quality of its paper as dating *cir.* 1700 (JRAS. 1906, p. 97). But two subsequent historic disasters complicate all questions of MSS. missing from Indian libraries, namely, Nadir Shah's vengeance on Dihli in 1739 and the dispersions and fires of the Mutiny. Faint hope is kept alive that the original Codex may have drifted into private hands, by what has occurred with the Rampur MS. of Babur's Hindustan verses (App. J), which also appears once to have belonged to Shah-i-jahan.

I

Amongst items of work done during Babur's life are copies of his book (or of the Hindustan section of it) he mentions sending to sons and friends.

II

The *Tabaqat-i-baburi* was written during Babur's life by his Persian secretary Shaikh Zainu'd-din of Khawaf; it paraphrases in rhetorical Persian the record of a few months of Hindustan campaigning, including the battle of Panipat.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

TABLE OF THE HINDUSTAN MSS. OF THE BABUR-NAMA.[1]

Names.	Date of completion.	Folios—standard 382.[2]	Archetype.	Scribe.	Latest known location.	Remarks.
1. Babur's Codex.	1530.	Originally much over 382.	—	Babur.	Royal Library between 1628–38.	Has disappeared.
2. Khwaja Kalan *Ahrari's* Codex.	1529.	Undefined 363 (?), p. 652.	No. 1.	Unknown.	Sent to Samarkand 1529.	Possibly still in Khwaja Kalan's family.
3. Humayun's Codex = {commanded and annotate ?).[3]	1531 (?).	Originally = No. 1 (unmutilated).	No. 1.	'Ali'u'l-katib (?).	Royal Library between 1556–1567.	Seems the archetype of No. 5.
4. Muhammad Haidar *Dughlat's* Codex.	Between 1536 and 40 (?).	No. 1 (unmutilated).	No. 1 or No. 2.	Haidar (?)	Kashmir 1540–47.	Possibly now in Kashghar.
5. Elphinstone Codex.	Between 1556 and 1567.	In 1816 and 1907, 286 ff.	No. 3.	Unknown.	Advocates' Library (1816 to 1921).	Bought in Peshawar 1810.
6. British Museum MS.	1629.	97 (fragments).	Unknown.	'Ali'u'l-*kashmiri*.	British Museum.	—
7. Bib. Lindesiana MS. [now John Rylands]	Scribe living in 1625.	71 (an extract).	Unknown.	Nur-muhammad (nephew of 'Abu'l-fazl).	John Rylands Library.	—
8. Haidarabad Codex.	Paper indicates *cir.* 1700.	382.	(No. 1) mutilated.	No colophon.	The late Sir Salar-jang's Library.	Centupled in facsimile, 1905.

[1] Parts of the Babur-nama sent to Babur's sons are not included here.
[2] The standard of comparison is the 382 fols. of the Haidarabad Codex.
[3] This MS. is not to be confused with one Erskine misunderstood Humayun to have copied (*Memoirs*, p. 303 and JRAS. 1900, p. 443).

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

III

During the first decade of Humayun's reign (1530–40) at least two important codices seem to have been copied.

The earlier (*see* Table, No. 2) has varied circumstantial warrant. It meets the need of an archetype, one marginally annotated by Humayun, for the Elphinstone Codex in which a few notes are marginal and signed, others are pell-mell, interpolated in the text but attested by a scrutineer as having been marginal in its archetype and mistakenly copied into its text. This second set has been ineffectually sponged over. Thus double collation is indicated (i) with Babur's autograph MS. to clear out extra Babur matter, and (ii) with its archetype, to justify the statement that in this the interpolations were marginal.—No colophon survives with the much dwindled Elph. Codex, but one, suiting the situation, has been observed, where it is a complete misfit, appended to the Alwar Codex of the second Persian translation, (estimated as copied in 1589). Into the incongruities of that colophon it is not necessary to examine here, they are too obvious to aim at deceit; it appears fitly to be an imperfect translation from a Turki original, this especially through its odd fashion of entitling "Humayun Padshah." It can be explained as translating the colophon of the Codex (No. 2) which, as his possession, Humayun allowably annotated and which makes it known that he had ordered 'Ali'u-'l-katib to copy his father's Turki book, and that it was finished in February, 1531, some six weeks after Babur's death.[1]

The later copy made in Humayun's first decade is Haidar Mirza's (*infra*).

IV

Muhammad Haidar Mirza *Dughlat's* possession of a copy of the Autobiography is known both from his mention of it and through numerous extracts translated from it in his *Tarikh-i-rashidi*. As a good boy-penman (p. 22) he may have copied down to 1512 (918) while with Babur (p. 350), but for obtaining a transcript of it his

[1] For precise limits of the original annotation *see* p. 446 n.—For details about the E. Codex *see* JRAS. 1907, art. *The Elph. Codex*, and for the colophon AQR. 1900, July, Oct. and JRAS. 1905, pp. 752, 761.

opportunity was while with Humayun before the Timurid exodus of 1541. He died in 1551; his Codex is likely to have found its way back from Kashmir to his ancestral home in the Kashghar region and there it may still be. (*See* T.R. trs. Ney Elias' biography of him).

V

The Elphinstone Codex[1] has had an adventurous career. The enigma of its archetype is posed above; it may have been copied during Akbar's first decade (1556–67); its, perhaps first, owner was a Bai-qara rebel (d. 1567) from amongst whose possessions it passed into the Royal Library, where it was cleared of foreign matter by the expunction of Humayun's marginal notes which its scribe had interpolated into its text. At a date I do not know, it must have left the Royal Library for its fly-leaves bear entries of prices and in 1810 it was found and purchased in Peshawar by Elphinstone. It went with him to Calcutta, and there may have been seen by Leyden during the short time between its arrival and the autumn month of the same year (1810) when he sailed for Java. In 1813 Elphinstone in Poona sent it to Erskine in Bombay, saying that he had fancied it gone to Java and had been writing to 'Izzatu'l-lah to procure another MS. for Erskine in Bukhara, but that all the time it was on his own shelves. Received after Erskine had dolefully compared his finished work with Leyden's (tentative) translation, Erskine sadly recommenced the review of his own work. The Codex had suffered much defacement down to 908 (1502) at the hands of " a Persian Turk of Ganj " who had interlined it with explanations. It came to Scotland (with Erskine ?) who in 1826 sent it with a covering letter (Dec. 12th, 1826), at its owner's desire, to the Advocates' Library where it now is. In 1907 it was fully described by me in the JRAS.

VI

Of two *Waqi'at-i-baburi* (Pers. trs.) made in Akbar's reign, the earlier was begun in 1583, at private instance, by two Mughuls

[1] *See* Index *s.n.* and III *ante* and JRAS. 1900-3-5-6-7.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Payanda-hasan of Ghazni and Muhammad-quli of Hisar. The Bodleian and British Museum Libraries have copies of it, very fragmentary unfortunately, for it is careful, likeable, and helpful by its small explanatory glosses. It has the great defect of not preserving autobiographic quality in its diction.

VII

The later *Waqi'at-i-baburi* translated by 'Abdu'r-rahim Mirza is one of the most important items in Baburiana, both by its special characteristics as the work of a Turkman and not of a Persian, and by the great service it has done. Its origin is well-known; it was made at Akbar's order to help Abu'l-fazl in the Akbar-nama account of Babur and also to facilitate perusal of the *Babur-nama* in Hindustan. It was presented to Akbar, by its translator who had come up from Gujrat, in the last week of November, 1589, on an occasion and at a place of admirable fitness. For Akbar had gone to Kabul to visit Babur's tomb, and was halting on his return journey at Barik-ab where Babur had halted on his march down to Hindustan in the year of victory 1525, at no great distance from " Babur Padshah's Stone-heap ". Abu'l-fazl's account of the presentation will rest on 'Abdu'r-rahim's information (A.N. trs. cap. ci). The diction of this translation is noticeable ; it gave much trouble to Erskine who thus writes of it (*Memoirs* Preface, lx), " Though simple and precise, a close adherence to the idioms and forms of expression of the Turki original joined to a want of distinctness in the use of the relatives, often renders the meaning extremely obscure, and makes it difficult to discover the connexion of the different members of the sentence.[1] The style is frequently not Persian. . . . Many of the Turki words are untranslated."

Difficult as these characteristics made Erskine's interpretation, it appears to me likely that they indirectly were useful to him by restraining his diction to some extent in their Turki fettering.—This Turki fettering has another aspect, apart from Erskine's difficulties,

[1] Here speaks the man reared in touch with European classics; (pure) Turki though it uses no relatives (Radloff) is lucid. Cf. Cap. IV The Memoirs of Babur.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

viz. it would greatly facilitate re-translation into Turki, such as has been effected, I think, in the Farghana section of the Bukhara compilation.[1]

VIII

This item of work, a harmless attempt of Salim (*i.e.* Jahangir Padshah ; 1605–28) to provide the ancestral autobiography with certain stop-gaps, has caused much needless trouble and discussion without effecting any useful result. It is this :—In his own autobiography, the *Tuzuk-i-jahangiri s.a.* 1607, he writes of a Babur-nama Codex he examined, that it was all in Babur's "blessed handwriting" except four portions which were in his own and each of which he attested in Turki as so being. Unfortunately he did not specify his topics; unfortunately also no attestation has been found to passages reasonably enough attributable to his activities. His portions may consist of the "Rescue-passage" (App. D) and a length of translation from the *Akbarnama*, a continuous part of its Babur chapter but broken up where only I have seen it, *i.e.* the Bukhara compilation, into (1) a plain tale of Kanwa (1527), (2) episodes of Babur's latter months (1529)—both transferred to the first person—and (3) an account of Babur's death (December 26th, 1530) and Court.

Jahangir's occupation, harmless in itself, led to an imbroglio of Langlés with Erskine, for the former stating in the *Biographie Universelle* art. Babour, that Babour's Commentaries "*augmentés par Jahangir*" were translated into Persian by 'Abdu'r-rahim. Erskine made answer, "I know not on what authority the learned Langlés hazarded this assertion, which is certainly incorrect" (*Memoirs*, Preface, p. ix). Had Langlés somewhere met with Jahangir's attestations? He had authority if he had seen merely the statement of 1607, but Erskine was right also, because the Persian translation contains no more than the unaugmented Turki text. The royal stop-gaps are in Kehr's MS. and through Ilminski reached De Courteille, whence the biting and thorough analysis of the three "Fragments" by Teufel. Both episodes—the Langlés and the

[1] For analysis of a retranslated passage *see* JRAS. 1908, p. 85.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

GSL

Teufel ones—are time-wasters but they are comprehensible in the circumstances that Jahangir could not foresee the consequences of his doubtless good intentions.

If the question arise of how writings that had had place in Jahangir's library reached Bukhara, their open road is through the Padshah's correspondence (App. Q and references), with a descendant of Ahrari in whose hands they were close to Bukhara.[1]

It groups scattered information to recal that Salim (Jahangir) was 'Abdu'r-rahim's ward, that then, as now, Babur's Autobiography was the best example of classic Turki, and that it would appeal on grounds of piety—as it did appeal on some sufficient ground—to have its broken story made good. Also that for three of the four "portions" Abu'l-fazl's concise matter was to hand.

IX

My information concerning Baburiana under Shah-i-jahan Padshah (1628–58) is very meagre. It consists of (1) his attestation of a signature of Babur (App. Q and photo), (2) his possession of Babur's autograph Codex (*Padshah-nama*, Bib. Ind. ed., ii, 4), and (3) his acceptance, and that by his literary entourage, of Mir Abu-talib *Husaini*'s Persian translation of Timur's Annals, the *Malfuzat* whose preparation the *Zafar-nama* describes and whose link with Babur's writings is that of the exemplar to the emulator.[2]

X

The Haidarabad Codex may have been inscribed under Aurangzib Padshah (1655–1707). So many particulars about it have been given already that little needs saying here.[3] It was the *grande trouvaille* of my search for Turki text wherewith to revive Babur's autobiography both in Turki and English. My husband in 1900 saw it in Haidarabad; through the kind offices of the late Sayyid

[1] *Tuzuk-i-jahangiri*, Rogers & Beveridge's trs. i, 110; JRAS. 1900, p. 756, for the Persian passage, 1908, p. 76 for the "Fragments", 1900, p. 476 for Ilminski's Preface (a second translation is accessible at the B.M. and I.O. Library and R.A.S.), *Memoirs* Preface, p. ix, Index *s.nn.* de Courteille, Teufel, Bukhara MSS. and Part iii *eo cap.*

[2] For Shah-i-jahan's interest in Timur *see* sign given in a copy of his note published in my translation volume of Gul-badan Begim's *Humayun-nama*, p. xiii.

[3] JRAS. 1900 p. 466, 1902 p. 655, 1905 art. *s.n.*, 1908 pp. 78, 98; Index *in loco s.n.*

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

Ali *Bilgrami* it was lent to me; it proved to surpass, both in volume and quality, all other Babur-nama MSS. I had traced; I made its merits known to Professor Edward Granville Browne, just when the E. J. Wilkinson Gibb Trust was in formation, with the happy and accordant result that the best prose book in classic Turki became the first item in the Memorial—*matris ad filium*—of literary work done in the name of the Turkish scholar, and Babur's very words were safeguarded in hundred-fold facsimile. An event so important for autobiography and for Turki literature may claim more than the bald mention of its occurrence, because sincere autobiography, however ancient, is human and social and undying, so that this was no mere case of multiplying copies of a book, but was one of preserving a man's life in his words. There were, therefore, joyful red-letter days in the English story of the Codex—outstanding from others being those on which its merits revealed themselves (on Surrey uplands)—the one which brought Professor Browne's acceptance of it for reproduction by the Trust—and the day of pause from work marked by the accomplished fact of the safety of the *Babur-nama*.

XI

The period from *cir.* 1700, the date of the Haidarabad Codex, and 1810, when the Elphinstone Codex was purchased by its sponsor at Peshawar, appears to have been unfruitful in work on the Hindustan MSS. Causes for this may connect with historic events, *e.g.* Nadir Shah's desolation of Dihli and the rise of the East India Company, and, in Baburiana, with the disappearance of Babur's autograph Codex (it was unknown to the Scots of 1800–26), and the transfer of the Elphinstone Codex from royal possession—this, possibly however, an accident of royal travel to and from Kabul at earlier dates.

The first quarter of the nineteenth century was, on the contrary, most fruitful in valuable work, useful impulse to which was given by Dr. John Leyden who in about 1805 began to look into Turki. Like his contemporary Julius Klaproth (*q.v.*), he was avid of tongues and attracted by Turki and by Babur's writings of which he

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

had some knowledge through the 'Abdu'r-rahim (Persian) translation. His Turki text-book would be the MS. of the Asiatic Society of Bengal,[1] a part-copy of the Bukhara compilation, from which he had the India Office MS. copied. He took up Turki again in 1810, after his return from Malay and whilst awaiting orders in Calcutta for departure to Java. He sailed in the autumn of the year and died in August 1811. Much can be learned about him and his Turki occupations from letters (*infra* xiii) written to Erskine by him and by others of the Scottish band which now achieved such fine results for Babur's Autobiography.

It is necessary to say something of Leyden's part in producing the *Memoirs*, because Erskine, desiring to " lose nothing that might add to Leyden's reputation ", has assigned to him an undue position of collaboration in it both by giving him premier place on its title-page and by attributing to him the beginning the translation. What one gleans of Leyden's character makes an impression of unassumption that would forbid his acceptance of the posthumous position given to him, and, as his translation shews the tyro in Turki, there can be no ground for supposing he would wish his competence in it over-estimated. He had, as dates show, nothing to do with the actual work of the *Memoirs* which was finished before Erskine had seen in 1813 what Leyden had set down before he died in 1811. As the *Memoirs* is now a rare book, I quote from it what Erskine says (Preface, p. ix) of Leyden's rough translation :—" This acquisition (*i.e.* of Leyden's trs.) reduced me to rather an awkward dilemma. The two translations (his own and Leyden's) differed in many important particulars; but as Dr. Leyden had the advantage of translating from the original, I resolved to adopt his translation as far as it went, changing only such expressions in it as seemed evidently to be inconsistent with the context, or with other parts of the *Memoirs*, or such as seemed evidently to originate in the oversights that are unavoidable in an unfinished work.[2] This labour I had completed

[1] Cf. JRAS. 1900, Nos. VI, VII, VIII.

[2] Ilminski's difficulties are foreshadowed here by the same confusion of identity between the *Babur-nama* proper and the Bukhara compilation (Preface, Part iii, p. li).

with some difficulty, when Mr. Elphinstone sent me the copy of the *Memoirs of Baber* in the original Tūrkī (*i.e.* The Elphinstone Codex) which he had procured when he went to Peshawar on his embassy to Kabul. This copy, which he had supposed to have been sent with Dr. Leyden's manuscripts from Calcutta, he was now fortunate enough to recover (in his own library at Poona). "The discovery of this valuable manuscript reduced me, though heartily sick of the task, to the necessity of commencing my work once more."

Erskine's Preface (pp. x, xi) contains various other references to Leyden's work which indicate its quality as tentative and unrevised. It is now in the British Museum Library.

XII

Little need be said here about the *Memoirs of Baber*.[1] Erskine worked on a basis of considerable earlier acquaintance with his Persian original, for, as his Preface tells, he had (after Leyden's death) begun to translate this some years before he definitely accepted the counsel of Elphinstone and Malcolm to undertake the *Memoirs*. He finished his translation in 1813, and by 1816 was able to dedicate his complete volume to Elphinstone, but publication was delayed till 1826. His was difficult pioneer-work, and carried through with the drawback of working on a secondary source. It has done yeoman service, of which the crowning merit is its introduction of Babur's autobiography to the Western world.

XIII

Amongst Erskine's literary remains are several bound volumes of letters from Elphinstone, Malcolm, Leyden, and others of that distinguished group of Scots who promoted the revival of Babur's writings. Erskine's grandson, the late Mr. Lestocq Erskine, placed these, with other papers, at our disposal, and they are now located where they have been welcomed as appropriate additions:—Elphinstone's are in the Advocates' Library, where already (1826) he, through Erskine, had deposited his own Codex — and with his

[1] Cf. Erskine's Preface *passim*, and *in loco* item XI, cap. iv. The *Memoirs of Baber*, and Index *s.n.*

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

letters are those of Malcolm and more occasional correspondents; Leyden's letters (and various papers) are in the Memorial Cottage maintained in his birthplace Denholm (Hawick) by the Edinburgh Border Counties sociation; something fitting went to the Bombay Asiatic Society and a volume of diary to the British Museum. Leyden's papers will help his fuller biography; Elphinstone's letters have special value as recording his co-operation with Erskine by much friendly criticism, remonstrance against delay, counsels and encouragement. They, moreover, shew the estimate an accomplished man of modern affairs formed of Babur Padshah's character and conduct; some have been quoted in Colebrooke's *Life of Elphinstone*, but there they suffer by detachment from the rest of his Baburiana letters; bound together as they now are, and with brief explanatory interpolations, they would make a welcome item for " Babur Padshah's Book-pile ".

XIV

In May 1921 the contents of these volumes were completed, namely, the *Babur-nama in English* and its supplements, the aims of which are to make Babur known in English diction answering to his *ipsissima verba*, and to be serviceable to readers and students of his book and of classic Turki.

XV

Of writings based upon or relating to Babur's the following have appeared :—

Denkwurdigkeiten des Zahir-uddin Muhammad Babar — A. Kaiser (Leipzig, 1828). This consists of extracts translated from the Memoirs.

An abridgement of the Memoirs — R. M. Caldecott (London, 1844).

History of India — Baber and Humayun — W. Erskine (Longmans, 1854).

Babar — Rulers of India series — Stanley Lane-Poole (Oxford, 1899).

Tuzuk-i-babari or Waqi'at-i-babari (*i.e.* the Persian trs.) — Elliot and Dowson's History of India, 1872, vol. iv.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

Babur Padshah *Ghazi* — H. Beveridge (Calcutta Review, 1899).

Babur's diamond, was it the Koh-i-nur? — H. Beveridge, Asiatic Quarterly Review, April, 1899.

Was 'Abdu'r-rahim the translator of Babur's Memoirs? (*i.e.* the *Babur-nama*) — H. Beveridge, AQR., July and October, 1900.

An Empire-builder of the 16th century, Babur—Laurence F. L. Williams (Allahabad, 1918).

Notes on the MSS. of the Turki text (*Babur-nāma*) — A. S. Beveridge, JRAS. 1900, 1902, 1921, 1905, and Part II 1906, 1907, 1908, p. 52 and p. 828, 1909 p. 452 (*see* Index, *s.n.* A. S. B. for topics).

[For other articles and notes by H. B. *see* Index *s.n.*]

Part III. The "Bukhara Babur-nama".

This is a singular book and has had a career as singular as its characteristics, a very comedy of (blameless) errors and mischance. For it is a compilation of items diverse in origin, diction, and age, planned to be a record of the Acts of Babur and Humayun, dependent through its Babur portion on the 'Abdu 'r-rahim Persian translation for re-translation, or verbatim quotation, or dove-tailing effected on the tattered fragments of what had once been Kamran's Codex of the Babur-nama proper, the whole interspersed by stop-gaps attributable to Jahangir. These and other specialities notwithstanding, it ranked for nearly 200 years as a reproduction of Babur's authentic text, as such was sent abroad, as such was reconstructed and printed in Kasan (1857), translated in Paris (1871), catalogued for the Petrograd Oriental School (1894), and for the India Office (1903).

Manifest causes for the confusion of identity are, (1) lack of the guidance in Bukhara and Petrograd of collation with the true text, (2) want of information, in the Petrograd of 1700–25, about Babur's career, coupled with the difficulties of communication with Bukhara, (3) the misleading feature in the compiled book of its author's retention of the autobiographic form of his sources, without explanation as to whether he entered surviving fragments of Kamran's

[1] The last blow was given to the phantasmal reputation of the book by the authoritative Haidarabad Codex which now can be seen in facsimile in many Libraries.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Codex, patchings or extracts from 'Abdu'r-rahim's Persian translation, or quotations of Jahangir's stop-gaps. Of these three causes for error the first is dominant, entailing as it does the drawbacks besetting work on an inadequate basis.

It is necessary to enumerate the items of the Compilation here as they are arranged in Kehr's autograph Codex, because that codex (still in London) may not always be accessible,[1] and because the imprint does not obey its model, but aims at closer agreement of the Bukhara Compilation with Ilminski's gratefully acknowledged guide — *The Memoirs of Baber*. Distinction in commenting on the Bukhara and the Kasan versions is necessary; their discrepancy is a scene in the comedy of errors.

[1] But for present difficulties of intercourse with Petrograd, I would have re-examined with Kehr's the collateral Codex of 1742 (copied in 1839 and now owned by the Petrograd University). It might be useful, as Kehr's volume has lost pages and may be disarranged here and there.

The list of Kehr's items is as follows :—

1 (*not in the Imprint*). A letter from Babur to Kamran the date of which is fixed as 1527 by its committing Ibrahim *Ludi's* son to Kamran's charge (p. 544). It is heard of again in the Bukhara Compilation, is lost from Kehr's Codex, and preserved from his archetype by Klaproth who translated it. Being thus found in Bukhara in the first decade of the eighteenth century (our earliest knowledge of the Compilation is 1709), the inference is allowed that it went to Bukhara as loot from the defeated Kamran's camp and that an endorsement its companion Babur-nama (proper) bears was made by the Auzbeg of two victors over Kamran, both of 1550, both in Tramontana.[1]

2 (*not in Imp.*). Timur-pulad's memo. about the purchase of his Codex in *circ.* 1521 (*eo cap. post*).

3 (*Imp. 1*). Compiler's Preface of Praise (JRAS. 1900, p. 474).

4 (*Imp. 2*). Babur's Acts in Farghana, in diction such as to seem a re-translation of the Persian translation of 1589. How much of Kamran's MS. was serviceable is not easy to decide, because the Turki fettering of 'Abdu'r-rahim's Persian lends itself admirably to re-translation.[2]

5 (*Imp. 3*). The "Rescue-passage" (App. D) attributable to Jahangir.

6 (*Imp. 4*). Babur's Acts in Kabul, seeming (like No. 4) a re-translation or patching of tattered pages. There are also passages taken verbatim from the Persian.

7 (*Imp. omits*). A short length of Babur's Hindustan Section, carefully shewn damaged by dots and dashes.

8 (*Imp. 5*). Within 7, the spurious passage of App. L and also scattered passages about a feast, perhaps part of 7.

9 (*Imp. separates off at end of vol.*). Translated passage from the *Akbar-nama*, attributable to Jahangir, briefly telling of Kanwa (1527), Babur's latter years (both changed to first person), death and court.[3]

[1] That Babur-nama of the "Kamran-docket" is the mutilated and tattered basis, allowed by circumstance, of the compiled history of Babur, filled out and mended by the help of the Persian translation of 1589. Cf. Kehr's Latin Trs. fly-leaf entry; Klaproth *s.n.*; A.N. trs. H.B., p. 260; JRAS. 1908, 1909, on the "Kamran-docket" (where are defects needing Klaproth's second article (1824).

[2] For an analysis of an illustrative passage *see* JRAS. 1906; for facilities of re-translation *see eo cap.* p. xviii, where Erskine is quoted.

[3] *See* A.N. trans., p. 260; Prefaces of Ilminski and de Courteille; ZDMG. xxxvii, Teufel's art.; JRAS. 1906.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

[Babur's history has been thus brought to an end, incomplete in the balance needed for 7. In Kehr's volume a few pages are left blank except for what shews a Russian librarian's opinion of the plan of the book, "Here end the writings of Shah Babur."]

10 (*Imp. omits*). Preface to the history of Humayun, beginning at the Creation and descending by giant strides through notices of Khans and Sultans to "Babur Mirza who was the father of Humayun Padshah". Of Babur what further is said connects with the battle of Ghaj-davan (918-1512 *q.v.*). It is ill-informed, laying blame on him as if he and not Najm Sani had commanded—speaks of his preference for the counsel of young men and of the numbers of combatants. It is noticeable for more than its inadequacy however; its selection of the Ghaj-davan episode from all others in Babur's career supports circumstantially what is dealt with later, the Ghaj-davani authorship of the Compilation.

11 (*Imp. omits*). Under a heading "Humayun Padshah" is a fragment about (his? Accession) Feast, whether broken off by loss of his pages or of those of his archetype examination of the P. Univ. Codex may show.

12 (*Imp. 6*). An excellent copy of Babur's Hindustan Section, perhaps obtained from the Ahrari house. [This Ilminski places (I think) where Kehr has No. 7.] From its position and from its bearing a scribe's date of completion (which Kehr brings over), *viz. Tamt shud 1126* (Finished 1714), the compiler may have taken it for Humayun's, perhaps for the account of his reconquest of Hind in 1555.

[The remaining entries in Kehr's volume are a quatrain which may make jesting reference to his finished task, a librarian's Russian entry of the number of pages (831), and the words *Etablissement Orientale, Fr. v. Adelung*, 1825 (the Director of the School from 1793).[1]

[1] For particulars about Kehr's Codex *see* Smirnov's Catalogue of the School Library and JRAS. 1900, 1906. Like others who have made statements resting on the mistaken identity of the Bukhara Compilation, many of mine are now given to the winds.

Outline of the History of the Compilation.

An impelling cause for the production of the Bukhara compilation is suggested by the date 1709 at which was finished the earliest example known to me. For in the first decade of the eighteenth century Peter the Great gave attention to Russian relations with foreign states of Central Asia and negociated with the Khan of Bukhara for the reception of a Russian mission.[1] Political aims would be forwarded if envoys were familiar with Turki; books in that tongue for use in the School of Oriental Languages would be desired; thus the Compilation may have been prompted and, as will be shown later, it appears to have been produced, and not merely copied, in 1709. The Mission's despatch was delayed till 1719; it arrived in Bukhara in 1721; during its stay a member of its secretariat bought a Compilation MS. noted as finished in 1714 and on a fly-leaf of it made the following note :—

[1] *See* Gregorief's "Russian policy regarding Central Asia", quoted in Schuyler's Turkistan, App. IV.

[2] The Mission was well received, started to return to Petrograd, was attacked by Turkmans, went back to Bukhara, and there stayed until it could attempt the devious route which brought it to the capital in 1725.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

"I, Timur-pulad son of Mirza Rajab son of Pay-chin, bought this book Babur-nama after coming to Bukhara with [the] Russian Florio Beg Beneveni, envoy of the Padshah . . . whose army is numerous as the stars . . . May it be well received! Amen! O Lord of both Worlds!"

Timur-pulad's hope for a good reception indicates a definite recipient, perhaps a commissioned purchase. The vendor may have been asked for a history of Babur; he sold one, but "Babur-nama" is not necessarily a title, and is not suitable for the Compilation; by conversational mischance it may have seemed so to the purchaser and thus have initiated the mistake of confusing the "Bukhara Babur-nama" with the true one.

Thus endorsed, the book in 1725 reached the Foreign Office; there in 1737 it was obtained by George Jacob Kehr, a teacher of Turki, amongst other languages, in the Oriental School, who copied it with meticulous care, understanding its meaning imperfectly, in order to produce a Latin version of it. His Latin rendering was a fiasco, but his reproduction of the Arabic forms of his archetype was so obedient that on its sole basis Ilminski edited the Kasan Imprint (1857). A collateral copy of the Timur-pulad Codex was made in 1742 (as has been said).

In 1824 Klaproth (who in 1810 had made a less valuable extract perhaps from Kehr's Codex) copied from the Timur-pulad MS. its purchaser's note, the Auzbeg ?(?) endorsement as to the transfer of the "Kamran-docket" and Babur's letter to Kamran (*Mémoires relatifs à l'Asie* (Paris).

In 1857 Ilminski, working in Kasan, produced his imprint, which became de Courteille's source for *Les Mémoires de Baber* in 1871. No worker in the above series shews doubt about accepting the Compilation as containing Babur's authentic text. Ilminski was in the difficult position of not having entire reliance on Kehr's transcription, a natural apprehension in face of the quality of the Latin version, his doubts sum up into his words that a reliable text could not be made from his source (Kehr's MS.), but that a Turki reading-book could — and was. As has been said, he did not

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

obey the dual plan of the Compilation Kehr's transcript reveals, this, perhaps, because of the misnomer Babur-nama under which Timur-pulad's Codex had come to Petrograd; this, certainly, because he thought a better history of Babur could be produced by following Erskine than by obeying Kehr — a series of errors following the verbal mischance of 1725. Ilminski's transformation of the items of his source had the ill result of misleading Pavet de Courteille to over-estimate his Turki source at the expense of Erskine's Persian one which, as has been said, was Ilminski's guide — another scene in the comedy. A mischance hampering the French work was its falling to be done at a time when, in Paris 1871, there can have been no opportunity available for learning the contents of Ilminski's Russian Preface or for quiet research and the examination of collateral aids from abroad.[1]

The Author of the Compilation.

The Haidarabad Codex having destroyed acquiescence in the phantasmal view of the Bukhara book, the question may be considered, who was its author?

This question a convergence of details about the Turki MSS. reputed to contain the *Babur-nama*, now allows me to answer with some semblance of truth. Those details have thrown new light upon a colophon which I received in 1900 from Mr. C. Salemann with other particulars concerning the "*Senkovski Babur-nama*," this being an extract from the Compilation; its archetype reached Petrograd from Bukhara a century after Kehr's [*viz.* the Timur-pulad Codex]; it can be taken as a direct copy of the Mulla's original because it bears his colophon.[2] In 1900 I accepted it as merely that of a scribe who had copied Senkovski's archetype, but in 1921 reviewing the colophon for this Preface, it seems to me to be that of the original autograph MS. of the Compilation and to tell its author's name, his title for his book, and the year (1709) in which he completed it.

[1] One might say jestingly that the spirit in the book had rebelled since 1725 against enforced and changing masquerade as a phantasm of two other books!

[2] Neither Ilminski nor Smirnov mentions another "Babur-nama" Codex than Kehr's.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

TABLE OF BUKHARA REPUTED-BABUR-NAMA MSS. (*Waqi'nama-i-padshahi?*).

Names.	Date of completion.	Scribe.	Last known location.	Archetype.	Remarks.
1. Waqi'nama-i-padshahi *alias* Babur-nama.	1121–1709. Date of colophon of earliest known example.	'Âbdu'l-wahhab *q.v.* Taken to be also the author.	Bukhara.	Believed to be the original compilation.	*See* Part III.
2. Nazar Bai Turkistani's MS.	Unknown.	Unknown.	In owner's charge in Petrograd, 1824.	No. 1, the colophon of which it reproduces.	Senkovski's archetype who copied its (transferred) colophon.
3. F. O. Codex (Timur-pulad's MS.).	1126–1714.	Unknown.	F.O. Petrograd, where copied in 1742.	Not stated, an indirect copy of No. 1.	Bought in Bukhara, broughtto Petro. 1725.
4. Kehr's Autograph Codex.	1737.	George Jacob Kehr.	Pet. Or. School, 1894. London T.O. 1921.	No. 3.	*See* Part III.
5. Name not learned.	1155–1742.	Unknown.	Unknown.	No. 3.	Archetype of 9.
6. (Mysore) A.S.B. Codex.	Unknown. JRAS. 1900, Nos. vii and viii.	Unknown.	Asiatic Society of Bengal.	Unknown.	—
7. India Office Codex (Bib. Leydeniana).	Cir. 1810.	Unknown.	India Office, 1921.	No. 6.	Copied for Leyden.
8. "The Senkovski Babur-nama.	1824.	J. Senkovski.	Pet. Asiatic Museum, 1900.	No. 2.	Bears a copy of the colophon of No. 1.
9. Pet. University Codex.	1839?	Mulla Faizkhanov?	Pet. Univ. Library.	No. 5 (?).	—

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Senkovski brought it over from his archetype; Mr. Salemann sent it to me in its original Turki form. (JRAS. 1900, p. 474). Senkovski's own colophon is as follows :—

"J'ai achevé cette copie le 4 Mai, 1824, à St. Petersburg; elle a été faite d'après un exemplaire appartenant à Nazar Bai Turkistani, négociant Boukhari, qui etait venu cette année à St. Petersburg. J. Senkovski."

The colophon Senkovski copied from his archetype is to the following purport :—

"Known and entitled Waqi'nama-i-padshahi (Record of Royal Acts), [this] autograph and composition (bayad u navisht) of Mulla 'Abdu'l-wahhab the Teacher, of Ghaj-davan in Bukhara—God pardon his mistakes and the weakness of his endeavour!—was finished on Monday, Rajab 5, 1121 (Aug. 31st, 1709).—*Thank God!"*

It will be observed that the title Waqi'nama-i-padshahi suits the plan of dual histories (of Babur and Humayun) better than does the "Babur-nama" of Timur-pulad's note, that the colophon does not claim for the Mulla to have copied the elder book (1494–1530) but to have written down and composed one under a differing title suiting its varied contents; that the Mulla's deprecation and thanks tone better with perplexing work, such as his was, than with the steadfast patience of a good scribe; and that it exonerates the Mulla from suspicion of having caused his compilation to be accepted as Babur's authentic text. Taken with its circumstanding matters, it may be the dénoument of the play.

Chapter IV.

The Leyden and Erskine Memoirs of Baber.

The fame and long literary services of the *Memoirs of Baber* compel me to explain why these volumes of mine contain a verbally new English translation of the *Babur-nama* instead of a second edition of the *Memoirs*. My explanation is the simple one of textual values, of the advantage a primary source has over its derivative,

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Babur's original text over its Persian translation which alone was accessible to Erskine.

If the *Babur-nama* owed its perennial interest to its valuable multifarious matter, the *Memoirs* could suffice to represent it, but this it does not; what has kept interest in it alive through some four centuries is the autobiographic presentment of an arresting personality its whole manner, style and diction produce. It is characteristic throughout, from first to last making known the personal quality of its author. Obviously that quality has the better chance of surviving a transfer of Babur's words to a foreign tongue when this can be effected by imitation of them. To effect this was impracticable to Erskine who did not see any example of the Turki text during the progress of his translation work and had little acquaintance with Turki. No blame attaches to his results; they have been the one introduction of Babur's writings to English readers for almost a century; but it would be as sensible to expect a potter to shape a vessel for a specific purpose without a model as a translator of autobiography to shape the new verbal container for Babur's quality without seeing his own. Erskine was the pioneer amongst European workers on Baburiana—Leydens's fragment of unrevised attempt to translate the Bukhara Compilation being a negligible matter, notwithstanding friendship's deference to it; he had ready to his hand no such valuable collateral help as he bequeathed to his successors in the Memoirs volume. To have been able to help in the renewal of his book by preparing a second edition of it, revised under the authority of the Haidarabad Codex, would have been to me an act of literary piety to an old book-friend; I experimented and failed in the attempt; the wording of the Memoirs would not press back into the Turki mould. Being what it is, sound in its matter and partly representative of Babur himself, the all-round safer plan, one doing it the greater honour, was to leave it unshorn of its redundance and unchanged in its wording, in the place of worth and dignity it has held so long.

Brought to this point by experiment and failure, the way lay open to make bee-line over intermediaries back to the fountain-head of

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

re-discovered Turki text preserved in the Haidarabad Codex. Thus I have enjoyed an advantage no translator has had since 'Abdu'r-rahim in 1589.

Concerning matters of style and diction, I may mention that three distinct impressions of Babur's personality are set by his own, Erskine's and de Courteille's words and manner. These divergencies, while partly due to differing textual bases, may result mainly from the use by the two Europeans of unsifted, current English and French. Their portrayal might have been truer, there can be no doubt, if each had restricted himself to such under-lying component of his mother-tongue as approximates in linguistic stature to classic Turki. This probability Erskine could not foresee for, having no access during his work to a Turki source and no familiarity with Turki, he missed their lessoning.

Turki, as Babur writes it—terse, word-thrifty, restrained and lucid, —comes over neatly into Anglo-Saxon English, perhaps through primal affinities. Studying Babur's writings in verbal detail taught me that its structure, idiom and vocabulary dictate a certain mechanism for a translator's imitation. Such are the simple sentence, devoid of relative phrasing, copied in the form found, whether abrupt and brief or, ranging higher with the topic, gracious and dignified— the retention of Babur's use of "we" and "I" and of his frequent impersonal statement—the matching of words by their root-notion— the strict observance of Babur's limits of vocabulary, effected by allotting to one Turki word one English equivalent, thus excluding synonyms for which Turki has little use because not shrinking from the repeated word; lastly, as preserving relations of diction, the replacing of Babur's Arabic and Persian aliens by Greek and Latin ones naturalized in English. Some of these aids towards shaping a counterpart of Turki may be thought small, but they obey a model and their aggregate has power to make or mar a portrait.

(1) Of the uses of pronouns it may be said that Babur's "we" is neither regal nor self-magnifying but is co-operative, as beseems the chief whose volunteer and nomad following makes or unmakes his power, and who can lead and command only by remittent consent

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

accorded to him. His "I" is individual. The *Memoirs* varies much from these uses.

(2) The value of reproducing impersonal statements is seen by the following example, one of many similar:—When Babur and a body of men, making a long saddle-journey, halted for rest and refreshment by the road-side; "There was drinking," he writes, but Erskine, "I drank"; what is likely being that all or all but a few shared the local *vin du pays*.

(3) The importance of observing Babur's limits of vocabulary needs no stress, since any man of few words differs from any man of many. Measured by the Babur-nama standard, the diction of the *Memoirs* is redundant throughout, and frequently over-coloured. Of this a pertinent example is provided by a statement of which a minimum of seven occurrences forms my example, namely, that such or such a man whose life Babur sketches was vicious or a vicious person (*fisq, fāsiq*). Erskine once renders the word by "vicious" but elsewhere enlarges to "debauched, excess of sensual enjoyment, lascivious, libidinous, profligate, voluptuous". The instances are scattered and certainly Erskine could not feel their collective effect, but even scattered, each does its ill-part in distorting the Memoirs portraiture of the man of the one word.[1]

Postcript of Thanks.

I take with gratitude the long-delayed opportunity of finishing my book to express the obligation I feel to the Council of the Royal Asiatic Society for allowing me to record in the Journal my Notes on the Turki Codices of the *Babur-nama* begun in 1900 and occasionally appearing till 1921. In minor convenience of work, to be able to gather those progressive notes together and review them, has been of

[1] A Correspondent combatting my objection to publishing a second edition of the *Memoirs*, backed his favouring opinion by reference to 'Umar Khayyam and Fitzgerald. Obviously no analogy exists; Erskine's redundance is not the flower of a deft alchemy, but is the prosaic consequence of a secondary source.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

value to me in noticeable matters, two of which are the finding and multiplying of the Haidarabad Codex, and the definite clearance of the confusion which had made the Bukhara (reputed) *Babur-nama* be mistaken for a reproduction of Babur's true text.

Immeasurable indeed is the obligation laid on me by the happy community of interests which brought under our roof the translation of the biographies of Babur, Humayun, and Akbar. What this has meant to my own work may be surmised by those who know my husband's wide reading in many tongues of East and West, his retentive memory and his generous communism in knowledge. One signal cause for gratitude to him from those caring for Baburiana, is that it was he made known the presence of the Haidarabad Codex in its home library (1899) and thus led to its preservation in facsimile.

It would be impracticable to enumerate all whose help I keep in grateful memory and realize as the fruit of the genial camaraderie of letters.

ANNETTE S. BEVERIDGE.

PITFOLD, SHOTTERMILL, HASLEMERE.
August, 1921.

THE BABUR-NĀMA IN ENGLISH

(MEMOIRS OF BĀBUR).

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
GSL

The Bābur-nāma in English

(Memoirs of Bābur)

BY

Ẓahīru'd-dīn Muḥammad Bābur Pādshāh *Ghāzī*

Translated from the original Turki Text

BY

ANNETTE SUSANNAH BEVERIDGE.

Issued in Four Fasciculi :—Farghana 1912 — Kabul 1914—Hindustan 1917—Preface, Indices, etc. 1921.

Vol. II

SOLD BY

LUZAC & CO., 40 Great Russell Street, London.

1921

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
सत्यमेव जयते · भारत सरकार

GSL

THE HISTORY OF BABUR

OR BABUR-NAMA

Index I. Personal

Abā-bikr Mīrzā *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Abū-sa'īd and a Badakhshī begīm—particulars 22, 26; his attack on Ḥiṣār 51; defeated by Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* and his death (884) 260; his Bāī-qarā marriage 266; a Badakhshī connection 51; [†884 AH.–1479 AD.].

Abā-bikr Mīrzā *Dūghlāt Kāshgharī*, son of Sāniz and a Chīrās (var. Jarās) begīm—invades Farghāna (899) 32; his annexations in Badakhshān 695; his Mīrānshāhī wife 48; [†920 AH.–1514 AD.].

'Abbās, a slave—murderer of Aūlūgh (Ūlūgh) Beg *Shāh-rukhī* (853) 85.

'Abbās Sulṭān *Aūzbeg*—marries Gul-chihra *Mīrān-shāhī*, Bābur's daughter (954) 713.

'Abdu'l-'alī Tarkhān *Arghūn Chīngīz-Khānid*—particulars 38, 39; [†cir. 899 AH.–1494 AD.].

'Abdu'l-'azīz *mīr-akhwur*—ordered to catch pheasants (925) 404; ☞[1] posted in Lāhor (930) 442; sent into Milwat (932) 460; on service 465–6, 471, 530; the reserve at Pānīpat 472–3; reinforces the right 473; surprised and defeated by Sangā (933) 549, 550; in the left wing at Kānwā 567, 570; pursues Sangā 576; ordered against Balūchīs (935) 638; writes from Lāhor about the journey of Bābur's family 659, 660; arrested 688; ☞ sequel to his sedition not given in the *Akbar-nāma* 692; ☞ reference to his sedition 698.

'Abdu'l-'azīz Mīrzā *Shāh-rukhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Aūlūgh Beg—his Chaghatāī wife 19–20.

'Abdu'l-bāqī—surrenders Qandahār to Bābur (928) 436, 437.

'Abdu'l-bāqī Mīrzā *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of 'Uṣmān—particulars 280; referred to 266 n. 6; goes to Herī (908) 336; his wife Sulṭānīm *Bāī-qarā* 265 n. 5, 280.

'Abdu'l-ghaffār *tawāchī*—conveys military orders (935) 638.

Mīr **'Abdu'l-ghafūr** *Lārī*, of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā's* Court—particulars 284, 285; [†912 AH.–1506–7 AD.].

[1] The fist indicates Translator's matter.

GSL

Khwāja **'Abdu'l-haqq**, brother of Khwāja Makhdūmī Nūrā—waited upon by Bābur (935) 641, 686; has leave to stay in Āgra 641.

'Abdu'l-karīm *Ushrit* (var.) *Aūīghūr*[1] (var.)—serving Aḥmad *Mīrān-shāhī* 40; captured by an Aūzbeg (902) 65.

'Abdu'l-khaliq Beg *Isfarāyinī*—particulars 273–4 (where read *Isfarāyinī* for "*Isfārayinī*").

Shaikh **'Abdu'l-lāh** *āīshīk-āghā*—with Jahāngīr (899) 32; leaves Bābur for home (902) 191.

Sayyid **'Abdu'l-lāh** *Andikhūdī*—his Bāī-qarā wife Bairām-sulṭān and their son Barka *q.v.*

Khwāja **'Abdu'l-lāh** *Anṣārī*—his tomb visited by Bābur (912) 305; a surmised attendant on it 145 n. 1; [†481 AH.–1088 AD.].

Shaikh **'Abdu'l-lāh** *bakāwal*—with the Bāī-qarā families (913) 328.

Shaikh **'Abdu'l-lāh** *Barlās*—particulars 51; excites the Tarkhān rebellion (901) 61–2; his daughter a cause of attempt on Samarkand 64; with his son-in-law Mas'ūd *Mīrān-shāhī* (903) 93.

Khwāja **'Abdu'l-lāh Khwājagān Khwāja**—fifth son of 'Ubaidu'l-lāh *Aḥrārī*—his son 'Abdu'sh-shahīd, *q.v.*

Mullā **'Abdu'l-lāh** *kitābdār*—one of eleven left with Bābur (913) 337; given the third of a potent confection (925) 373; a drunken lapse 398; induced by Bābur to restrict his drinking 399; at a party where Bābur, abstaining, watches the drinkers 400–1; rebuked for an offending verse 416; joins Bābur in an autumn garden 418; on service (932) 468, 530; in the right centre at Pānīpat (932) 472, 473, and at Kānwa (933) 565, 569; sent to take possession of Āgra 475; is sarcastic 581; in attendance on Aūzbeg envoys (935) 631; sent to take charge of Sambhal (935) 675, 687; conveys orders 676; sends news of Bīban and Bāyazīd 679; arrives in Āgra, 687.

Khwāja **'Abdu'l-lāh** *Marwārīd*—particulars 278–9: pre-eminent on the dulcimer 291; [†922 AH.–1516 AD.].

'Abdu'l-lāh Mīrzā *Shāh-rukhī Timūrid, Barlās Turk*—succeeds his father, Ibrāhīm, in Shīrāz (838) 20, and his

[1] See Abū'l-ghāzī's *Shajarat-i-turkī* on the origin and characteristics of the tribe (Désmaisons trs. Index *s.n.* Oūghūr, especially pp. 16, 37, 39).

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

cousin 'Abdu'l-laṭīf in Transoxiana (854) 85–6; Yūnas Khān his retainer *q.v.*; [† Jumāda I. 22, 855 AH.–1450 AD.].[1]

Khwāja **'Abdu'l-lāh Qāẓī**, see Khwāja Maulānā-i-qāẓī.

'Abdu'l-lāh Sulṭān *Aūzbeg-Shaibān*—particulars 267; serving Bābur in Hindūstān (after 933?) 267.

'Abdu'l-laṭīf *bakhshī*—serving Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (901) 57; acts for Bābur from Qūndūz (932–3) 546.

'Abdu'l-laṭīf Mīrzā *Shāh-rukhī Tīmūrid Barlās Turk*—murders and succeeds his father Aūlūgh Beg (853) 15; a couplet on his parricide 85[2]; [†Rabī' I. 26, 854 AH.–1450 AD.[3]].

'Abdul'-laṭīf Sulṭān *Aūzbeg, Shaibānī Chīngīz-khānid*, son of Ḥamza—Bābur's half-sister Yādgār (*æt. cir.* 8) his share of spoil (908) 18.

Mullā **'Abdu'l-malūk** *Khwāstī* (var. malik)—at Bajaur (925) 368; sent ahead into Bhīra 381, and to Kābul 415; returns from an embassy to 'Irāq (932) 446 (here *qūrchī*); sent again (935) 642; on service (933) 576, 582.

'Abdu'l-minān, son of Mullā Ḥaidar—holding Bīsh-kīnt (907) 151.

Amīr **'Abdu'l-qadūs Beg** *Dūghlāt* — slays Jamāl *Khar Arghūn* (877) 35; conveys wedding gifts to Bābur and arouses suspicion (900) 43; [for his death see T.R. trs. pp. 94, 103].

'Abdu'l-qadūs Beg *Kohbur Chaghatāī*—with Bābur at Mādū (Māẓū) (905) 109 (where for "qāsim" read qadūs); one of the eight fugitives from Akhsī (908) 177.

Mīrak **'Abdu'r-raḥīm** *Ṣadr*—his servant Badru'd-dīn *q.v.*

'Abdu'r-raḥīm *shaghāwal*—sent to speak the Bhīra people fair for Bābur (925) 381; given charge of Ibrāhīm *Lūdī's* mother (933) 543; fetches a hostage to Court 578, who escapes 581.

Maulānā **'Abdu'r-raḥīm** *Turkistānī*—fleeces Khwānd-amīr 328.

Mulla **'Abdu'r-raḥmān** *Ghaznawī* — particulars 218; [†921 AH.–1515 AD.].

Maulānā **'Abdu'r-raḥmān** *Jāmī*—his letters imitated by Nawā'ī 271; his sarcasm on Shaikhīm's verse 277; his

[1] This date is misplaced in my text and should be transferred from p. 83, l. 3 fr. ft. to p. 86, l. 1, there to follow "two years".

[2] A fuller reference to the I.S. than is given on p. 85 n. 2, is ii, 44 and iii, 167.

[3] Cf. *s.n.* 'Abdu'l-lāh Mīrzā *Shāh-rukhī* for a date misplaced in my text.

GSL

tomb visited by Bābur (912) 285, 305; Bābur's reverential mention of him 283, 286, his example followed by production of the *Wālidiyyah-risāla* (935) 620; his birth-place 623 n. 8; his disciple 'Abdu'l-ghafūr 284; [898 AH.–1492 AD.].

'Abdu'r-raḥmān Khān *Barak-zāī Afghān*, Amīr of Afghānistān—mentioned in connection with Jāmī's tomb 305 n. 6; [†1319 AH.–1901 AD.].

'Abdu'r-razzāk Mīrzā *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Aūlūgh Beg *Kābulī*—loses Kābul (910) 195, 365; out with Bābur 234; surmised part-vendor of Bābur's mother's burial-ground 246 n. 2; in Herāt (912) 298; escapes Shaibānī and joins Bābur (913) 331; in the left wing at Qandahār 334; his loot 337–8; deserts Qalāt in fear of Shaibānī 340; left in charge of Kābul *ib.*; given Nīngnahār 344; rebels (914) 345; his position stated 345 n. 6; [†915 AH.–1509 AD. ?].

Khwāja **'Abdu'sh-shahīd**, son of Aḥrārī's fifth son Khwājagān-khwāja ('Abdu'l-lāh)—placed on Bābur's right-hand (935) 631; gifts made to him 632; invited to a *ma'jūn*-party 653; particulars 653 n. 4; ☞ a likely recipient of the *Mubīn* 438, 631 n. 3; [†982 AH.–1574 AD.].

'Abdu'sh-shukūr *Mughūl*, son of Qambar-i-'alī *Silākh*—serving Jahāngīr *Mīrān-shāhī* (after 910) 192; in the right wing at Kānwa (933) 566.

'Abdu'l-wahhāb *Mughūl*—given Shaikh Pūrān to loot (913) 328.

'Abdu'l-wahhāb *shaghāwal*, servant of 'Umar-shaikh and Aḥmad *Mīrān-shāhī*—forwards news (899) 25; gives Khujand to Bābur 54; his son Mīr Mughūl *q.v.*

Abraha *Yemenī*, an *Abyssinian Christian*—his defeat (571 AD.) 563 n. 3.

Imām **Abū Ḥanīfa**—his followers' respect for the *Hidāyat* 76; his ruling that peacock-meat is lawful food 493.

Khwāja **Abū'l-barka** *Farāqī*—criticizes Banā'ī's verse (906) 137.

Shaikh **Abū'l-fatḥ**, servant of the Shāh-zāda of Mungīr—envoy from Bengal to Bābur (934, 935) 676; placed on Bābur's right-hand (935) 631.

Abū'l-fatḥ Sa'īd Khān, see Sa'īd Khān *Chaghatāī*.

Abū'l-fatḥ *Turkmān*, son of 'Umar—his joining Bābur from 'Irāq 280; made military-collector of Dhūlpūr (933) 540; Bābur visits his *hammām* (935) 615.

Abū'l-faẓl, see *Akbar-nāma*.

Abū'l-ḥasan *qūr-begī*—in the right wing at Qandahār (913) 334; does well (925) 404; his brother Muḥammad Ḥusain *q.v.*

Abū'l-ḥasan *qūrchī*—in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335.

Abū'l-hāshim, servant of Sl. 'Alī [Ṭaghāī *Begchik*]—overtakes Bābur with ill news (925) 412.

Abū'l-ma'ālī *Tirmīẕī*—☞ his burial-place has significance as to Mahdī Khwāja's family 705; [†971 AH.–1564 AD.].

Khwāja **Abū'l-makāram**—supports Bāī-sunghar *Mīrān-shāhī* (901) 62, (902) 65; acts for peace (903) 91; meets Bābur, both exiles (904) 99; at Bābur's capture of Samarkand (906) 132, 141; leaves it with him 147 n. 2; speaks for him (908) 157–8; fails to recognize him 161; ☞ at Archīān 184; [†908 AH.–1502 AD.].

Shaikh **Abū'l-manṣūr** *Mātarīdī*—his birthplace Samarkand 75, 76; [†333 AH.–944 AD.].

Abū'l-muḥammad *neza-bāz*—in the *tūlghuma* of the left wing at Pānīpat (932) 473; on service (933) 582, (934) 589, 598.

Abū'l-muḥammad *Khujandī*—his sextant 74 n. 4.

Abū'l-muḥsin Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā Timūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Ḥusain and Laṭīf—particulars 262 (where for "ḥusain" read muḥsin), 269; serving his father (901) 58; defeats his brother Badī'u'z-zamān (902) 69, 70; defeated by his father at Ḥalwā-spring (904) 260; his men take Qarākūl from Aūzbegs (906) 135; co-operates against Shaibānī (912) 296; rides out to meet Bābur 297; they share a divan 298; presses him to winter in Herī 300; returns to his district (Merv) 301; his later action and death 329–30, 331; [†913 AH.–1507 AD.].

Abū'l-muslim Kūkūldāsh—brings an Arghūn gift to Bābur (925) 401, 402.

Abū'l-qāsim *Jalāīr*—tells Bābur a parrot story (935)[1] 494.

Abū'l-qāsim—a musician (923) 387, 388 (here Qāsim only).

Abū'l-qāsim *Kohbur Chaghatāī*, son of Ḥaidar-i-qāsim—on service with Bābur (902) 68, (906) 130, 131, 133; in the right wing at Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) 139; killed 141; [†906 AH.–1501 AD.].

Shaikh **Abū'l-wajd** *Fārighī*, maternal-uncle of Zain *Khawāfī*—makes verse on the Kābul-river (932) 448; his chronogram on Al-amān's birth (935) 621; [†940 AH.–1533 AD.[2]].

[1] The date 935 AH. is inferred from p. 483.

[2] Cf. Badāyūnī's *Muntakhabu't-tawārīkh* and Ranking's trs. i, 616 and n. 4, 617.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Shaikh **Abū-sa'īd Khān** *Dar-miyān*[1]—particulars 276.

Sulṭān **Abū-sa'īd Mīrzā** *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*—his descent 14; asserts Tīmūrid supremacy over Chaghatāī Khāqāns (855) 20, 344, 352; takes Māwarā'u'n-nahr (855) 86; forms his Corps of Braves 28, 50; a single combat in his presence (857) 50; defeats Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (868) 259; a swift courier to him 25; joined by the Black-sheep Turkmāns (872) 49; orders the Hindūstān army mobilized 46; defeated and killed by the White-sheep Turkmāns (873) 25, 46, 49; appointments named 24, 37; his banishment of Nawā'ī 271; reserves a Chaghatāī wife for a son 21, 36; his Badakhshī wife and their son 22,[2] 260; his Tarkhān *Arghūn* wife and their sons, 33, 45; his mistress Khadīja *q.v.*; his daughters Pāyanda-sulṭān, Shahr-bānū, Rābi'a-sulṭān, Khadīja-sulṭān, Fakhr-i-jahān, Apāq-sulṭān, Āq Begīm *q.v.*; retainers named as his 'Alī-dost *Sāghārīchī*, Muḥammad Barandūq, Aūrūs, and Ẓū'n-nūn *Arghūn q.v.*; his marriage connection Nūyān *Tīrmīzī q.v.*; [†873 AH.–1469 AD.].

Abū-sa'īd Pūrān, see Jamālu'd-dīn.

Abū-sa'īd Sulṭān *Auzbeg-Shaibān, Chīngīz-khānid,* son of Kūchūm—☞ at Ghaj-davān (918) 360; at Jām (935) 622, 636; sends an envoy to Bābur 631, 632, 641; [†940 AH.–1533–4 AD.].

Shaikh **Abū-sa'īd Tarkhān** (var. Bū-sa'īd)—his house Mīrzā Khān's loot in Qandahār (913) 338.

Abū-turāb Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk,* son of Ḥusain and Mīnglī—particulars 262, 269; his son Sohrab *q.v.*; [† before 911 AH.–1505–6 AD.].

Adīk Sulṭān *Qazzāq, Jūjī Chīngīz-khānid* (var. Aūng Sulṭān), son of Jānī Beg Khān (T.R. trs. 373)—husband of Sulṭān-nigār *Chaghatāī q.v.*

'Ādil Sulṭān *Auzbeg-Shaibān* (?), *Chingīz-khānid* (?), son of Mahdī and a Bāī-qarā begīm—marries Shād *Bāī-qarā* 263; suggestions as to his descent 264 n. 1; waits on Bābur at Kalānūr (932) 458; on Bābur's service 468, 471, 475, 530; in the left wing at Pānīpat 472, and at Kānwa (933) 567, 570; ordered against Balūchīs (935) 638; ☞ mentioned as a landless man 706.

Sayyida **Afāq,** a legendary wife of Bābūr 358 n. 2; her son and grandson *ib.*

[1] Ferté translates this sobriquet by *le dévoué* (*Vie de Sl. Hossein Baikara* p. 40 n. 3).

[2] At p. 22 n. 8 fill out to Cf. f. 6*b* (p. 13) n. 5.

Afghānī Āghāchā, see Mubārika.

Sayyid **Afẓal Beg**, son of 'Alī *Khwāb-bīn*—conveys Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā's* summons to Bābur for help against Shaibānī (911) 255; particulars 282; takes news to Herāt of Bābur's start from Kābul (912) 294; sends him news of Ḥusain's death 295; [†921 AH.–1516 AD.].

Āghā Begīm *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Ḥusain and Pāyanda-sulṭān—parentage and marriage (or betrothal, H.S. iii, 327) 266; [† died in childhood].

Āghā-sulṭān, *ghūnchachi* of 'Umar Shaikh—her daughter Yādgār-i-sulṭān *q.v.*

Āhī—his feet frost-bitten (912) 311.

Āhī, a poet—particulars 289; [†907 AH.–1501–2].

Ahlī, a poet—particulars 290; (for 4 writers using *Āhlī* as their pen-name see 290 n. 6).

Sulṭān **Aḥmad** *Aīlchī-būghā, Mughūl*—one of four daring much (912) 315; in the left wing at Qandahār (913) 334.

Pīr **Aḥmad**—leaves Samarkand with the Tarkhāns (905) 121; fights for Bābur at Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) (906) 139.

Aḥmad *Afshār Turk*—a letter to him endorsed by Bābur (935) 617.

Mīrzā **Aḥmad 'Alī** *Farsī, Barlās*—particulars 273.

Aḥmad 'Alī Tarkhān *Arghūn*, brother of Qulī Beg—favours Bābur and admits him to Qandahār (913) 337.

Mullā **Aḥmad** *Balkhī*—conveys treasure to Balkh (932) 446.

Mirzā Sayyidī **Aḥmad** *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Mīrān-shāh—particulars 257 n. 5; named in a line of descent 280 n. 1; his son Aḥmad and grandson 'Abdu'l-bāqī *q.v.*

Mīr **Aḥmad Beg** *Itārajī Mughūl*, paternal-uncle of Tambal—guardian of a son of The Khān (Maḥmūd) 115; reinforces Bābur (903) 92; acts against him (905) 115, 116; acts against 'Alī *Mīrān-shāhī* 112; makes a contemptuous speech about Tambal (906) 145.

Aḥmad Beg *Ṣafawī*—☞ leads a reinforcement to help Bābur (917) 353.

Sulṭān **Aḥmad** *Chār-shamba'ī*, see Chār-shamba.

Aḥmad *chāshnīgīr*—helps in poisoning Bābur (933) 541; [†933 AH.–1526 AD.].

Aḥmad Ḥājī Beg *Dūldāī, Barlās Turk*—particulars 25, 37, 38; his pen-name Wafā'ī and a couplet of his 38; his

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

hospitality to 'Alī-sher *Nawāī* 38, 271; drives Khusrau Shāh from Samarkand (900) 51; supports Bāī-sunghar *Mīrān-shāhī* in the Tarkhān rebellion (901) 62, 63; his death at the hands of slaves and slave-women 63–4; [†901 AH.–1496 AD.].

Aḥmadī *parwānchī*—on service (925) 377, (932) 458, 460, (933) 540; sent to surprise Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* (932) 468 (his name is omitted in my text); in the left centre at Pānīpat 472, 473; his ill-behaviour in the heats 524.

Sulṭān **Aḥmad Khān—Alacha Khān**—*Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*, son of Yūnas and Shāh Begīm—particulars 23, 160; meaning of his sobriquet Alacha Khān 23; younger Khān-dādā, Bābur's name for him 129; considered as a refuge for Bābur (899) 29, (903) 92, (906) 129, (908) 158; visits Tāshkīnt (908) 159; ceremonies of meeting 160–1, 171–2; moves with his elder brother Maḥmūd against Tambal 161, 168, 171; his kindness to Bābur 159, 166–7, 169, 171; is given Bābur's lands and why 168; retires from Andijān in fear of Shaibānī 172; defeated by Shaibānī at Archīān (908 or 909) 7, 23, ☞ 182–3; his death (909) reported to Bābur (911) 246 and n. 4: his sons Manṣūr, Sa'īd, Bābā (T.R. trs. 160, Bābājak), Chīn-tīmūr, Tūkhtā-būghā, and Aīsan-tīmūr *q.v.*; his grandson Bābā *q.v.*; ☞ followers of his return from forced migration (908) when Shaibānī is killed (916) 351; [† end of 909 AH.–1504 AD.].

Aḥmad Khān *Ḥājī-tarkhānī* (*Astrakhānī*)—marries Badī'u'l-jamāl (Badka) *Bāī-qarā* (899?) 257, 258; their sons (Maḥmūd and Bahādur) 258; their daughter Khān-zāda *q.v.*

Sulṭān **Aḥmad Mīrzā** *Dūghlāt*—sent by The Khān (Maḥmūd) to help Bābur (908) 161.

Sulṭān **Aḥmad Mīrzā** *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Abū-sa'īd—the lands his father gave him 35, 86; his brother Maḥmūd taken to his care (873 or 4) 46; his disaster on the Chīr (895) 17, 25, 31, 34; a swift courier to him 25; defeats 'Umar Shaikh 17, 34; 12 n. 2; 53; invades Farghāna (899) 13, 30; given Aūrā-tīpā 27; dreaded for Bābur 29; retires and dies 31, 33; particulars 33, 40; referred to by Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (910) 190; his wives and children 35–6; an honoured Beg Nūyān *Tīrmīzī* q.v.; [†899 AH.–1494 AD.].

Sulṭān **Aḥmād Mīrzā**, *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Mīrzā Sayyidī Aḥmad—particulars 257 n. 5; his wife Ākā Begīm *Bāī-qarā* and their son Kīchīk Mīrzā *q.v.*; 266 n. 6; a building of his at Herī 305.

Aḥmād *mushtāq, Turkmān*—takes Maḥmūd *Mīrān-shāhī* to Ḥiṣār (873 or 4) 46–7.

Sulṭān **Aḥmad** *qarāwal*, father of Qūch (Qūj) Beg, Tardī Beg and Sher-afgān Beg *q.v.*—defends Ḥiṣār (901) 58; enters Bābur's service (905) 112; in the left wing at Khūbān (905) 113; holds Marghīnān 123.

Aḥmad-i-qāsim *Kohbur Chaghatāī*, son of Ḥaidar-i-qāsim—with Bābur (906) 133; invited to a disastrous entertainment (907) 152; joins Jahāngīr and Tambal 156; in Akhsī (908) 171; defeats an Aūzbeg raider (910) 195; helps to hold Kābul for Bābur (912) 313; pursues Mīrzā Khān 317, 320; holding Tāshkīnt against Aūzbegs (918) 356, 358, 396, 397; a Kābulī servant of his 351.

Aḥmad-i-qāsim *Qībchāq Turk*, (grand-?) son of Bāqī *Chaghāniānī* and a sister of Khusrau Shāh, perhaps son of Bāqī's son Muḥammad-i-qāsim (189 n. 3)—holding Kāhmard and Bāmīān (910) 189; given charge of the families of Bābur's expeditionary force 189; ill-treats them and is forced to flee 197, 243; goes to Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā ib.*; killed at Qūndūz 244; [†910 AH.–1505 AD.].

Sultan **Aḥmad Qāzī** *Qīlīch*—particulars 29; his son Khwāja Maulānā-i-qaẓī *q.v.*

Aḥmad *qūshchī*—seen by the fugitive Bābur (908) 180.

Khwāja **Aḥmad** *Sajāwandī*—his birthplace 217.

Aḥmad Shāh *Khīljī Turk* — dispossessed of Chandīrī by Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* 593; restored by Bābur (934) 598.

Aḥmad Shāh *Durrānī, Abdālī Afghān*—his victory at Pānīpat (1174) 472; [†1182 AH.–1772 AD.].

Aḥmad Tarkhān *Arghūn Chīngīz-khānid* (?)—joins Bābur in Samarkand (906) 133; loses Dabūsī to Shaibānī 137; [†906 AH.–1500 AD.].

Aḥmad (son of) Tawakkal *Barlās*, amir of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā*—particulars 272.

Aḥmad *yāsāwal*—conveys a message from Bābur to the begs of Kābul Fort (912) 314.

Khwāja **Aḥmad** *Yasawī*—**Sayyid Ātā**—Shaibānī's vow at his shrine 348, 356; [†514 AH.–1120–1 AD.].[1]

Aḥmad-i-yūsuf Beg *Aūghlāqchī*, son of Ḥasan, nephew of Yūsuf—managing Yār-yīlāq for 'Alī *Mīrān-shāhī* (904) 98; dismissed on suspicion of favouring Bābur 98; probably

[1] For an account of his tomb see Schuyler's *Turkistān*, 1, 70–72.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

joins Bābur with his uncle (910) 196; remonstrated with him for fighting unmailed (911) 252; helping loyalists in Kābul (912) 313; saves Bābur a blow 315, 316; at Bājaur (925) 369, 401 (here Aḥmad Beg); joins Bābur in Hindūstān (933) 550; in the right wing at Kānwa 566 (where in n. 1 for "may" read is), 569; governor of Sīālkot 98.

Malik **Aḥmad** *Yūsuf-zāī Afghān*, nephew of Sulaimān *q.v.*—particulars App. K.

Aī Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Maḥmūd and Khān-zāda II.—betrothed to Jahāngīr. (*cir.* 895) 48; married (910) 189; their daughter 48.

Aīkū-sālam *Mughūl*—rebels against Bābur (914) 345.

Aīkū[1]-tīmūr Beg Tarkhān *Arghūn*—his descendant Darwesh Beg *q.v.*; [†793 AH.–1391 AD.].

Sulṭan **Aīlīk** *Māzī Aūighūr* (*Ūighūr*)—his descendant Khwāja Maulānā-i-qāẓī *q.v.*

Aīrzīn Beg (var. Aīrāzān) *Bārīn Mughūl*—supports Yūnas *Chaghatāī* (*cir.* 830), takes him to Aūlūgh Beg *Shāh-rukhī* (*cir.* 832) 19; ill-received and his followers scattered 20; [†832 AH.–1428 AD.].

Aīsān-būghā Khān *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānīd*, son of Dāwā—named in Yūnas Khān's genealogy 19; [†*cir.* 718 AH.–1318 AD.].

Aīsān-būghā Khān II. *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*, son of Wais—particulars 19; invades Farghāna and defeated at Aspara (*cir.* 855) 20; quarrels with the begs of the Sāghārīchī *tūmān* and leads to the elevation of Yūnas *ib.*; [†866 AH.–1462 AD.].

Aīsān-daulat Begīm *Kūnjī* (or *Kūnchī*) *Mughūl*, wife of Yūnas *Chaghatāī*—particulars 20, 21; her good judgment (900) 43; entreats Bābur's help for Andijān (903) 88–9; joins him in Khujand after the loss of Andijān 92, and in Dikh-kat after that of Samarkand (907) 151; news of her death reaches Kābul (911) 246; rears one of 'Umar Shaikh's daughters 18; her kinsmen 'Alī-dost, Sherīm, Ghiyās *q.v.*; [†910 AH.–1505 AD.].

Aīsān-qulī Sultān *Aūzbeg-Shaibān, Chīngīz-khanid*—his Bāī-qarā marriage, 265, 397.

Aīsān-tīmūr Sulṭān *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*, son of Aḥmad (Alacha Khān)—on Bābur's service 318, 682; meets

[1] Or Aīgū (Āyāgū) from *āyāgh*, foot, perhaps expressing close following of Tīmūr, whose friend the Beg was.

Bābur (935) 654; in the battle of the Ghogrā 672, 673; thanked 677; angers Bābur 684.

Ākā Begīm *Barlās Turk*, daughter of Timūr—an ancestress of Husain *Bāi-qarā* 256.

Ākā Begīm *Bāi-qarā Timūrid*, daughter of Manṣūr and Fīrūza—particulars 257; her husband Aḥmad and their son Kīchīk Mīrzā *q.v.*

Abū'l-fatḥ Jalālu'd-dīn Muḥammad **Akbar** *Mīrān-shāhī Timūrid, Barlās Turk*, grandson of Bābur and Māhīm—☞ 184; ☞ an addition about him made to the Chihil-zina inscription 432; ☞ his visit to Pānīpat (963) 472; his change in the name of the cherry explained by Bābur's words 501, n. 6; [†1014 AH.–1605 AD.].

Alacha Khān, see Aḥmad *Chaghatāī*.

Al-amān, son of Humāyūn—his birth and name (935) 621, 624, 642; [† in infancy].

'Ālam Khān *Kālpī*, son of Jalāl Khān *Jik-hat* (or *Jig-hat*)—holding Kālpī and not submissive to Bābur (932) 523; goes to Court (933) 544; disobeys orders 557; is Bābur's host in Kālpī (934) 590; on service (935) 682; an order about him 684.

'Alāu'u'd-dīn **'Ālam Khān** *Lūdī Afghān*, son of Buhlūl—☞ a principal actor between 926–32 AH. 428; ☞ asks and obtains Bābur's help against his nephew Ibrāhīm (929) 439–441: placed by Bābur in charge of Dībālpūr (930) 442; ☞ defeated by Daulat Khān *Yūsuf-khail* (931) 444; flees to Kābul and is again set forth 444, 455; defeated by Ibrāhīm and returns to Bābur (932) 454–8; his relations with Bābur reviewed 455, n. 1; in Fort Ginguta 457, 463; in the left centre at Kānwa (933) 565; his sons Jalāl, Kamāl, and Sher Khān (*Lūdī*) *q.v.*

Sulṭān 'Alāu'u'd-dīn **'Ālam Khān** *Sayyidī*—holding Dihlī 481; [†855 AH.–1451 AD.].

'Ālam Khān *Tahangarī*, brother of Nizām Khān of Bīāna—works badly with Bābur's force (933) 538; defeated by his brother 539; sent out of the way before Kānwa 547.

'Alāu'u'd-dīn Ḥusain Shāh, ruler in Bengal—the circumstances of his succession 483; his son Naṣrat *q.v.*; [†925 AH.–1518 AD.?].

'Alāu'u'd-dīn Ḥusain *Jahān-soz Ghūrī*—his destruction in Ghazni (550) 219; [†556 AH.–1161 AD.?].

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Sulṭān **'Alāu'u'd-dīn Muhammad Shāh** *Khiljī Turk*—Bābur visits his tomb and minār (932) 476; his bringing of the Koh-i-nūr from the Dakkhin 477; [†715 AH.–1315 AD.].

Sulṭān **'Alāu'u'd-dīn** *Sawādī*—waits on Bābur (925) 372, 375–6.

'Alāūl Khān *Sūr Afghān*—writes dutifully to Bābur (935) 659.

'Alāūl Khān *Nūḥānī Afghān*—his waitings on Bābur (934, 935) 677, 680.

Sharafu'd-dīn Muḥammad **al Buṣīrī**—his *Qaṣīdatu'l-būrda* an example for the *Wālidiyyah-risāla* 620; [†*cir.* 693 AH.–1294 AD.].

Alexander of Macedon, see Iskandar *Fīlqūs* (*Failaqūs*).

Sayyid **'Alī**—escapes from a defeat (909) 102; out with Bābur (925) 403; sent against Balūchīs (935) 638.

Sulṭān **'Alī** *asghar* Mīrzā *Shāh-rukhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Mas'ūd *Kābulī*—particulars 382.

'Alī Ātāka, servant of Khalīfa—reinforces the right wing (*tūlghuma*) at Kānwa (933) 569.

Shaikh **'Alī Bahādur**, one of Tīmūrs chiefs—his descendant Bābā 'Alī 27.

Khwāja **'Alī Bāī**—mentioned (906) 127; fights for Bābur at Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) 139; his son Jān-i-'alī *q.v.*

Shaikh **'Alī** *Bārīn Mughūl*, son of Shaikh Jamāl—in the left wing (*tūlghuma*) at Pānīpat (932) 473; sent against Balūchīs (935) 638.

'Alī *Barlās Turk*—his son Muḥammad Barandūq *q.v.*

'Alī Beg *Jalāīr Chaghatāī*, father of Ḥasan-i-'Alī and Apāq Bega—his Shāh-rukhī service 278.[1]

Mīr (Shaikh) **'Alī Beg** *Turk* (inferred 389), governor of Kābul for Shāh-rukh *Tīmūrid*—his sons Bābā Kābulī, Daryā Khān, and Ghāzī (Apāq) Khān (*q.v.*) cherished by Mas'ūd *Shāh-rukhī* 382; (see his son Ghāzī's grandson Minūchihr for a Turk relation 386).

Sulṭān **'Alī** *chuhra, Chaghatāī*—his loyalty to Bābur doubted (910) 239; rebels (914) 345.

Sayyid **'Alī-darwesh Beg** *Khurāsānī*—particulars 28; with Jahāngīr (*æt.* 8), in Akhsī (899) 32, leaves Bābur for home (903) 91; on Bābur's service (904) 106, (905) 28, 118.

[1] Daulat-shāh celebrates the renown of the Jalāīr section (*farqa*) of the Chaghatāī tribes (*aqwām*) of the Mughūl horde (*aūlūs, ūlūs*), styles the above-entered 'Alī Beg a veteran hero, and links his family with that of the Jalāīr Sulṭāns of Bāghdād (Browne's ed. p. 519).

Mīr **'Alī-dost Ṭaghāī** *Kūnjī Mughūl*, a Sāghārīchī-*tūmān* beg—particulars 27–8 ; his appointment on Bābur's accession (899) 32 ; has part in a conference (900) 43 ; surrenders Andijān (903) 88–9 ; asks Bābur's pardon (904) 99 ; gives him Marghīnān 100 ; defeated by Tambal 106 ; in the right wing at Khūbān (905) 113 ; his ill-timed pacifism 118 ; his self-aggrandizement 119, 123 ; joins Bābur against Samarkand 123 ; in fear of his victims, goes to Tambal 125 ; his death *ib.* ; his brother Ghiyās, his son Muhammad-dost, and his servant Yūl-chūq *q.v.* ; [†a few years after 905 AH.–1500 AD.].

Mīr Sayyid **'Alī** *Hamadānī*—his death and burial 211 ; [†786 AH.–1384 AD.].

Mullā **'Alī-jān** (var. Khān)—fetches his wife from Samarkand (925) 403 ; is taught a rain-spell (926) 423 ; makes verse on the Kābul-river (932) 448 ; a satirical couplet on him made and repented by Bābur 448 ; host of Mullā Maḥmūd *Farābī* (935) 653.

'Alī Khān *Bāyandar, Āq-qūīlūq Turkmān*—joins Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (873) 279.

Shaikh-zāda **'Alī Khān** *Farmūlī Afghān*—his family-train captured (932) 526 ; waits on Bābur 526–7 ; in the left wing at Kānwa (933) 567 ; on service 576, 582, 678.

'Alī Khān *Istiljū*—leads Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī's* reinforcement to Bābur (917) 353.

Sayyid **'Alī Khān** *Turk*, son of Ghāzī (Apāq) Khān and grandson of Mīr (Shaikh) 'Alī Beg—one of Sikandar *Lūdī's* Governors in the Panjāb (910) 382 ; leaves Bhīra on Bābur's approach *ib.* ; his lands made over by him to Daulat Khān *Yūsuf-khail* 382–3 ; his son Minūchihr and their Turk relation (389) *q.v.*

'Alī Khān *Turkmān*, son of 'Umar Beg—defends the Bāī-qarā families against Shaibānī (913) 328.

'Alī Khān *Yūsuf-khail Lūdī Afghān*—eldest son of Daulat Khān—his servants wait on Bābur (925) 382 ; comes out of Milwat (Malot) to Bābur (932) 459–60 ; sent under guard to Bhīra 461 ; his son Ismā'īl *q.v.*

Sayyid **'Alī** *Khwāb-bīn*, father of Sayyid Afẓal *q.v.* (cf. H.S. lith. ed. iii, 346.

Mullā Sulṭān **'Alī** *khwush-nawīs*, calligrapher of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā*—particulars 291 ; given lessons in penmanship by Shaibānī (913) 329 ; [†919 AH.–1513 AD.].

'Alī-mazīd Beg *qūchīn* — particulars 26; leaves Bābur for home (903) 91.

Mīr **'Alī** *mīr-akhwur*[1]—particulars 279; helps Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* to surprise Yādgār-i-muḥammad *Shāh-rukhī* in Herī (875) 134, 279.

Sulṭān **'Alī Mīrzā** *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Maḥmūd and Zuhra—particulars 47; serving his half-brother Bāī-sunghar (900) 27, 55; made *pādshāh* in Samarkand by the Tarkhāns (901) 62–3, 86; meets Bābur 64; their arrangement 66; (902) 65, 82, 86; gives no protection to his blind half-brother Mas'ūd (903) 95; suspects a favoured beg (904) 98; quarrels with the Tarkhāns (905) 121; desertions from him 122; defeats Mīrzā Khān's Mughūls *ib.*; is warned of Bābur's approach 125; gives Samarkand to Shaibānī and by him is murdered (906) 125–7; his wife Sulṭānīm *Mīrān-shāhī* and sister Makhdūm-sulṭān *q.v.*; [†906 AH.–1500 AD.].

Sulṭān **'Alī Mīrzā Ṭaghāī** *Begchīk* (Mīrzā Beg Ṭaghāī), brother(?) of Bābur's wife Gul-rukh — movements of his which bear on the *lacuna* of 914–924 AH. 408; arrives in Kābul (925) *ib.*; Kāmrān marries his daughter (934) 619; conveys Bābur's wedding gifts to Kāmrān (935) 642; takes also a copy of the *Wālidiyyah-risāla* and of the Hindūstān poems, with writings (*sar-khaṭṭ*) in the Bāburī script 642.

Ustād **'Alī-qulī**—his match-lock shooting at Bajaur (925) 369; shoots prisoners (932) 466; ordered to make Rūmī defences at Pānīpat 469; fires *firingīs* from the front of the centre 473; casts a large mortar (933) 536, 547; his jealousy of Muṣṭafa *Rūmī* 550; his post previous to Kānwa 558; his valiant deeds in the battle 570–1; a new mortar bursts (934) 588; his choice of ground at Chandīrī 593; his stone-discharge interests Bābur 595, 670–1–2; uses the Ghāzī mortar while the Ganges bridge is in building 599; a gift to his son (935) 633; his post in the battle of the Ghogrā 667, 668, 669.

'Alī-qulī *Hamadānī* — ☞ sent by Bābur to punish the Mundāhirs, and fails (936) 700.

Mīr **'Alī** *qūrchī*—conveys playing-cards to Shāh Ḥasan *Arghūn* (933) 584.

Malik **'Alī** *quṭnī*(?)—in the left centre at Bajaur (925) 369.

[1] See H.S. lith. ed. iii, 224, for three men who conveyed helpful information to Ḥusain.

GSL

'Alī Sayyid *Mughūl*—in the right wing at Qandahār (913) 334; rebels (914) 345[1]; his connection Aūrūs-i'Alī Sayyid 335.

'Alī *shab-kūr* (night-blind)—one of five champions defeated in single combat by Bābur (914) 349.

Mīr **'Alī-sher Beg** *Chaghatāī*, pen-names Nawā'ī and Fanā'ī—his obligations to Aḥmad Ḥājī Beg and return to Herāt 38; fails in a mission of Husain *Bāī-qarā's* (902) 69[2]; his Turkī that of Andijān 4; checks Husain in Shī'a action 258; opposes administrative reform 282; particulars 271–2; his relations with Banā'ī 286–7, 648; corresponds with Bābur (906) 106; exchanges quatrains with Pahlawān Bū-sa'īd 292; some of his poems transcribed by Bābur (925) 419; his restoration of the Rabāṭ-i-sang-bast 301 n. 1; his flower-garden (*bāghcha*) and buildings visited or occupied by Bābur (912) 301, 305, 306; his brother Darwesh-i-'alī *q.v.*; a favoured person 278; a mystic of his circle 280–1; his scribe 271; [†906 AH.–Dec. 1500 AD.].

'Alī-shukr Beg, of the Bahārlū-aīmāq of the Āq-qūīlūq[3] Turkmāns—his daughter Pasha, grandson Yār-i-'alī *Balāl*, and descendant Bairām Khān-i-khānān *q.v.*

Sulṭan **'Alī Sīstānī** *Arghūn*—his help against Shaibānī counselled (913) 326; ☞ one of five champions worsted by Bābur in single combat (914) 349; with Bābur and chops at a tiger (925) 393.

Shaikh **'Alī Ṭaghāī** *Mervī* (?)—holding Balkh for Badī'u'z-zamān *Bāī-qarā* (902) 70; joint-dārogha in Herī (911) 293.

Allāh-bīrdī (var. qūlī)—serving Bābur (910) 234.

Allāh-wairān *Turkmān*—in the van at Qandahār (913) 335.

Alūr or Alwar,[4] son of Bābur and Dil-dār—mentioned 689 n. 5. ☞ 712; [†died an infant].

Amīn Mīrzā—an Aūzbeg envoy to Bābur (935) 631; receives gifts 632, 641.

Amīn-i-muḥammad Tarkhān *Arghūn*—punished for disobedience (925) 390–1; deals with a drunken companion 415.

Amīr Khān, chief guardian of Ṭahmāsp *Ṣafawī*—☞ negociates with Bābur (927) 433.

[1] Later consideration has cast doubts on his identification with Darwesh-i-'alī suggested, p. 345 n. 4.

[2] On p. 69 n. 2 for *aūnūlūng* read *aūnūtūng* and reverse *bakunīd* with *nakunīd*.

[3] On p. 49 l. 3 for "Black Sheep" read White Sheep.

[4] Like his brother Hind-āl's name, Alūr's may be due to the taking (*al*) of Hind.

Mullā **Apāq**—particulars 526; on Bābur's service (932) 526, 528, (933) 539, (934) 590; surprised by Sangā (933) 549; made *shiqdār* of Chandīrī 598; his retainers on service (935) 679.

Apāq Bega *Jalāīr Chaghatāī*, sister of Ḥusan-i-'alī—a poet 286.

Sayyida **Apāq Begīm** *Andikhūdī*—particulars 267, 268, 269; visited in Herāt by Bābur (912) 301.

Apāq Khān, see Ghāzī Khān.

Apāq Khān *Yūsuf-khail*, see Ghāzī Khān.

Apāq-sulṭān Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Abū-sa'īd—one of the paternal aunts visited by Bābur (912) 301 n. 3.

Āq Begīm (1), *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Ḥusain and Pāyanda-sulṭān—particulars 265; [pre-deceased her husband who died †911 AH.–1504 AD.].

Aq Begīm (2), *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*—daughter of Abū-sa'īd and Khadīja—particulars 262, 268; waited on by Bābur (935) 606.

Āq Begīm (3), *ut supra*, daughter of Maḥmūd and Khān-zāda II.—brought to join Bābur's march (910) 48.

Āq Begīm (4), see Ṣāliḥa-sulṭān.

Āq-būghā Beg, one of Tīmūr's chiefs—collateral ancestor of Khudāī-birdī *Tīmūr-tāsh* 24.

'Āqil Sulṭān *Aūzbeg-Shaibān*, son of 'Ādil and Shād *Bāī-qarā*—his conjectured descent 264 n. 1 (where in l. 4 for "'āqil" read 'ādil).

Arāīsh Khān—proffers support to Bābur against Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* (932) 463; in the left centre at Kānwa (933) 565; negociates about surrendering Chandīrī (934) 594; his gift of a boat to Bābur 663.

Arghūn Sulṭān, elder brother of Muḥammad 'Alī *Jang-jang*—deputed to hold Milwat (Malot., 932) 461.

Shaikh **'Ārif** *Āgarī*, nephew of Tīmūr's story-teller, see Index *s.n.* Aūlūgh Beg *Shāh-rukhī*; [†866 AH.–1461–2 AD. *æt.* 82, Beale].

Arslān *Jazāla*—his building of the Rabāṭ-i-sang-bast 301 n. 1.

Asad Beg *Turkmān*—joins Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* 279; his brother Taham-tan *q.v.*

Khwāja and Khwājagī **Asadu'l-lāh** *Jān-dār, Khawāfī*—with Bābur in Dikh-kat (907) 150; envoy to Ṭahmāsp *Ṣafawī*

(933) 540, 583; has charge of Ibrāhīm *Lūdī's* mother 543; in the right wing at Kānwa 566, 569.

Khwāja **Āṣafi**—particulars 286; waits on Bābur (912) 286; [†920 or 926 AH.–1514 or 1520 AD.].

'Asas, see Khwāja Muḥammad 'Alī *'asas.*

'Āshiq *bakāwal*—with advance-troops for Chandīrī (934) 590; ordered on service (935) 638.

'Āshiq-i-muḥammad Kūkūldāsh *Arghūn,* son of "Amīr Tarkhān Junaid" (H.S. lith. ed. iii, 359)—defends Ālā-qūrghān against Shaibānī (913) 328; his brother Mazīd Beg *q.v.*

'Āshiqu'l-lāh *Arghūn*—killed fighting against Bābur at Qandahār (913) 333 (where for "'Ashaq" read 'Āshiq).

Aṣīru'd-dīn *Akhsīkītī,* a poet—his birthplace Akhsī-village (kīt-kīnt) 9–10; [†608 AH.–1211–2 AD.].

Muḥammad **'Askarī** *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrīd, Barlās Turk,* son of Bābur and Gul-rukh—☞ his birth (922) 364; gifts to him (932) 523, (933) 628; ☞ his recall from Multān (934) 603–4–5, 699[1]; waits on his father (935) 605; made Commander (*æt. cir.* 12) of the army of the East 628, 637; at a feast 631; takes leave 634; waits on his father at Dugdugī 651; east of the Ganges 654; in the battle of the Ghogrā 668–9, 671–3; waits on Bābur after the victory 674; [†965 AH.–1557–8 AD.].

Asūk Mal *Rājpūt*—negociates with Bābur for Sangā's son (934–5) 612–3.

Sayyid **'Atā,** see Khwāja Aḥmad *Yasawī.*

Khwāja Jamālu'd-dīn **'Aṭā**—particulars 282 (where in n. 3 for (H.S. iii), "345" read 348–9).

Atākā *bakhshī* (var. Ātīkā, Pers. Atka)—a surgeon who dresses a wound of Bābur's (908) 169.

Atā *mīr-ākhwur*—gives Bābur a meal (925) 418.

Mīr Burhānu'd-dīn **'Aṭā'u'l-lāh** *Mashhadī*—particulars 285 (H.S. iii, 345); [†926 AH.–1520 AD.].

Atūn Māmā, a governess—walks from Samarkand to Pashāghar (907) 148; mentioned? (925) 407 l. 4.

Aūghān-bīrdī *Mughūl* (var. Afghān-bīrdī and -tardī)—on service (925) 376, 377; of a boat-party 387; in the battle of the Ghogrā (935) 671, 672.

Sayyid *Āūghlāqchī,* see Murād.

[1] See the *Ṭabaqāt-i-akbarī* account of the rulers of Multān.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Auliya Khān *Ishrāqī*—waits on Bābur (935) 677.

Aūlūgh Beg Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Muḥammad Sulṭān Mīrzā—his (?) journey to Hindustan (933) 265.

Aūlūgh Beg Mīrzā *Kābulī, Mīrān-shāhī, ut supra*, son of Abū-sa'īd—particulars 95; his earliest guardians amusingly frustrate his designs against them 270; his dealings with the Yūsuf-zāī App. K. xxxvi; his co-operation with Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* against the Aūzbegs 190; his praise of Istālīf 216; his death (907) 185; gardens of his bought by Bābur (perhaps one only) 216, (911) 246; another garden 315; houses of his 247, 251; his Almshouse 315; referred to 284; his joint-guardians Muḥammad Barandūq and Jahāngīr *Barlās*, his later one Wais Ātāka *q.v.*; his sons 'Abdu'r-razzāq and Mīrān-shāh, his daughter Bega Begīm and daughter-in-law Manauwar *q.v.*; [†907 AH.–1501–2 AD.].

Aūlūgh Beg Mīrzā *Shāh-rukhī, ut supra* (Ūlūgh), son of Shāh-rukh—his Trans-oxus rule 85[1]; receives Yūnas *Chaghatāī* badly (832–3?) 19–20; defeated by Abā-bikr *Mīrān-shāhī* 260; his family dissensions 20; his constructions, Astronomical and other 74, 77, 78–9[2]; his sportsmanship 34[3]; his murder and its chronograms 85; Bābur resides in his College (906) 142; his sons 'Abdu'l-laṭīf and 'Abdu'l-'azīz *q.v.*; a favoured beg Yūsuf *Aūghlāqchī q.v.*; Preface, *q.v. On the misnomer "Mughūl Dynasty"*. [†853 AH.–1449 AD.].

Aūlūs Āghā (Ūlūs), daughter of Khwāja Ḥusain *q.v.*—particulars 24.

Aūrdū-būghā Tarkhān *Arghūn* (Ūrdū)—his son-in-law Abū-sa'īd *Mīrān-shāhī* and son Darwesh-i-muḥammad *q.v.*

Aūrdū-shāh—murdered as an envoy (923) 463 n. 3.

Aurang-zīb Pādshāh *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*—☞ referred to as of Bābur's line 184; [†1118 AH.–O.S. 1707 AD.].

Amīr **Aūrūs**—☞ flees from his post on Shaibānī's death (916) 350.

Aūrūs-i 'Alī Sayyid *Mughūl*, son? of 'Alī Sayyid—in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335.

[1] On p. 85 l. 9 for "872 AH.–1467 AD.", read 851 AH.–1447 AD.

[2] On p. 79 transfer the note-reference "3" to *qibla*.

[3] See Daulat-shāh (Browne's ed. p. 362) for an entertaining record of the Mīrzā's zeal as a sportsman and an illustrative anecdote by Shaikh 'Ārif *'asarī q.v.* (H.B.).

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

Aūrūs *Arghūn*—his son Muḥammad-i-aūrūs *q.v.*

Aūzbeg Bahādur (Ūzbeg) — ☞ one of five champions worsted in single combat by Bābur (914) 349 n. 1.

Aūzūn Ḥasan Beg *Āq-qūilūq Turkmān*—his defeat of the Qarā-qūilūq Turkmāns and of Abū-sa'īd *Mīrān-shāhī* 49 ; [†883 AH.–1478 AD.].

Khwāja **Aūzūn Ḥasan** (Ūzūn) [1]—negociates for Bābur (899) 30 ; his appointment 32 ; confers in Bābur's interests (900) 43 (where add his name after 'Alī-dost's) ; acts for Jahāngīr against Bābur (903) 87, 88, 91, (904) 100, 101, 102 ; his servant's mischievous report of Bābur's illness (903) 89 ; his men defeated by Bābur's allies 102 ; loses Akhsī and Andijān 102–3 ; captured and released by Bābur 104 ; goes into Samarkand to help Bābur (907) 146 ; his brother Ḥusain and adopted son Mīrīm *q.v.*

'Ayisha-sulṭān Begīm *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Ḥusain—particulars 267 ; her husbands Qāsim *Aūzbeg-Shaibān* and Būrān, her sons Qāsim-i-ḥusain and 'Abdu'l-lāh *q.v.*

'Ayisha-sulṭān Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī, ut supra*, daughter of Aḥmad (Alacha Khān) and first wife of Bābur—particulars 35, 36 ; married (905) 35, 120, 711 ; joins Bābur in Samarkand (906) 135–6 ; her child 136 ; leaves Bābur 36.

Mīr **Ayūb Beg** *Begchīk*—particulars 50 ; sent by The Khān (Maḥmūd) to help Bābur (903) 92, (906) 138, 161, 170 ; his Mughūls misbehave at Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) 140 ; claims post in the right wing (*tūlghuma*) 155 ; his Mughūls confuse pass-words 164 ; in the right wing at Qandahār (913) 334 ; ☞ vainly tempts Sa'īd *Chaghatāī* to betray Bābur (916) 351 ; ☞ does not then desert 352, 362 ; ☞ rebels in Hiṣār (918) 362 ; ☞ dying, repents his disloyalty (920) 362 ; his sons Buhlūl-i-ayūb, Ya'qūb-i-ayūb and Yūsuf-i-ayūb *q.v.* ; [†920 AH.–1514 AD.].

'Aẓim Humāyūn *Sarwānī*—invests Gūālīār 477 ; his title changed and why (933) 537 ; his son Fatḥ Khān *q.v.*

Mīr **'Azū**, a musical composer—particulars 292.

[1] I have found no statement of his tribe or race ; he and his brother are styled Khwāja (H.S. lith. ed. iii, 272) ; he is associated closely with Aḥmad Tambal *Mughūl* and Mughūls of the Horde ; also his niece's name Aūlūs Āghā translates as Lady of the Horde (*ūlūs, aūlūs*). But he may have been a Turkmān.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Bābā 'Alī *aīshīk-āghā* (*īshīk*), a Lord-of-the-Gate of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā*—particulars 278; his son Yūnas-i-'alī and friend Badru'd-dīn *q.v.*

Bābā-qulī's Sulṭān **Bābā 'Alī Beg**[1]—particulars 27; his sons Bābā-qulī, Sayyidīm 'Alī and Dost-i-anjū (?) Shaikh *q.v.*; [†900 AH.–1495 AD.].

Bābā-aūghūlī, see Pāpā-aūghūlī.

Bābā Chuhra, a household brave—reprieved from death (914) 344; on Bābur's service (932) 474, 534, (934) 590, 602; does well in the battle of the Ghogra (935) 671.

Bābā Ḥusain, see Ḥusain.

Bābā Jān *akhtachī*, a groom or squire—Bābur dislocates his own thumb in striking him (925) 409.

Bābā Jān *qābūzī*—musician at entertainments (925) 386–7, 388.

Bābā Kābulī *Turk*, son of Mīr 'Alī, Shāh-rukh (*Tīmūrid*)'s Governor of Kābul—nominated 'Umar Shaikh's guardian when Kābul was allotted to the boy 14; particulars 382; his brothers Daryā Khān and Ghāzī (Apāq) Khān *q.v.*

Bābā Khān Sulṭān *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānīd*, (Bābājāk), son of Aḥmad (Alacha Khan)—his ceremonious meeting with Bābur (908) 159; [living in 948 AH.–1542—T.R.].

Bābā Khān *Chaghatāī*, son of The Khān (Maḥmūd)—murdered with his father and brothers by Shaibānī (914) 35.

Bābā Qashqa *Mughūl* (perhaps identical with Qashqa Maḥmūd *Chīrās q.v.*)—out with Bābur (925) 404, 405; in charge of Dībālpūr (930) 442; his brothers Malik Qāsim and Kūkī; his sons Shāh Muhammad, Dost-i-muhammad and Ḥājī Muhammad Khān *Kūkī q.v.*; [†*circ.* 940 AH.–1553 AD.].[2]

Sulṭān **Bābā-qulī Beg,** son of Sulṭān Bābā 'Alī Beg—serving under Khusrau Shāh (901) 60, 61; with Bābur and captured (903) 72; staunch to him 91; in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335; conveys royal letters (932) 529.[3]

Bābā Sairāmī—pursues Bābur in his flight from Akhsī (908) 178; promised fidelity but seems to have been false 179–182.

[1] The MS. variants between 'Alī and -qulī are confusing. What stands in my text (p. 27) may be less safe than the above.

[2] Bābā Qashqa was murdered by Muhammad-i-zamān *Bāī-qarā*. For further particulars of his family group see Add. Notes under p. 404.

[3] Sulṭan Bābā-qulī Beg is found variously designated Qulī Beg, Qulī Bābā, Sl. 'Alī Bābā-qulī, Sulṭān-qūlī Bābā and Bābā-qulī Beg. Several forms appear to express his filial relationship with Sulṭān Bābā 'Alī (*q.v.*).

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Bābā Shaikh *Chāghatāī*, brother of Mullā Bābā *Pashāgharī*—in the left centre at Qandahār (913) 335; ☞ rebels at Ghaznī (921) 363; forgiven (925) 397; deserts Humāyūn (932) 546; his capture and death 545; a reward given for his head *id.*; [†932 or 933 AH.–1526 AD.].

Bābā Shaikh—sent out for news (935) 661.

Bābā Sher-zād—one of three with Bābur against Tambal (908) 163; does well at Akhsī 174; fights against rebels at Kābul (912) 315; at Qandahār (913) 335.

Bābā Sulṭān *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*, son of Khalīl son of Aḥmad (Alacha Khān)—waits on Bābur near Kālpī (934) 590; particulars 590; on service 318, (934) 599; not at his post (935) 672.

Bābā Yāsāwal—at the siege of Bajaur (925) 370; chops at a tiger's head 393.

Bābū Khān—holding Kalanjar and looking towards Hātī *Kākar* (925) 387.

Ẓahīru'd-dīn Muḥammad **Bābur Pādshāh** *Mīrān-shāhī Timūrid, Barlās Turk*—b. Muharram 6th 888 AH.–Feb. 14th 1483 AD. p.1; †Jumāda I, 6th 937 AH.–Dec. 26th 1530 A.D. 708;
Parentage:—paternal 13, maternal 19, 21;
Titles:—Mīrzā (inherited) Pādshāh (taken) 344, Ghāzī (won) 574, Firdaus-makānī (Dweller-in-paradise, posthumous) see Gladwin's Revenue Accounts;
Religion:—[1] belief in God's guidance 31, 72–3, 103–13–37–94–99; in His intervention 73, 247, 316, 446–51–74–79, 525–96, 620; that His will was done 55, 100–16–32–34–35–67, 269, 316–22–23–36–37–70, 454–70–71–80, 542–94, 627–28–70, that He has pleasure in good 331; that to die is to go to His mercy 67; reliance on Him 100–08–16–32, 311, 463, 678; God called to witness 254 and invoked to bless 624; His punishment of sin 42–5, 449–77 (Hell), and of breach of Law 449; His visitation of a father's sins on children 45; His predestination of events 128, 243–46–53, 469, 594;—prayer to Him for a sign of victory 440, for the dead 246, against a bad wife 258; a life-saving prayer 316;
Characteristics:—ambition 92–7; admiration of high character 27, 67, 89, 90; bitterness and depression (in youth)

[1] Down to p. 346 Bābur's statements are retrospective; after p. 346 they are mostly contemporary with the dates of his diary—when not so are in supplementing passages of later date.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE : GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

91, 130–52–57–78 ; consideration for dependants 91–9, 158–78–96, 469 ; distrust of the world 95, 144–56 ; silent humiliation 119 ; fairness 15, 24, 91, 105, 469 ; fearlessness 163–5–73 ; fidelity ;—to word 104, 129 (see 118–9), 172–3, 194, to salt 125, to family-relation,—filial 88–9, 135–49–57–58–88, —fraternal see Jahāngīr and Nāṣir,—Tīmūrid 41, 149–57–68, Chaghatāī 54, 169–72, Mughūl 27, 119–25, Aūzbeg 37 ;—friendship see Nūyān and Khw. Kalān ; good judgment 43, 87, 91, 134–37–55 ; gratitude 99, 633 ; insouciance 150 ; joy at release from stress 99, 134–35–48–81 ; bashfulness and passion 120 ; persistence 92–7 and *passim* ; promptitude 117, 170 ; reprobation of vice, tyranny and cruelty 42–5–6, 50, 66, 70, 90–6, 102–10–25–97, 290 and of an unmotherly woman 125–28 ; self-reproach 147 ; self-comment on inexperienced action 165–67–73 ; dislike of talkativeness 28, 97, 143–92–93 ; vexation at loss of rule (*æt.* 14) 90–1–9, 129–30–57 ; truth for truth sake 135, 318 ; seeking and weighing counsel 73, 100–14–31–41–65–70–73–97–98, 229–30–31–48, 340–76–78, 410–12–69, 524–30–77, 628–39–67–69–82 ; enjoins Humāyūn to take counsel 627 ;

Occupations (non-military) :—archery *i.a.* 175 ; calligraphy see *infra* ; literary composition see *infra* ; metrical amusements see verse ; Natural History *passim* ; travel, excursions, sight-seeing, social intercourse *passim* ; building 5, 217–9, 375–98, in Dūlpūr 585, 606–07–42, in Āgra 642, in Kābul 646–7, in Sīkrī 588, Ajodhyā mosque 636 n. 3, App. U, Pānīpat mosque 472 n. 1 ; gardening and garden-making *passim* ;—Bābur's script (*Bāburī-khaṭṭ*) devised 910 AH. 228, Qorān transcribed by him in it 228 n. 4 ; studied by an enquirer 285 ; alphabet and specimens sent to Bābur's sons 642 ; *Abūshqā* account of, App. Q, lxii to lxv ;

Observance and breaches of Muh. Law :—signs of his Sunnī mind *e.g.* 25, 44, 111, 262, 370–7, 483, 547–51–74–89–96, in the *Mubīn* and *Wālidiyyah-risāla q.v.* ; his orthodox reputation 711 ; his heterodox seeming 354, and arrow-sped disclaimer 361 ;—his boyish obedience as to wine 302, up to his 23rd year 299, 302–3–4 ; for breach see Law and Wine ;

Writings :—*a.* Verses in the B.N. down to 926 AH. see *infra* ; *b.* First Dīwān 402 ;* perhaps containing the *Abūshqā* quotations 438 ; *c.* Diary of 925 and 926 *q.v.* AH. (probably a survival of more) * 438 ; *d.* The *Mubīn* (928 AH.) 426–37–38–49 ; quoted 630–31 n. 3 ; *e.* Treatise on Prosody (931 AH.)

586, App. Q, lx, lxvi ; *f.* The *Wālidiyyah-risāla* (935 AH.) 619–20–31 n. 3, (*tarjuma*) 642–3, App. Q, lix ; *g.* The *Hindūstān Poems* 642, App. Q; *h. Rāmpūr MS.* of 6 and 7. App. Q, referred to * 438, 620 n. 6, 642 n. 3 ; *i.* Diary of 932 to 936 *q.v.* ; *j.* Narrative of 899 to within 914 AH. *q.v.* ;

Bābur's verse quoted in the Bābur-nāma :—(Turki,) love-sickness 120–1 ; the worldling 130 ; granting a request 137 ; respite from stress 148 ; praise of a beloved 153 ; the neglected exile 154 ; isolation 156 ; the New Years 236 ; Fortune's cruelty 309; ? Turkmān Hazāra raid 312; Spring 321; God only is strength 337 ; dealing with tribesmen 393 ; greeting to absent convives 401 ; message to a kinswoman 402 ; his broken vow 449, 450 n.; reply to Khw. Kalān 526 ; disobedience to Law (T. & P.) 556 ; Death inevitable (T. & P.) 556 (?) ; the Ghāzī's task 575 ; to those who have left him 584; couplet used in metrical amusement 586, App. 2, sect. 2 ; fever 588 ; Chandīrī 596 ; on his first grandson's birth 624 ; *Mūbīn* quoted 637 ; Pagan lands 637 ; pain in renunciation 648 ; an invitation 683 ; [Persian,] good in everything 311 ; insight of Age 340 ; on casting off his Shī'a seeming 361 ; parting from Khw. Kalān 372 ; a message 411 ; satirical couplet 448 ; before Pānīpat 470 ; Bīāna warned 529. See Table of Contents, *On Babur's Naming*.

Bābur Mīrzā *Arlāt*, son of Muḥammad-i-qāsim and Rābi'a-sultān *Mīrān-shāhī*—his Bāī-qarā marriage 266.

'Abdu'l-qāsim **Bābur Mīrzā** *Shah-rukhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Bāī-sunghar—his sister 265 ; his retainers Muḥammad Barandūq and Mazīd *q.v.* ; his pleasure-house 302 ; [†861 AH.–1457 AD.].

Bāburī—a bāzār-boy (905) 120.

Badī'u'l-jamāl Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Abū-sa'īd—waited on by Bābur near Āgra (935) 616.

Badī'u'l-jamāl **Badka Begīm** *Bāī-qarā, ut supra*, daughter of Manṣūr and Fīrūza—particulars 257, 258 ; her husband Aḥmad *Ḥājītarkhānī*, their sons Maḥmūd and Bahādur and daughter Khān-zāda *q.v.*

Badī'u'z-zamān Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā, ut supra*, son of Ḥusain and Bega *Mervī*—serving his father against Khusrau Shāh (901) 57 ; defeated 61 ; takes offence with his father 61, 69 ; in arms and defeated by his father 69, 70 ; his retort on

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Nawā'ī (*q.v.*); goes destitute to Khusrau Shāh and is well-treated 70, 130; on Khusrau Shāh's service 71; moves with Arghūn chiefs against his father (903), 95, 261; gives Bābur no help against Shaibānī (906) 138; his co-operation sought by his father (910) 190, 191; takes refuge with his father 243; has fear for himself (911) 292–3; joint-ruler in Herī 293; concerts and abandons action against Shaibānī (912) 296–7, 301; his social relations with Bābur 297, 8, 9, 300, 2, 4; courteous to Bābur as a non-drinker 303; a false report of him in Kābul (912) 313; irresolute against Shaibānī (913) 326; his army defeated 275, 327; abandons his family and flees (1) to Shāh Beg *Arghūn*, (2) to Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī* 327; captured in Tabrīz by Sulṭān Sālim *Rūmī* (920) and dies in Constantinople (923) 327 n. 5; a couplet on his name 201–2; musicians compete in his presence 291; his host-facility 304; his son Muḥammad-i-zamān, his begs Jahāngīr *Barlās* and Ẓū'n-nūn *Arghūn q.v.*; joined by Sayyidim *Dārbān q.v.*; his College in Herī 306; [†923 AH.–1517 AD.].

Sayyid **Badr**—particulars 276; safe-guards Maḥmūd *Mīrān-shāhī* 46–7; seen by Bābur in Herāt (912) 299; (see Ḥ.S. lith. ed. iii, 233).

Badru'd-dīn—particulars 278; his friend Bābā 'Alī *q.v.*; his son (?) receives Kachwa (934) 590.

Maulānā **Badru'd-dīn** *Hilālī, Chaghatāī*—particulars 290; his poet-daughter 286 n. 1; [†939 AH.–1532–3 AD.].

Bahādur Khān *Sarwānī*—Bābur halts at his tomb (935) 686.

Bahādur Khān *Gujrātī, Tānk Rājpūt*—ill-received by Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* (932); exchanges friendly letters with Bābur 534; becomes Shāh in Gujrāt 535; is given the Khīljī jewels 613 n. 1; [†943 AH.–1547 AD.].

Bahjat Khān (or Bihjat), a Governor of Chandīrī—Bābur halts near his tank (934) 592, 594.

Bāī-qarā Mīrzā *'Umar-shaikhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, grandson of Tīmūr—mentioned in a genealogy 256; a grandson 'Abdu'l-lāh *Andikhūdī q.v.*

Bāī-qarā Mīrzā *'Umar-shaikhī, ut supra*, son of Mansūr and Fīrūza—particulars 257; his brother Ḥusain, and sons Wais and Iskandar *q.v.*

Bairām Beg[1]—☞ reinforces Bābur from Balkh (918) 359; serving Najm *Ṣānī* 360.

[1] He may be the father of Mun'im Khān (Blochmann's Biographies A.-i-A. trs. 317 and n. 2).

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Bairām Khān *Bahārlū-Qarā-qūīlūq Turkmān* (Akbar's Khān-i-khānān), son of Saif-'alī—his ancestry 91 n. 3, 109 n. 5 (where for "father" read "grandfather"); ☞ mention of a witness of his assassination 348; quotation of his remarks on Ḥasan Khān *Mewātī* 523 n. 3; [†968 AH.–1561 AD.].

Bairām-sulṭān Begīm *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Ḥusain and Mīnglī—particulars 266; her husband 'Abdu'l-lāh *Andikhūdī*, their son Barka *q.v.*

Bāī-sunghar Mīrzā *Mīrān-shāhī, ut supra*, son of Maḥmūd and Pasha—particulars 47, 110–112; succeeds in Samarkand (900) 52, 86; withstands The Khān (Maḥmūd) 52; the *khuṭba* read for him in Bābur's lands 52; his man surrenders Aūrā-tīpā 55–6; his favouritism incites the Tarkhān rebellion (901) 38, 61; escapes from Tarkhān imprisonment 62, 86; defeated by his half-brother 'Alī 38, 63; prosperous (902) 65; moves against 'Alī 65; retires before Bābur 66; at grips with him 67; asks Shaibānī's help (903) 73; goes to Khusrau Shāh 74; made ruler in Ḥiṣār 93, 5, 6, 261; murdered (905) 110; his death referred to 50, 112; his pen-name 'Ādilī 111; his sister's marriage 41; his brother Mas'ūd, his guardian Ayūb *q.v.*; [†905 AH.–1499 AD.].

Bāī-sunghar Mīrzā *Shāh-rukhī Tīmūrid*, son of Shāh-rukh—his servant Yūsuf *Andijānī* 4; [†837 AH.–1433–4 AD.].

Balkhī *falīz-kārī*—grows melons in Āgra (935) 686.

Bāltū—rescues Khalīfa's son Muḥibb-i-'alī (933) 550.

Mullā **Banā'ī**—Maulānā Jamālu'd-dīn *Banā'ī*—in Khwāja Yaḥyā's service and seen by Bābur (901) 64, in Shaibānī's (906) 136, in Bābur's 64, 136; particulars 286–7; given the Herī's authors to loot (913) 328; Bābur recalls a joke of his (935) 648; two of his quatrains quoted 137; his musical composition 286, 292; [murdered 918 AH.–1512 AD.].

Banda-i-'alī, *dārogha* of Karnān—pursues Bābur from Akhsī (908) 178–9, 180, 181.

Banda-i-'alī *Yāragī Mughūl*, son of Ḥaidar Kūkūldāsh—sent to reinforce Bābur (904) 101; in the van at Sar-i-pul (906) 139; his mistimed zeal (908) 176; his son-in-law Qāsim Beg qūchīn *q.v.*

Bāqī Beg *Chaghānīānī, Qībchāq Turk*—his influence on Mas'ūd *Mīrān-shāhī* (901) 57, (903) 95; defends Ḥiṣār for him (901) 58; acts against him (902) 71; joins Bābur (910) 48, 188–9; advises sensibly 190, 197; leaves his family with Bābur's 191; dislikes Qambar-i-'alī *Silākh* 192; helps his

21661

brother Khusrau to make favourable terms with Bābur 192–3; quotes a couplet on seeing Suhail 195; his Mughūls oppose Khusrau 197; mediates for Muqīm *Arghūn* (910) 199; Bābur acts on his advice 230–1, 239, (911) 246, 249; particulars 249–50; dismissed towards Hindūstān 250; killed on his road 231, 251; his son Muḥammad-i-qāsim and grandson (?) Aḥmad-i-qāsim *q.v.*; [†911 AH.–1505–6 AD.].

Bāqī *Gāgīānī Afghān*—his caravan through the Khaibar (911) 250.

Bāqī (*khīz*)*khīz*—opposes Bābur (908) 174, 396.

Khwāja **Bāqī**, son of Yaḥyā son of Aḥrārī—murdered 128; [†906 AH.–1500 AD.].[1]

Bāqī Beg *Tāshkindī, shaghāwal* and (later) *mīng-bāshī* (=*hasārī*)—sent to Balkh with promise of head-money (932) 463, 546; on service (934) 590, 601, 2; reports from Aūd (Oudh) (935) 679; on service with the Aūd (Oudh) army 684, 5; leave given him for home 685.

Bāqī Tarkhān, *Arghūn Chīngīz-khānid,* son of 'Abdu'l-'alī and a daughter of Aūrdū-būghā—particulars 38, 40; consumes the Bukhārā revenues (905) 121; defeated by Shaibānī 124; occupies Qarshī (qv. Kesh) (906) 135; plans to join Bābur 138; goes to Shaibānī and dies in misery 40.

Bārāq Khān, *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*—mentioned in the genealogy of Yūnas 19.

Bārāq Sulṭān *Aūzbeg-Shaibān Chīngīz-khanid,* son of Sīūnjuk—at Jām (934) 622.

Sayyid **Barka** *Andikhūdī,* Tīmūr's exhumation of his body 266 n 4.

Sayyid **Barka** *Andikhūdī,* descendant of the last-entered, son of 'Abdu'l-lāh—particulars 266; serving Bābur (917) 266.

Bār-mal *Īdrī*—his force at Kānwa (933) 562.

Bā-sa'īd *Tarkhānī,* see Abū-sa'īd *Tarkhānī.*

Basant Rāo—killed by (Bābā Qashqa's brother?) Kūkī in the battle of the Ghogrā 673; [†935 AH.–1529 AD.].

Baṭalmiūs (Ptolemy)—mentioned as constructor of an observatory 79.

Sultān **Bāyazīd**[2]—urges attack on the Afrīdī (925) 411, 412.

[1] See note, Index, *s.n.* Muḥammad Zakarīa.

[2] He is likely to have been introduced with some particulars of tribe, in one of the now unchronicled years after Bābur's return from his Trans-oxus campaign.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Shaikh **Bāyazīd,** *Farmūlī Afghān*—acts for his dead brother Muṣṭafa[1] (932) 527; waits on Bābur and receives Aūd (Oudh) 527; on service 530; in Aūd (933) 544; his loyalty tested (934) 589; with Bīban, opposing Bābur 594, 598–601, 2, (935) 638; serving Maḥmūd *Lūdī* against Bābur 652, 673; Bābur resolves to crush him and Bīban 677–8; mentioned 679, 692; takes Luknūr (?) 681, App. T; action continued against him 681, 2, 5; his comrade Bīban *q.v.*; [†937 AH.–1531 AD.].

Shaikh **Bāyazīd** *Itārachī Mughūl*, brother of Aḥmad Tambal—holding Akhsī for Jahāngīr (908) 170; sends a force against Pāp 171; receives Bābur in Akhsī 171–2; made prisoner against Bābur's wish 173; escapes 175; reported as sending Yūsuf *dāroghā* to Bābur's hiding-place 182.

Bega Begīm (1), *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Ḥusain and Pāyanda—particulars 266; [† before Ḥusain 911 AH.–1505 AD.].

Bega Begīm (2), *Mīrān-shāhī ut supra*, daughter of Aūlūgh Beg *Kābulī*—her marriage with Muḥammad Ma'ṣūm *Bāī-qarā* (902) 264.

Bega Begīm (3), *Mīrān-shāhī ut supra*, daughter of Maḥmud and Khān-zāda II—betrothed to Ḥaidar *Bāī-qarā* (901) 48, 61, 263; married (903) 48; their child 263.

Bega Begīm (4), *Shāh-rukhī ut supra*, daughter of Bāī-sunghar (*Shāh-rukhī*)—her grandson's marriage 265.

Bega Begīm (5),—Ḥājī Begīm—daughter of Yādgār Ṭaghāī, wife of Humāyūn—her son Al-amān *q.v.*

Bega Begīm (6),—"the Bībī"—, see Mubārika.

Bega Sulṭān Begīm *Mervī*, wife of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā*—particulars 261, 7, 8; divorced 268; her son Badī'u'z-zamān *q.v.*; [893 AH.–1488 AD.].

Wais *Lāghari's* **Beg-gīna,**—brings Bābur news of Al-amān's birth (935) 621, 4.[2]

The **Begīms,** Bābur's paternal aunts—waited on by him 301, 616, 686.

Begīm Sulṭān, see Sa'ādat-bakht.

Begī Sulṭān Āghācha, *ghūnchachī* of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā*—particulars 269.

[1] His wife, daughter of a wealthy man and on the mother's side niece of Sulṭān Buhlūl *Lūdī*, financed the military efforts of Bāyazīd and Bīban (*Tārīkh-i-sher-shāhī*, E. and D. iv, 353 ff.).

[2] My translation on p. 621 l. 12 is inaccurate inasmuch as it hides the circumstance that Beg-gīna alone was the "messenger of good tidings".

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Beg Mīrak *Mughūl*—brings Bābur good news (932) 466; on service (933) 548.

Beg Mīrak *Turkmān*, a beg of the Chīrās (Mughūl) *tūmān*—acts for Yūnas Khān 191; [†832 AH.–1428–9 AD.].

Beg Tīlba *Itārachī Mughūl*, brother of Aḥmad Tambal—induces the Khān (Maḥmūd) not to help Bābur (903) 91, (905) 115; his light departure perplexes his brother 116; invites Shaibānī into Farghāna (908) 172.

Bhupat Rao, son of Ṣalāḥu'd-dīn—killed at Kānwa 573; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].

Bīān Shaikh (Biyān)—his rapid journeys 621, 624; brings news of the battle of Jām (935) 622, 623 n. 3; the source of his news 624 n. 1; hurried back 624, 627.

Bīān-qulī—his son Khān-qulī *q.v.*

Malik **Bīban** *Jilwānī*?[1] *Afghān*—deserts 'Ālam Khān *Lūdī* (932) 457 and n. 2; writes dutifully to Bābur 464; is presuming at an audience 466; deserts Bābur 468, 528; is defeated 528–9; with Bāyazīd, besieges Luknūr (933) 582; defeats Bābur's troops 594, 598; opposes Bābur in person (934) 598–601; referred to as a rebel (935) 638; serving Maḥmūd *Lūdī* 652, 675; Bābur resolves to crush him 677–8; mentioned 679 n. 7, 692; takes Luknūr (?) 681, App. T; action taken against him 681, 2, 5; his constant associate Bāyazīd *Farmūlī q.v.*

Muḥammad Shāh, **Bihār Khān** *Bihārī*, *Nūḥānī Afghān*, son of Daryā Khān—declared independent in Bihār (932) 523; particulars 664; his widow Dūdū and son Jalāl *q.v.*; [†934 AH.–1527 AD.].

Bihār Khān *Lūdī* (or Pahār Khān,[2] a Panj-āb amīr of Ibrāhīm Lūdī's in 930 AH.—[3] defeated by Bābur (930) 208, 441 (where add "or Pahār"), 578; a chronogram which fixes the date 575.

Bihjat, see Bahjat.

Bih-būd Beg—particulars 277, App. H, and Additional Notes under p. 277.

Ustād Kamālu'd-dīn **Bih-zād**—particulars 291; his training due to Nawā'ī 272; is instructed in drawing by Shaibānī (913) 329.

[1] In taking Bīban for a Jilwānī, I follow Erskine, (as inferences also warrant,) but he may be a Lūdī.

[2] For the same uncertainty between Bihār and Pahār see E. and D.'s History of India iv, 352 n. 2.

[3] Firishta lith. ed. i, 202.

Rāja of Bījānagar (Vijāyanagar) — mentioned as ruling in 932 AH. 483.

Rāja Bikam-deo, named in the Hindūstān Revenue List.

Rāja Bīkam-chand, *ut supra.*

Rāja Bīkramājīt, *ut supra.*

Bī-khūb Sulṭān (var. Nī- or Naī-khūb) ? *Aūzbeg-Shaibān*—on Bābur's service (934) 589, 602, (935) 651, 682; in the battle of the Ghogrā 669.

Rānā **Bikramājīt,** son of Sangā and Padmāwatī—negotiations for him with Bābur (934) ☞ 603, 612, (935) 612–3, 615, 616; pact made with him 616–7; possessor of Khiljī jewels 613; his mother Padmāwatī and her kinsman Asūk Mal *q.v.*

Rājā **Bikramājīt** *Gūāliārī, Tūnwar Rājpūt*—his ancestral fortress 477; his Koh-i-nūr (932) 477; his buildings 607–610 and nn.; his palace Bābur's quarters (935) 607; his death (932) 477; [†932 AH.–1526 AD.].

Rāja **Bikramājīt** (Vikramādītya)—his Observatory and Tables 79.

Bīrīm Deo *Malīnhās*—on Bābur's service (932) 462.

Rāja **Bīr-sing Deo**—named in the Revenue List (935) 521; his force at Kānwa (933) 562; serving Bābur 639.

Khalīfa's **Bīshka (?)**—a woman who leaves Samarkand with Bābur's mother (907) 147.

Bīshka Mīrzā *Itārachī Mughūl*—brings and receives gifts (925) 415, 416.

Brethren of Bābur—removal of their opposition to his aim on Hindūstān 478.

Buhlūl-i-ayūb *Begchīk,* son of Ayūb—Bābur warned against him (910) 190; joins Bābur 196; his misconduct 241, (911) 254.

Sulṭān **Buhlūl, Sāhū-khail Lūdī,** *Afghān*—grandfather of Ibrāhīm 463; his treasure 470; his tomb visited by Bābur 476; his capture of Jūnpūr and Dihlī 481; his sons Sikandar and 'Alau'u'd-dīn *q.v.*; [†894 AH.–1488 AD.].

Pahlawān **Buhlūl,** *tufang-andāzī*—receives gifts (935) 633.

Būjka, a household bravo—on Bābur's service (932) 458, 474, 534, (933) 545; his success at Biāna 547.

Malik **Bū Khān** *Dilah-zāk* (*Dilazāk*) *Afghān*—receives gifts from Bābur (925) 394; brings tribute 409.

GSL

Būrān Sulṭān *Aūzbeg-Shaibān*—his marriage with 'Āyisha-sulṭān *Bāī-qarā* 267; their son 'Abdu'l-lāh *q.v.*

Shaikh **Burhānu'd-dīn 'Alī Qīlīch**, *Marghīnānī*, author of the *Hidāyat*—his birthplace Rashdān 7; a descendant 29, 89; [†593 AH.–1197 AD.].

Malik **Bū-sa'īd** *Kamarī*—a guide (910) 230, 231; doubted 233.

Chaghatāī Khān, second son of Chīngīz Khān—his *yūrt* (camping-ground) occupied by his descendant Yūnas 12; mentioned in the genealogy of Yūnas 19; [†638 AH.–1241 AD.].

Chākū *Barlās*, one of Tīmūr's noted men—an ancestor of Muhammad Barandūq 270; descent of his line to Akbar's day 270 n. 2.

Rāī **Chandrabān**, *Chauhān Rājpūt*—killed at Kānwa (933) 573; [†933 AH.–1527 A.D.].

Chāpūq (Slash-face), see Ibrāhīm *Begchik*.

Sulṭān Aḥmad **Chār-shamba**—unhorses Muhammad Mūmin[1] *Bāī-qarā* (902) 71; coincident occurrences of "Chār-shamba" 71.

Ismā'īl **Chilma** (or Chalma), son of Ibrāhīm *Jānī*—writes particulars of the battle of Jām (935) 624.

Chilma *Mughūl* (or Chalma)—in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335; rebels in Kābul (914) 345.

Chilma *tāghchī Mughūl* (? shoeing-smith)—in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335.

Chīngīz Khān *Mughūl*—counted back to in Yunās Khān's genealogy 12, 19; his capture of Samarkand (619 AH.–1222 AD.) 75; referred to concerning the name Qarshī 84; his Rules (*Tūra*) 155, 298; [†624 AH.–1227 AD.].

Chīn *Ṣūfī*—defends Khwārizm for Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* against Shaibānī (910) 242 n. 3, 244; killed in the surrender 255–6; [†911 AH.–1505–6 AD.].

Chīn-tīmūr Sulṭān *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*, son of Aḥmad—mentioned *s.a.* 912 as serving Bābur 318; succeeds against Ibrāhīm *Lūdī's* advance (932) 467; in the right centre at Pānīpat 472, and at Kānwa (933) 565, 568 n. 3; rewarded 527, 578–9; on service (933) 540; at Chandīrī (934) 590; pursues Bīban and Bāyazīd 601, 602; in command against Balūchīs (935) 638, 676; met on a journey 639; writes of

[1] For "Mū'min" read Mūmin, which form is constant in the Ḥai. MS.

loss of reinforcement 675; ordered to Āgra 676; waits on Bābur 688; his brothers Manṣūr, Aīsān-tīmūr, Tūkhtā-būghā, Sa'īd, Khalīl *q.v.*; [†936 AH.–1530 AD.].

Chīqmāq Beg—sent on road-surveyor's work (935) 629–30; the *Mubīn* quoted in connection with his orders 630; his clerk Shāhī *q.v.*

Chirkas qīzlār (Circassian girls), see Gulnār and Nār-gul.

Chūlī Begīm, *Āzāq Turkmān* — particulars 265, 268; her husband Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* and their daughter Sultānīm *q.v.*; [†before 911 AH.–1505 AD.].

Dāmāchī *Mughūl*—in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335.

Dankūsī var. Nigarsī—killed at Kānwa 573; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].

Darwesh-i-'alī—serving Humāyūn in Sambhal (934) 587.

Darwesh-i-'alī Beg *Chaghatāī*, brother of Nawā'ī—particulars 275; in Bābur's service (916) 275 and (917) 277; his poet-wife Āpāq Bega *q.v.*

Darwesh-i-'alī *pīāda* and, later, *tūfang-andāz*—takes news of Hind-āl's birth to Bābur (925) 385.

Darwesh-i 'Alī Sayyid *Mughūl*—in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335.

Darwesh Beg Tarkhān, *Arghūn*—particulars 39; [†895 AH.–1490 AD.].

Darwesh Gāū *Andijānī*—put to death as seditious (899) 30.

Shaikh **Darwesh Kūkūldāsh** *qūr-begī*—at a household-party (906) 131; his death, successor in office, and avengeance 251, 253; [†911 AH.–1505–6 AD.].

Darwesh-i-muḥammad *Fazlī*—defeated (910) 241; degraded for not supporting a comrade (925) 405.

Darwesh-i-muḥammad Sārbān—Mīrzā Khān's envoy to Bābur (925) 402; a non-drinker not pressed to disobey 406; replaces a china cup 407; enters Bābur's service 408; over-pressed to break the Law 410; eats a strange fruit 410–1; at ma'jūn-parties 412, (935) 683; asks a fruitful question (932) 470–1; in the right-centre at Pānī-pat 472 and at Kānwa (933) 565; recals a vow to Bābur 553; in the battle of the Ghogrā (935) 673.

Darwesh-i-muḥammad Tarkhān *Arghūn Chingīz-khānid*—particulars 38; envoy to the Andijān begs (899) 31; his part in the Tarkhān rebellion (901) 62; his death 38, 63;

GSL

his relationship to Mīrān-shāhīs 13 n. 5, 33, 38, and his kinsman 'Abdu'l-'alī *q.v.*; [†901 AH.–1496 AD.].

Darwesh Sulṭān (? *Chaghatāī*)—on Bābur's service (934) 599.

Daryā Khān *Turk*, son of Mīr (Shaikh) 'Alī Beg—particulars 382, his sons Yār-i-husain and Ḥasan *q.v.*

Daryā Khān *Nūḥānī, Afghān*—his sons Saīf Khān and Bihār Khān, his grandson Jalāl *q.v.*

Mullā **Dāūd**—killed serving Bābur 549; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].

Sayyid **Dāūd** *Garm-serī*—receives gifts (935) 633.

Dāūd Khān *Lūdī*—defeated by Bābur's troops (932) 467–8.

Dāūd *Sarwānī*, see Rāwū'ī *Sarwānī*.

Daulat Khān, *Yūsuf-khail Lūdī, Afghān*, son of Tātār—is given Bhīra *etc.* 382, 383; concerning his lands, Author's Note 383; ☞ a principal actor from 926 to 932 AH. 428; dreads Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* 439; ☞ proffers allegiance to Bābur (929?) 439, 440; ☞ his gift of an Indian fruit decides Bābur to help him 440, 503 n. 6; ☞ his action causes the return to Kābul of Bābur's fourth expedition into Hindūstān 442; his strength and action 443–4; his rumoured attack on Lāhor (932) 451, 453; negotiates with 'Ālam Khān (931?) 455–6; loses Milwat to Bābur (932) 459; his death 461; his sons 'Alī, Apāq, Dilawār *q.v.*; his relations with Nānak 461 n. 3; [†932 AH.–1526 A.D.].

Daulat-i-muḥammad Kūkūldāsh, see Qūtlūq-i-muḥammad.

Daulat-qadam ?—his son Mīr Mughūl *q.v.*

Daulat-shāh *Isfarāyinī*, author of the *Tazkiratu'sh-shu'arā*—at the battle of Chīkmān-sarāī (876) 46 n. 2; [†895 AH.–1490 AD. ?].

Daulat-sulṭān Khānīm, *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*, daughter of Yūnas Khān and Shāh Begīm—particulars 24; her long family separation (907) 149; meets her brother Aḥmad (908) 159; married as a captive by Tīmūr *Aūz-beg* (909) 24; rejoins Bābur (917) *ib.* and 358 n. 1; letters from her reach Bābur (925) 409; sends letters and gifts to him (932) 446.

Dāwā Khān, *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*—mentioned in Yūnas Khān's genealogy 19; [†706 AH.–1306–7 AD.].

Dejal, the false Messiah 563 n. 1.

Deo Sulṭan, see Div.

Rāja **Dharmankat** *Gūālīārī*—stirs trouble (933) 539; lays siege to Gūālīār 557.

Dharm-deo—his force at Kānwa (933) 562.

GSL

Dilāwar Khān *Yūsuf-khail Lūdī, Afghān,* son of Daulat Khān — ☞ ill-received by Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* (929?) 439; ☞ goes to Kābul to ask help from Bābur 439–40; imprisoned by his father (931) 442, 443; escapes and joins 'Ālam Khān 455, 456; joins Bābur 457, 461; location of his mother's family 462; does not sit in Bābur's presence 466; entrusted by Bābur with care for the corpse of Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* 474 n. 1; in the right wing at Kānwa (933) 567 (here styled Khān-i-khānān); [†946 AH.–1539 AD.].

Dil-dār Begīm (? Ṣālḥa-sulṭān 3rd daughter of Maḥmūd *Mīrān-shāhī* and Pasha), wife of Bābur—her unborn child forcibly adopted (925) 347, and App. L; her son Alwar (Alūr)'s death (935) 689 n. 5; particulars 712–4; her sons Hind-āl and Alūr, her daughters Gul-rang, Gul-chihra and Gul-badan *q.v.*

Dilpat Rāo—killed at Kānwa 573; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].

Div Sulṭān *Rūmlū* (or Deo)—recaptures Balkh (cir. 919) 363; particulars 635 n. 2; his servant describes the battle of Jām (935) 635–6.

Dīwa Hindū, son of Sīktū—waits on Bābur in Bhīra (925) 382; made prisoner and ransomed 399.

Dīwāna *jāma-bāf*—put to retaliatory death 73; [†903 AH.–1497 AD.].

Bābā Dost—put in charge of Humāyūn's Trans-Indus district (925) 391; conveys wine to Bābur's camp (933) 551 (here *sūchī*).[1]

Dost, son of Muḥammad Bāqir—drunk (925) 415.

Dost-anjū?[2] **Shaikh**, son of Bābā 'Alī—left in charge of Ghaznī (911) 307.

Dost Beg *Mughūl*, son of Bābā Qashqa and brother (p. 588) of Shāh Muḥammad—at a social gathering and sent to Bhīra 388 (here *muhrdār*); made a *dīwān* (932) 476; in charge of Biāna (933) 539 and made its *shiqdār* 579 (here Lord-of-the Gate); in the right centre at Kānwa 565, 569; waits on Bābur 581; pursues rebels (934) 601 (here Dost-i-muḥammad); in the battle of the Ghogrā (935) 673; for his kinsmen see *s.n.* Bābā Qashqa.

Khwāja **Dost-i-khāwand**—lets himself down over the wall of Qandahār (913) 343; at boat-parties (925) 385, 388; comes

[1] He may be Ḥamīda-bānū's father and, if so, became grandfather of Akbar.

[2] Ilminsky, *anṭū*, Erskine, *angū*. Daulat-shāh mentions a Muḥammad Shāh *anjū* (see Brown's ed. Index *s.n.*).

from Kābul to Āgra (933) 544; in the left-centre at Kānwa 565; ☞ sent on Bābur's family affairs to Humāyūn in Badakhshān (934) 603; delayed in Kābul till Kāmrān's arrival 618 and nn. 2–6; his letters reach Bābur (935) 618.

Dost-kīldī *Mughūl*—in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335.

Dost-i-nāṣir Beg—Dost Beg—(Nāṣir's Dost), son of Nāṣir—enters Bābur's service (904) 103; on service (906) 131, (908) 163, 165; one of three standing by Bābur 166, 167, 396; with him at Akhsī 174, 396; one of the eight in the flight 177, 396; at the recapture of Kābul (912) 315; in the left centre at Qandahār (913) 335, 338; at Tāshkīnt (918) ☞ 356 n. 1, ☞ 358, 396–7; opposing rebels (921) ☞ 364, 397; leading the left at Bajaur (925) 368 (here first styled Beg), 369, 370, 397; his revenue work 384; at wine parties 387, 388; at Parhāla 390; attacked by fever 394; his death and his burial at Ghaznī 395–6; his brother Mīrīm q.v.; particulars 395–7; [†925 AH.–1519 AD.].

Dost *Sar-i-pulī, pīāda* and (later) *kotwāl*—attacks Bābur blindly (912) 316–7; wounded (913) 324; [†913 AH.–1507 AD.].

Dost-i-yāsīn-khair—wrestles well with eight in successive (935) 653; 656.

Dūdū Bībī, widow of Bihār Khān *Bihārī*—news of her bringing her son to Bābur (935) 664; encouraging letters sent to her 665; Sher Khān *Sūr* her co-guardian for her son 664 n. 2; her son Jalālu'd-dīn *Nuḥānī q.v.*

Faghfūr Dīwān—on service (933) 551; his servants sent for fruit to Kābul (935) 687. Hai. MS. reads Maghfūr.

Fajji *Gāgīānī, Afghān*—guides Bābur's first passage of the Khaibar (910) 229.

Fakhrū'n-nisā', daughter of Bābur and 'Āyisha—died an infant 35–6, 136; [†906 AH.–1500–1 AD.].

Faqī-i-'alī—reprieved (914) 345; with Bābur and left in charge of Balkh (923) 463; ☞ left in charge of Qila'i-ẓafar by Humāyūn (936) 695.

Farīd Khān *Nuḥānī, Afghān*, son of Naṣīr—writes dutifully to Bābur (935) 659.

Farīdūn, (an ancient Shāh of Persia)—mentioned in a verse 85.

Farīdūn-i-ḥusain Mīrzā *Bā-qarā Tīmūrid*, son of Ḥusain and Mīngli—particulars 263, 269; [†915 AH.–1509 AD.].

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Farīdūn *qabūzī*—summoned by Bābur (935) 617.

Mullā **Farrukh**—placed on Bābur's left at a feast (935) 631; gifts made to him 632.

Farrukh *Arghūn*—surrenders Qalāt-i-ghilzāī to Bābur (911) 248–9.

Mīrzā **Farrūkh** *Aūghlāqchī*, son of Ḥasan—mentioned for his qualities 279.

Farrukh-i-ḥusain Mīrzā, *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Ḥusain and Pāpā—particulars 264; [†915 AH.–1509 AD.].

Farrukh-zād Beg—Bābur dismounts in his garden at Qandahār (913) 337.

Farūq, son of Bābur and Māhīm—his birth (932) announced to Bābur (933) 536, 689 n. 5; [933 AH.–1526–7 AD.].

Fatḥ Khān *Sarwānī* Khān-i-jahān, son of 'Azim-humāyūn—is escorted to Bābur (932) 534; well-received (933) 537; his hereditary title superseded *ib.*; invited to a wine-party *ib.*; serving Maḥmūd *Lūdī* (935) 652; his son Maḥmūd *q.v.*; ? a kinsman Daud *q.v.*

Fātima-sūltān Āghā *Mughūl*—first wife of 'Umar Shaikh *Mīrān-shāhī* 17, 24; their son Jahāngīr *q.v.*

Fāṭima-sultān Begīm *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Ḥusain and Mīnglī—particulars 266; her husband Yādgar-i-farrukh *Mīrān-shāhī q.v.*; [†before 911 AH.–1505 AD.].

Fāzil Kūkūldāsh—serving Shāh Beg *Arghūn* (910) 238; ☞ a good account of him named 443; his death a crushing grief to Shāh Beg *ib.*; [†930 AH.–1514 AD.].

Fāzil Tarkhān—a Turkistān merchant created a Tarkhān by Shaibānī, [Author's Note] 133; his death *ib.*; [906 AH.–1500 AD.].

Faẓlī, see Darwesh-i-muḥammad.

Ferdinand the Catholic—his action in 1504 (910 AH.) 187 n. 2 (Erskine).

Fīrūza Begīm *Qānjūt*, wife of Manṣūr *Bāī-qarā* her Tīmūrīd ancestry 256; her children Bāī-qarā (II), Ḥusain, Ākā and Badka *q.v.*; ([†874 AH.–1469–70 AD.].

Fīrūz Khān *Mewatī*—reprieved (932) 477–8.

Fīrūz Khān, *Sārang-khānī, Afghān*—on Ibrāhīm *Lūdī's* service 527; waits on Bābur (932) 527, and on his service 530.

Sulṭān **Fīrūz Shāh,** *Tūghlūq Turk*—his servants' dynasties 481, 482; his relations with the rulers of Mālwā 482 (where in n. 3 for "Gujrāt" read Mālwā); [†790 AH.–1388 AD.].

Fīrūz Shāh Beg—his grandson 'Abdu'l-khalīq *q.v.*

Gadāī *Balāl*—rejoins Bābur (913) 330–1.

Gadāī *bihjat*—misbehaves (925) 414.

Gadāī Ṭaghāī—shares a confection (925) 375; at social gatherings 385, 7, 8, 400, 412; rides carrying a full pitcher 386; out with Bābur 404; removes a misbehaving namesake 414.

Gauhar-shād Begīm, wife of Shāh-rukh *Tīmūrid*—Bābur visits her college and tomb (912) 305; [†861 AH.–1457 AD.].

Gauhar-shad Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk,* daughter of Abū-sa'īd—visited by Bābur (935) 616.

Mīr **Gesū**—finds chronogram identical with Shaikh Zain's 575.

Apāq **Ghāzī Khān** *Turk,* son of Mīr (Shaikh) 'Alī Beg—particulars 382; his brothers Bābā Kābulī and Daryā Khān, his son 'Alī and his relation Naẓar-i-'alī *Turk q.v.*

Apāq **Ghāzī Khān** *Yūsuf-khail Lūdī Afghān,* son of Daulat Khān—☞ arrested by Bābur (930) 442; moves against Bābur (932) 451, 453; not trusted 455; agrees to help 'Ālam Khān 455–6; receives him ill on defeat 457–8; pursued for Bābur 458, 460, 461, 462, 463; Bābur's reproach for his abandonment of his family 460–1; his forts in the Dūn 462; his library less valuable than was expected by Bābur 460; his kinsman Ḥājī Khān and his own son 465.

Ghiyāṣ, a buffoon 400 (where erroneously Ghiāṣ).

Mīr **Ghiyāṣ,** building entrusted to him (935) 642.

Mīr **Ghiyāṣ Ṭaghāī** *Kūnjī Mughūl,* brother of 'Alī-dost—particulars 28; enters the Khān (Maḥmūd)'s service (899) 28, 32; [†before 914 AH.–1507–8 AD.].

Amīr **Ghiyāṣu'd-dīn,** ☞ patron of Khwānd-amīr and supposed ally of Bābur—killed in Herāt (927) 432.

Ghiyāṣu'd-dīn, nephew of Khwānd-amīr—☞ conveys the keys of Qandahār to Bābur (928) 432, 435, 436.

Sulṭān **Ghiyāṣu'd-dīn** *Balban*—Bābur visits his tomb (932) 475; [†686 AH.–1287 AD.].

Ghiyāṣu'd-dīn *qūrchī*—takes campaigning orders to Junaid *Barlās* (935) 628; returns to Court 636; takes orders to the Eastern amirs 638.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Ghulām-i-'alī—returns from taking Bābur's three articles to Naṣrat Shāh (935) 676.

Ghulām bacha, a musician—heard by Bābur in Herāt (912) 303.

Ghulām-i-shādī, a musician—particulars 292 ; his younger brother Ghulām bacha *q.v.*

Mullā **Ghulām** *Yasāwal*—makes an emplacement for the Ghāzī mortar (935) 670 ; sent to collect the Bihār tribute 676.

Ghūrī *Barlās*—on Bābur's service (905) 125 ; in the left wing at Qandahār (913) 334 ; wounded 336 ; [†919 AH.–1513 AD.].

Gūjūr Khān—ordered on service (935) 638.

Gul-badan Begīm *Mīrān - shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Bābur and Dil-dār—☞ her birth (929 or 930) and her book (*cir.* 995) 441 ; her journey to Āgra (935) 650 n. 2 ; ☞ her parentage 712 ; [†1011 AH.–1603 AD.].

Gul-barg *Barlās Turk*, daughter of Khalīfa—☞ betrothed (?) to Shāh Ḥasan *Arghūn* (924–5) 366 ; ☞ married (930) 443.

Gul-chihra Begīm, full sister of Gul-badan *supra* — her marriage with Tūkhtā-būghā *Chaghatāī* 705 n. 1, 708 ; her parentage 712 ; ☞ perhaps the mother of Salīma *Chaqānīanī* 713.

Gul-rang Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Bābur and Dil-dār — ☞ born in Khwāst (920) 363 ; ☞ married to Aīsān-tīmūr *Chaghatāī* (937) 705 n. 1, 708 ; parentage 712.

Gul-rukh Begīm *Begchīk*, wife of Bābur—☞ with Bābur on the Trans-oxus campaign (916–20) 358 ; particulars 712 ; her sons Kāmrān and 'Askarī and her brother (?) Sulṭān 'Alī Mīrzā Ṭaghāī *q.v.*

Mīrak **Gūr** *dīwān* (or Kūr) captured by Shaibānī (913) 328.

Shaikh Abū'l-fath **Gūran** (G'hūran)—serving Bābur (932) 526, 528–9, (933) 539, 567, (934) 590 ; in the right wing at Kānwa (933) 567 ; host to Bābur in Kūl (Koel) (934) 587 ; takes lotus-seeds to him 666 ; sends him grapes (935) 686 ; given Gūāliār (936) 688, 690 ; ☞ holds it till Bābur's death 692 n. 1.

Ḥabība-sulṭān Begīm *Arghūn*, wife of Aḥmad *Mīrān-shāhī* —particulars 36, 37 ; arranges her daughter Ma'ṣūma's marriage with Bābur (912) 306, (913) 330.

GSL

Ḥābība-sulṭān Khānīsh *Dūghlāt*, daughter of Muḥammad Ḥusain and Khūb-nigār *Chaghatāī*—her marriages 21–2; depends on Bābur (917) 22.

Ḥāfiẓ Hājī, a musician—heard by Bābur in Herī (912) 303.

Ḥāfiẓ *kabar-kātib*—his brother conveys Bābur's earliest Dīwān to Samarkand (925) 482; at a feast (935) 631, 632.

Ḥāfiẓ Mīrak—composes an inscription (913) 343.

Ḥāfiẓ-i-muḥammad Beg *Dūldāī Barlās*—particulars 25; in Āūrā-tīpā (893) 17, 25; ☞ joint-guardian of Mīrzā Khān (905) 25, 122; his death 26; his sons Muḥammad *mīskīn* and Ṭāhir *q.v.*; his (?) Chār-bāgh 108; [†*circ.* 909–10 AH.–1504 AD.].

Khwāja Shamsu'd-dīn Muḥammad **Ḥāfiẓ** *Shīrāzī*—parodied (910) 201; [†791 AH.–1389 AD.].

Ḥāfiẓ *Tāshkīndī*—gifts made to him (935) 632.

Haibat Khān *karg-andāz, Hindūstānī*—leaves Bābur (933) 557.

Haibat Khān *Samana'ī*—☞ perhaps the provider of matter to fill the *lacuna* of 936 AH., 693.

Mullā **Haidar**—his sons 'Abdu'l-minān and Mūmin *q.v.*

Haidar *'Alamdār*—on Bābur's service (925) 383, (926) 421.

Haidar-'alī Sulṭān *Bajaurī*—obeys custom in testing his dead mother's virtue 212; ☞ his Gibrī fort taken by Bābur (924) 366, 7, 8.

Haidar Kūkūldāsh *Yāragī Mughūl*, Maḥmūd Khān's "looser and binder"—defeated 35, (900) and killed 52, 111–2; his garden 54; his son Banda-i-'alī and a descendant (?) Ḥusain *Yārajī q.v.*

Ḥaidar-Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Ḥusain and Pāyanda-sulṭān—his Mīrān-shāhī betrothal at Ḥiṣār (901) 48, 61; rejoins his father opportunely (903) 261; particulars 263; his wife Bega *q.v.*; [†908 AH.–1502–3 AD.].

Muḥammad **Ḥāidar Mīrzā Kūrkān** *Dūghlāt*, author of the *Tārīkh-i-rashīdī*—particulars 21–2,[1] 348; ☞ takes refuge with Bābur (916) 350; ☞ his first battle (917) 353; ☞ ill when Kūl-i-malik was fought (918) 357–8; goes to Sa'īd Khān in Kāshgar 22, 362; on Sa'īd's service (933) 590, (936) 695–6; [†958 AH.–1551 AD.].

[1] On p. 22 n. 2 delete "*Chaghatāī Mughūl*" on grounds given in Additional Note, Page 22.

GSL

Ḥaidar-i-qāsim Beg *Kohbur Chaghatāī* — father of Abū'l-qāsim, Aḥmad-i-qāsim and Qūch (Qūj) Beg *q.v.*

Haidar-qulī—on Aūzūn Ḥasan's service (904) 102.

Ḥaidar-qulī, servant of Khwāja Kalān—on service (932) 467; mentioned by Bābur in writing to the Khwāja (935) 648.

Ḥaidar *rikābdār*—stays with Bābur at a crisis (903) 91; his son Muḥammad 'Alī *q.v.*

Ḥaidar *tāqī*—his garden near Kābul 198 n. 1.

Ḥājī Ghāzī *Manghīt*—sent to help Bābur (904) 101 where in n. 3 add Vambéry's Note 29 to the references.

Ḥājī ('Alī) Khān *Yūsuf-khail Lūdī Afghān* — acting with 'Ālam Khān *Lūdī* (932) 445–6–7.

Ḥājī pīāda—killed at the Lovers'-cave 68; [902 AH.–1497 AD.].

Ḥājī Pīr *bakāwal*—negociates for Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* with the Ḥiṣār begs (901) 61.

Halāhil—on service (925) 391, (925) 638.

Ḥalwāchī Tarkhān *Arghūn*—engages Bābur's left wing at Qandāhar (913) 336.

Sayyid Mīr **Hamah**—gets the better of two traitors (932–3) 546; receives head-money (933) 546; in the right wing at Kānwa 566.

Ḥamīd Khān *Khāṣa-khaīl Sārang-khānī Lūdī* — opposes Bābur (932) 465; defeated by Humāyūn 466; defeated (633) 540; sent out of the way before Kānwa 547.

Hāmūsī, son of Dīwa — sent to make a Hindū pact with Sangā's son (935) 616.

Amīr **Hamza**—a poem mentioned imitating that in which he is celebrated 280; [†3 AH.–625 AD.].

Ḥamza Beg *qūchīn*, son of Qāsim and a daughter of Banda-i-'alī — his wedding gifts to Bābur on his marriage with Khalīfa's daughter (925) 400; joins Bābur on summons from Qūndūz 406, 410.

Ḥamza Bī *Mangfīt Aūzbeg* — defeated, when raiding, by Bābur's men (910) 195.

Ḥamza Khān, Malik of 'Alī-shang—made over to the avengers of blood (926) 425; [†926 AH.–1520 AD.].

Ḥamza Sulṭān *Aūzbeg* — his various service 58, 59, 131; defeated by Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (901) 58; enters Bābur's service 59; given leave 64; his Mughūls rebel against Bābur (904) 105; serving Shaibānī (906) 131, 139, (910) 244;

☞ holding Ḥiṣār and comes out against Bābur (916) 352; defeated at Pul-i-sangīn and put to death by Bābur (917) 18, 37, 262, 353; his defeat announced to Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī* 354; his sons in the battle of Jām (935) 622; his sons 'Abdu'l-laṭīf and Mamāq *q.v.*, his Mīrān-shāhī wife 37; [†917 AH.–1511 AD.].

Ḥaq-dād, headman of Dūr-namā—makes offering of his garden to Bābur (926) 420.

Ḥaq-naẓar—finds the body of his nephew (Nūyān) Kūkūldāsh (907) 152.

Ḥaq-naẓīr *chapā*—to punish his raid, beyond the power of the Herāt Mīrzās (912) 300.

Ḥarūnu'r-rashīd Khalīfa—his second son Māmūn Khalīfa (d. 218 AH.) 79; [†193 AH.–809 AD.].

Ustād **Ḥasan-i-'alī**—orders given for the completion of work he had begun in Kābul (935) 646–7.

Ḥasan-i-'alī *Chaghatāī*—receives a pargana (935) 689.

Ḥasan-i-'alī *Jalāīr Chaghatāī*, son of 'Alī (*q.v.*)—particulars 278, 286; meets Bābur (912) 299; his poet-sister 286 n. 1; [†925 AH.–1519 AD.].

Sayyid **Ḥasan** *Āūghlāqchī Mughūl*, son of Murād—particulars 279; serving Bābur (917) 279; his son Farrukh *q.v.*; [†918 AH.–1522 AD.].

Ḥasan *Barlās*—his rough dealing with Bābur (910) 194.

Shāh **Ḥasan Beg** *Arghūn*, son of Shāh (Shuja') Beg—quarrels with his father and goes to Bābur (924) 365, ☞ 430; his betrothal (?) to Gul-barg (924–6) 366 and marriage (930) 443; in the left centre at Bajaur (925) 369; sent to claim ancient lands of the Turks 383–4; is successful 388; out with Bābur 395; gifts to him *ib.* 414, 584; social matters 400, 7, 10, 12; Bābur sends him a quatrain 401; [see *s.n.* Shāh-zāda), ☞ a principal actor between 930 and 932 AH. 427; his attack on Multān 437, 442 and *s.n.* 'Askarī; accedes in Sind (930) 443; reads the *khuṭba* for Bābur 430; his envoy to Bābur (935) 632; [†962 AH.–1555 AD.].

Ḥasan *Chalabī*—Ṭahmāsp *Ṣafawī's* envoy to Bābur (935), arrives late 631, 632 n. 3, 641; Bābur accepts excuse for his delay 649; Bābur's envoy accompanies him on his return 641; his servant gives Bābur an account of the battle of Jām 649.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

Ḥasan-dīkcha of Akhsī—supports Bābur (904) 101.

Ḥasan-i-khalīfa, son of Niẓāmu'd-dīn 'Alī—sent on service 679.

Ḥasan Khān *Bārīwāl Hindūstānī*—leaves Bābur for Sangā (933) 557.

Ḥasan Khān *Daryā-khānī,* son of Daryā Khān son of Mīr 'Alī Beg—on service for Bābur (933) 582; in the battle of the Ghogrā (935) 669; pursuing rebels 678.

Ḥasan-i-makan, loses Kandār to Sangā (932) 529–30.

Ḥasan Khān *Mewātī*—his change of capital (930) 578; his opposition to Bābur (932) 523 and n. 3, (933) 545, 547; his force at Kānwa 562 and death 573; Bairām Khān's remarks on him 523 n. 3; his son Nāhar *q.v.*; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].

Ḥasan Nabīra, grandson of Muḥammad *Sīghal*—waits on Bābur (902) 66; captures his elder brother (903) 72; leaves 'Alī for Mīrzā Khān (905) 122; goes as envoy (?) to Bābur from Mīrzā Khān (925) 415; his elder brother Muhammad Qāsim Nabīra *q.v.*

Mullā **Ḥasan** *ṣarrāf*—given custody of gifts for Kābul (932) 525.

Ḥasan *sharbatchī*—helps Bāī-sunghar *Mīrān-shāhī's* escape (901) 62.

Ḥasan-i-yaq'ūb Beg, son of Nūyān Beg?—particulars 26; supports Bābur (899) 30, 31; his appointments 32; shows disloyalty (900) 43; his death 44; his sobriquet Nūyān's Ḥasan 273; [†900 AH.–1494 AD.].

Malik **Hast** *Janjūha*—receives an envoy from Bābur (925) 380; serving Bābur 380, 389; his injuries from Hātī *Kakar* 391.

Hātī *Kakar*—particulars 387; his misdeeds provoke punishment (925) 387, 9, 91; abandons Parhāla 390; sends Bābur tribute and is sent an envoy 391–2; referred to 452.

'Abdu'l-lāh **Hātifī,** nephew of Jāmī—particulars 288.

Ḥātim *qūrchī*—promoted to be *qūr-begī* (911) 252; in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335.

Hazārāspī, see Pīr-i-muḥammad.

Henry VII of England—his *Intercursus malus* contemporary with 910 AH. 187 n. 2.

Henry of Navarre—☞ his difficulties, as to creed, less than those of Bābur in 917 AH.–1511 AD., 356.

Hilālī, see Badru'd-dīn *Hilālī.*

Abū'l-nāṣir Muḥammad **Hind-āl Mīrzā** *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Bābur and Dil-dār—his pre-natal adoption (925) 374; meaning of his name Hind-āl 385; gifts to him or his servants 522, (935) 633, 642; the *Wālidiyyah-risāla* and Hindūstān verses sent to him 642; under summons to Hind 645, ☞ 696; ☞ sent by Humāyūn to Qila'-i-ẓafar (936) 695; referred to 697; ☞ waits on his father in Lāhor 699; ☞ his dying father's wish to see him (937) 708; his escort of Bābur's family in 946 AH. referred to 710; [†958 AH.–1551 AD.].

Hindī—Mindī,—Mahndī, see Mahndī.

Hindū Beg *qūchīn*—leaves 'Alī *Mīrān-shāhī* for Mīrzā Khān (905) 122; sent to raid Panj-kūra (925) 374; in Bhīra (386–8; leaves it 399; out with Bābur 403; serving under Humāyūn (932) 465–6, 528–9; in the right wing at Pānīpat 472 and at Kānwa (933) 566 and n. 2, 569; escorts Māhīm from Kābul (935) 687; sent to Saṃbhal *ib.*; waits on Bābur *ib.* and n. 2, 689; his mosque in Saṃbhal 687 n. 2.

☞ **Hulākū Khān** *Aīl-khānī* (*Īl-khānī*)—referred to 79; [†663 AH.–1264 AD.].

Hul-hul Anīga—a woman drinker 417.

Nasīru'd-dīn Muḥammad **Humāyūn Mīrzā** *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Bābur and Māhīm—his birth (913) 344; his mother's parentage 344 n. 3, ☞ 712–3; death of elder brethren referred to 374; a Trans-indus district given to him (925) 391; carried in haste to meet his father 395; makes a good shot 417; prefers not to go to Lamghān (926) 421; ☞ appointed to Badakhshān (927) 427; with his father in the Trans-oxus campaign (916–20) 358; his delay in joining the Hindūstān expedition (932) 444, 446 n. 3, 447; a desertion from him 545; first sight of a rhinoceros 451; books given to him at Milwat 460; his story-teller killed *ib.*; a successful first military affair 466–7; on service 471; in the right wing at Pānīpat 472; sent to take possession of Āgra 475, 476, 526; becomes owner of the Koh-i-nūr 477; receives Saṃbhal and other gifts 522, 7, 8; appointed against the Eastern Afghāns, his campaign 534, 544; mentioned in connection with the title 'Aẓam-humāyūn' (933) 537; his return to Āgra 544; his dislike of wine 545; in the right wing at Kānwa 566, 568–9; his departure for Kābul (and Badakhshān) 579–80; misappropriates treasure 583, ☞ 695 n. 1; a daughter born (934 or 5) 618; his father's messenger, detained a year by

GSL

him, arrives in Āgra (935) 621, 626; birth of a son (934) 621, 624–5; letter to him from his father quoted 624–27; ordered to act with Kāmrān against the Aūzbegs 625–6; news of his action reaches Bābur 639, 640; gifts sent to him on his son's birth and with them the *Wālidiyyah-risāla* and the Hindustān poems 642; topics of a letter to him enumerated 645; the letter despatched 649; gifts from him to his father 687; a family tradition that his father wished to abdicate in his favour 689 n. 5; ☞ misery of his creation 692; concerning a plan to set him aside from the succession 644 n. 4, 688 n. 2, ☞ 692–3, ☞ 702–7; deserts his post in Badakhshān (936) 694; its sequel 695, 6, 7–8; ordered by his father to Sambhal 697; his illness and his father's self-surrender (937) 701–2; goes back to Sambhal 702; summoned and is declared successor at his father's last audience 708; [†963 AH.–1556 AD.].[1]

Bāba **Ḥūsain**—his murder of Aūlūgh Beg *Shāh-rukhī* (853) 85 and n. 3.[2]

Maulānā Shaikh **Ḥusain**—particulars 283–4.

Ḥūsain *Aīkrak* (?) (or Ḥasan)—receives the Chīn-āb country from Bābur (925) 386; misbehaves (926) 423.

Sayyīd **Ḥusain Akbar** *Tīrmīzī*, a maternal relative of Maṣ'ūd *Mīrān-shāhī*—attacks the fugitive Bāī-sunghar (903) 74; out with Bābur (910) 234; suspected 239; in the left wing at Qandahār (913) 334.

Sultān **Ḥusain** *Arghūn Qarā-kūlī*—particulars 40; leaves Samarkand with the Tarkhāns (905) 121; fights for Bābur at Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) (906) 139; his great-niece Ma'ṣūma a wife of Bābur 36.

Ḥusain Āqā *Sīstānī*—in the right wing at Kānwa (933) 566.

Ḥusain *'aūdī*, lutanist of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā*—particulars 292; owed his training to 'Alī-sher *Nawā'ī* 272.

Shāh **Ḥusain** *bakhshī*—brings Bābur news of a success (935) 685.

Khwāja **Ḥusain Beg**, brother of Aūzūn Ḥasan—particulars 26; his daughter a wife of 'Umar Shaikh 24, 146 n. 3; leaves Samarkand with the Tarkhāns (905) 121; fights for Bābur at Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) (906) 139; one of eight in the flight from Akhsī (908) 177 (here Khwāja Ḥusainī); his lameness causes him to leave Bābur 178; sends Lāhor revenues

[1] For Humāyūn's annotation of the *Bābur-nāma*, see General Index *s.n.* Humāyūn's Notes.

[2] For a correction of dates, see *s.n.* Aūlūgh Beg.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · सत्यमेव जयते · भारत सरकार

GSL

to Kābul (932) 446; waits on Bābur 458; on service (933) 549 (here Mullā Ḥusain); in the left centre at Kānwa 566.

Shāh **Ḥusain** *chuhra*, a brave of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā*—left in Balkh (902) 70.

Sulṭān **Ḥusain** *Dūghlāt*—joins Bābur (901) 58–9; conspires against Tambal (907) 154; sent by The Khān (Maḥmūd) to help Bābur (908) 161.

Ḥusain *Ghainī*—a punitive force sent against him (911) 253.

Ḥūsain-i-ḥāsan—out with Bābur (925) 403; killed and avenged 404, 405; [†925 AH.–1519 AD.].

Maulānā Shāh **Ḥusain** *Kāmī*, a poet—particulars 290.

Ḥūsain Kashifī—his omission from Bābur's list of Herāt celebrities 283 n. 1.

Ḥusain Khān *Lashkar* (?) *Wazīr*—writes from Naṣrat Shāh, accepting Bābur's three articles (935) 676.

Sulṭān **Ḥusain Mīrzā** *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Manṣūr—defeats Maḥmūd *Mīrān-shāhī* (865) 46, 259 and (876) 260; his relations with Nawā'ī 33, 272; his campaign against Khusrau Shāh (901) 57, 58–61, 130; his dissensions with his sons 61, 69, (902) 68–70, 260, (903) 94–5; his capture of Herī (875) compared with Bābur's of Samarkand (906) 134–5; does not help Bābur against Shaibānī 138, 145; asks Bābur's help against him (910) 190–1, (911) 255; his death 256, and burial 293; particulars of his life and court 256–292 :—(personal 256—amīrs 270—ṣadrs 280—wazīrs, etc. 281—poets 286—artists 291)—his dealings with Ẓū'n-nūn *Arghūn* and Khusrau Shāh 274; his kindness to Maṣ'ūd *Mīrān-shāhī* (903) 93, 95; his disorderly Finance Office 281–2; delays a pilgrim 284, his copyist 291; his splendid rule 300; his buildings 305; his relation Nuyān Beg *Tīrmīzī* 273; Bābur writes to him in ignorance of his death (912) 294; Bābur's comments on him 60, 191, 225; a poem mistakenly attributed to him 281; [†911 AH.–1506 AD.].

Sulṭān **Ḥusain Mīrzā** *Mīrān-shāhī*, son of Maḥmūd and a Tīrmīzī wife—his death (*æt.* 13) in his father's lifetime, 47, 110.

Mīr **Ḥusain** *mu'ammā'ī Nishāpūrī*—particulars 288 and n. 7; [†904 AH.–1498–9 AD.].

Ḥusain Khān *Nūḥānī Afghān*—holding Rāprī and not submissive to Bābur (932) 523; abandons it 530; takes it again (933) 557; drowned in flight 582; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Sulṭān **Ḥusain** *Qānjūt*, maternal grandfather of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* —his Tīmūrid descent 256 n. 5.

Shāh Mīr **Ḥusain** *Qārlūq*—waits on Bābur (925) 403 (here var. Ḥasan) 409; sent to Bajaur (926) 422; meets Bābur on his road 423; in charge of *impedimenta* (932) 458; allowed to raid from Milwat 464; fighting for Bābur 468, 471; in the left wing at Pānipat 472; posted in Jūnpūr (933) 544.

Ḥusain-i Shaikh Tīmūr—particulars 273 (where in n. 2 read grand("father").

Sulṭān **Ḥusain** *Sharqī*—rise and fall of his dynasty 481; [†905 AH.–1500 AD.].

Shāh **Ḥusain** *Yāragī Mughūl Ghanchī*—in the left wing at Pānīpat (932) 472, and at Kānwa (933) 567; on service 530.

Ḥusamu'd-dīn 'Alī *Barlās*, son of Khalīfa—on service (934) 601; waits on Bābur (935) 687.

Ibn-i-ḥusāin Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Ḥusain and Pāpā—parentage 265; joins his brothers against Shaibānī (912) 296; fails in etiquette when meeting Bābur 297; his place at a reception 298; goes back to his districts Tūn and Qāīn 301; mentioned 331; the poet Āhī his servant 289; [†919 AH.–1513 AD.].

Ibrāhīm Ātā (Father Abraham)—his tomb in Turkistān 159.

Ibrāhīm Beg *Begchīk*, brother of Ayūb—in the right wing at Qandahār (913) 334.

Mīr **Ibrāhīm** *Begchīk*—fights and kills a guardian of 'Umar Shaikh *Mīrān-shāhī* (*cir.* 870) 25.

Ibrāhīm *Chaghatāī*—joins Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* 279,[1] 689 n. 4.

Ibrāhīm *chuhra*—conveys a quatrain of Bābur's (925) 401.

Ibrāhīm *Dūldāī Barlās*—particulars 274.

Sulṭān **Ibrāhīm** *Ghaznawī*—histomb 218; [†492 AH.–1098 AD.].

Ibrāhīm-i-ḥusain Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Ḥusain—particulars 265; on his father's service (901) 57; receives Balkh (902) 70; besieged (903) 93–4; [†910 AH.–1504–5 AD.].

Ibrāhīm *Jānī*—fights for Bābur at Sar-i-pul (906) 139; one of three Ibrāhīms killed there 141, 624 n. 1; his son Chilma *q.v.*; [†906 AH.–1501 AD.].

[1] On p. 279 l. 3 from foot read "There was also Ibrāhīm *Chaghatāī*" after "Muḥammad-i-zamān Mīrzā".

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Mīr **Ibrāhīm** *qānūnī*—waits on Bābur (935) 605 ; his kinsman Yūnas-i-'alī *q.v.*

Sulṭān **Ibrāhīm** *Sahu-khail Lūdī Afghān*, son of Sikandar—Bābur sends him a goshawk and asks for the ancient lands of the Turk (925) 385 ; ☞ co-operation against him proffered to Bābur by Sangā 426, 529 ; ☞ a principal actor in the years of the *lacuna* from 926 to 932 AH. 427 ; ☞ no indication of Bābur's intending to attack him in 926 AH. 429 ; his misdoing leads to appeal for Bābur's help (929) 439 ; defeats his uncle 'Ālam Khān (932) 456–7 ; Bābur moves from the Dūn against him 463 ; his military strength 463, 470 ; imprisons humble men sent by Bābur 464 ; various news of him 465, 466–7 ; Bābur's estimate of him 470 ; defeated and killed at Pānīpat 473–4, 630 n. 4 ; an Afghān account of Bābur's care for his corpse *ib.* ; references to his rule in Gūāliār 977, to the rebellion of his Eastern amīrs 523, 527, to his capture of Chandirī and defeat at Dhūlpūr by Sangā 593, to Bābur's route when he was defeated (932) 206, and to his "prison-house" 459 ; his resources contrasted with Bābur's 480 ; his treasure at an end (935) 617 ; his mother q.v. *s.n.* mother; his son sent to Kāmrān's charge in Qandahār (933) 544 ; [†932 AH.–1526 AD.].

Ibrāhīm Sārū *Mīnglīgh* Beg—*Chāpūk*—particulars [Author's Note] 52 ; disloyal to Bābur (900) 52 ; besieged and submits 53 ; receives Shīrāz (902) 66 ; remains with Bābur at a crisis (903) 91 ; on service (904) 101, 106 ; his man holds fast in Aūsh 107 ; plundered by 'Alī-dost (905) 119 ; waits on Bābur 125 ; one of three Ibrāhīms killed at Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) 139, 141 ; his brother Samad *q.v.* his good bowman 66 ; [†906 AH.–1501 AD.].

Ibrāhīm Sulṭān Mīrzā *Shāh-rukhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Shāh-rukh—his rule in Shīrāz, death and successor (838) 20 ; referred to 85 ; [†838 AH.–1414–5 AD.].

Ibrāhīm Ṭaghāī Beg *Begchīk*, brother of Ayūb—wounded and nicknamed *Chāpūk* (902) 67 ; leaves Bābur (903) 86 ; in Akhsī with Bāyazīd *Itārachī* (908) 171 ; sent against Pāp *ib.* ; arrests Bāyazīd 173–4 ; wounded but fights for Bābur 174 ; soon falls behind in the flight from Akhsī 176 ; in the right wing at Qandahār (913) 334 ; holds Balkh for Bābur (923) 463 n. 3 ; sent as Bābur's envoy to Aūzbeg Khāns and Sulṭāns (935) 643.

Ibrāhīm Tarkhān *Arghūn*—serving Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (901) 58; holding Shīrāz (906) 130; reinforces Bābur 131; one of three Ibrāhīms killed at Sar-i-pul 140–1; his brother Aḥmad *q.v.*; [†906 AH.–1501 AD.].

Qāzī **Ikhtiyār**—particulars 285; waits on Bābur and examines the Bāburī script (912) 285; is instructed in the exposition of the Qorān by Shaibānī (913) 329; [†928 AH.–1521 AD.].

Ilīās Khān, see Rustam.

Shāh **'Imād** *Shīrāzī*—brings Bābur friendly letters from two amīrs of Hind (932) 463.

'Imādu'd-dīn Mas'ūd—an envoy of Jahāngīr *Mīrān-shāhī* to Tramontane clans (911–912) 296.

'Imādu'l-mulk, a slave—strangles Sikandar *Gujrātī* (932) 535.

Imām-i-muḥammad—Bābur's company drink at his house (925) 418; his master Khwāja Muḥammad-amīn *q.v.*

Īsān, see Aīsān.

Isḥāq Ātā (Father Isaac)—his tomb in Turkistān 159.

Iskandar, see Sikandar.

Islīm *Barlās*—particulars 276.

Ismā'īl *chilma*, see Chilma.

Isma'īl Khān *Jilwānī* (not *Jalwānī*)—with 'Ālam Khān *Lūdī* (932) 456; deserts him 457; writes dutifully to Bābur 464; speaks of waiting on him (934 ?) 680; does it (935) 677, 679.

Ismā'īl Khān *Yūsuf-khail Lūdī*, son of 'Alī—parleys with Bābur at Milwat (932) 459; deported 461.

Ismā'īl Mītā—Naṣrat Shāh's envoy to Bābur (935) 640–1, 664–5.

Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī 'Arab*, Shāh of Persia—reference to his capture of 'Irāq (cir. 906) 280, 336; gives refuge to a fugitive Bāī-qarā (913) 327 n. 5; ☞ hostilities begin between him and Shaibānī (915) 350; defeats Shaibānī at Merv (916) 18, 318, ☞ 350; sends Khān-zāda back to Bābur 18, 352; ☞ asked by Bābur for reinforcement (917) 352–4; ☞ his alliance dangerous for Bābur 355; ☞ indication of his suzerain relation with Bābur 355; ☞ a principal actor in the *lacuna* years from 926–930, 427; ☞ his relations with Shāh Beg *Arghūn* 430; relations with Bābur (927) 433–4; ☞ his death after defeat (930) 443; ☞ Lord Bacon on his personal beauty 443 n. 1; his son Ṭahmāsp *q.v.*; his (presumed) Bāī-qarā disciple in Shī'a heresy 262; [†930 AH.–1524 AD.].

GSL

Ja'far Khwāja, son of Mahdī Khwāja and step-son of Bābur's sister Khān-zāda—fills his father's place in Etāwa (933) 579, 582; sent to collect boats (934) 598; pursues Bīban and Bāyazīd (935) 682.

Jahāngīr *Barlās*, son of Ibrāhīm and a Badakhshī Begīm (T.R. trs. p. 108)—particulars 273; joint-governor of Kābul for Abū-sa'īd 270, 273.

Jahāngīr Mīrzā *Barlās Turk*, eldest son of Tīmūr—named in Abū-sa'īd's genealogy 14; is given Samarkand by Tīmūr 85; his tomb in Kesh 83; his son Muḥammad 78, 85; [†776 AH.–1374–5 AD.].

Jahāngīr Mīrzā *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of 'Umar Shaikh and Fāṭima *Mughūl*—particulars 17; sent (a child) to reinforce an uncle (*cir.* 895) and then betrothed 48, 189; comes to Andijān after his father's death (899) 32; Mughūl support for him against Bābur (900) 43–4, (903) 87–8, (904) 101; joins Tambal 103; a "worry" 104; defeated at Khūbān (905) 113; waits on Bābur 119; summoned for a Samarkand expedition 122; reinforces Bābur (906) 138; a gift to him from the exiled Bābur (907) 150; joins Bābur (908) 173; acts against Bābur's wishes 173–4; flees in panic 174–5; rumoured a prisoner 176; ☞ his occupation of Khujand (909?) 182; Bābur rejects advice to dismiss him (910) 191; deference to him from Khusrau Shāh 193; his part in occupying Kābul 198, 199; receives Ghaznī 227; out with Bābur 233–4, 235–6, 239; rejects counsel to betray him 239; is Bābur's host in Ghaznī 240; his experiences in an earthquake (911) 247; insists on a move for Qalāt-i-ghilzāī 248; waits on Bābur and does service 252–3; his misconduct 254; causes Bābur to mobilize his troops 255; goes to Yaka-aūlāng (912) 294; the clans not supporting him, he goes to Herī with Bābur 295–6; at social gatherings 298, 302; defeats his half-brother Nāṣir 321; his death 331 n. 3, 345; his widow brings their son Pīr-i-muḥammad to Bābur (913) 331; [†912 or 913 AH.–1507–8 AD.].

Nūru'd-dīn Muḥammad **Jahāngīr Pādshāh** *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Akbar—his work in Bābur's burial-ground 710; words of his made clear by Bābur's 501 n. 6; mentioned concerning the *tamghā* 553 n. 1; [†1037 AH.–1627 AD.].

Jahāngīr *Turkmān* — revolts in Badakhshān against the Aūzbegs (910) 242; keeping his head up (913) 340.

GSL

Jahān-shāh *Barlās*, son of Chakū — mentioned in his son Muḥammad Barandūq's genealogy 270.

Jahān-shah Mīrzā *Barānī, Qarā-qūīlūq Turkmān*—ruling in Tabrīz while Yūnas *Chaghatāī* stayed there 20; his sons defeated by the Āq-qūīlūq (872) 49; his son Muḥammadī's wife Pasha 49;[1] [†872 AH.–1467–8 AD.].

Rāī **Jāipal** *Lāhorī*—a legend of his siege of Ghaznī 219; [†*cir.* 392 AH.–1002 AD.].

Rāja **Jāi-singh** *Jāipūrī*—his astronomical instruments 79 n. 4; [†1156 AH.–1743 AD.].

Jalāl Khān *Jig-hat*—waits on 'Ālam Khān *Lūdī* (932) 456 and n. 4; his house in Dihlī Bābur's quarters 476; his son 'Ālam Khān *Kālpī q.v.*

Jalāl Khān *Lūdī*, son of 'Ālam Khān—deserts his father (932) 457; in the left wing at Kānwa (933) 567 (where for "Jamāl" read Jalāl).

Jalāl *Tāshkīndī*—brings Bābur news of Bīban and Bāyazīd (935) 685.

Jalālu'd-dīn Maḥmūd *nāī*—a flautist, heard in Herāt (912) 303.

Sulṭān **Jalālu'd-dīn** *Nūḥānī*—Jalāl Khān, son of Bihār Khān and Dūdū—one of three competitors for rule (935) 651 n. 5; writes dutifully to Bābur 659; news of his and his mother's coming 664; waits on Bābur 676; receives revenue from Bihār 676.

Maulānā **Jalālu'd-dīn** *Pūrānī*—origin of his cognomen 306; his descendant Jamālu'd-dīn Abū-sa'īd *Pūrān q.v.*; [†862 AH.–1458 AD.].

Sulṭān **Jalālu'd-dīn** *Sharqī*, son of Ḥusain Shāh—waits on Bābur (935) 651; particulars 651 n. 5; his man abandons Benares 652; entertains Bābur 652; his son styled Sulṭān *ib.*; his gift of a boat to Bābur 663; in the battle of the Ghogrā 669; on service 678.

Shaikh **Jamāl** *Bārīn Mughūl*—his son (?) Shaikh 'Alī *q.v.*

Shaikh **Jamāl** *Farmūlī Afghān*—deserts 'Ālam Khān (932) 457; serving Bābur (933) 551.

Shaikh **Jamālī**—at a feast (935) 631; conveys encouragement to Dūdū Bībī 665–6.

[1] *Addendum*:—p. 49 l. 4, read "wife" of Muḥammadī "son" of Jahān-shāh.

GSL

Shaikh **Jamālu'd-dīn Abū-sa'īd** *Pūrān*—particulars 306 n. 2; ill-treated by Shaibānī (913) 306 n. 2, 328; [†921 AH.–1515 AD.].

Shaikh **Jamālu'd-dīn** *khar, Arghūn*—captor of Yūnas Khān and Aīsān-daulat Begīm (T.R. trs. p. 94)—slain 35; [†877 AH.–1472–3 AD.].

Mīr **Jamālu'd-dīn** *muḥaddaṣ*—particulars 284; [living 934–7 AH.–1527–31 AD.].

Shaikh **Jāmī**—ancestor of Akbar's mother 623 n. 8.

Jāmī, see 'Abdu'r-raḥmān *Jāmī*.

Jamshīd, (an ancient ruler of Persia)—mentioned 85, 152.

Mīr **Jān-aīrdī**, retainer of Ẕū'n-nūn *Arghūn*—sells provisions to Bābur (912) 308.

Jānak—recites in Turkī (912) 304.

Jānaka Kūkūldāsh, (or Khānika)—escapes after Sār-i-pul (906) 141.

Jān-i-'alī—murdered by Shaibānī (906) 127, 128; [†906 AH.–1500 AD.].

Jān Beg—in charge of *impedimenta* (932) 458; allowed leave for a raid 464; in a night-attack 471; in the left wing at Pānīpat 472 and at Kānwa (933) 567 (here Jān-i-muhammad Beg Ātāka); on service (935) 682 (here Jānī Beg).

Mīr **Jān** *Dīwān*—his house in Qandahār reserved as loot for Nāṣir *Mīrān-shāhī* (913) 338.

Jānī Beg *Dūldāī Barlās Turk*—particulars 37 (where nn. 2 and 3 should be reversed).

Jānī Beg Sulṭān Khān *Aūzbeg - Shabān Chīngīz-khānid*—his two Mīrān-shāhī marriages of conquest 18, 35; fights for Shaibānī at Sar-i-pūl (906) 139 (where read Jānī Beg Sulṭān); he and his sons at Jām (935) 622; flees to Merv 636 n. 2.

Jān-i-ḥasan, *Bārīn Mughūl*—sent to reinforce Bābur (903) 92, (908) 161, 170.

Jān-i-nāṣir—answers a call-to-arms (925) 408.

Mīr **Jān** *Samarkandī*—his distasteful singing (912) 303.

Jān-wafā Mīrzā—serving Shaibānī in Samarkand (906) 131; escapes on Bābur's success 133.

Barlās **Jūkī**—brings Bābur good news, a live Aūzbeg, and a head (925) 408.

Jūha Sulṭān *Taklū*, Governor of Ispahān—with Ṭahmāsp *Ṣāfawī* on the battle-field of Jām (935) 635.

Jūjī Khān *Chingīz - khānid* — a Qāzzāk descendant mentioned 23.

Muḥammad **Jūkī Mīrzā** *Shah-rukhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of 'Abdu'l-laṭīf (†854)—mentioned as besieged by Abū-sa'īd *Mīrān-shāhī* 24; [†868 AH.–1463–4 AD.].

Sulṭān **Junaid** *Barlās* (or Junīd)—particulars 276; his sons Niẓāmu'd-dīn 'Alī Khalīfa and Junaid *q.v.*

Sulṭān **Junaid** *Barlās* (or Junīd), son of the last-entered—incites an attempt on Samarkand (900) 52, 111; serving Bābur (932) 460, 468, 471; in the left wing at Pānīpat 472; sent to help in occupying Dihlī 475; given Dūlpūr 530–1; posted in Jūnpūr (933) 544; in Kharīd (935) 637 and n. 1; joins Bābur late and is not received 667; gives local information 668; in the battle of the Ghogrā 669; on service 679, 682 and n. 2; his wife Shahr-bānū *Mīrān-shāhī q.v.*

Kābulī Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*—abandoned by her husband Badī'u'z-zamān *Bāī-qarā* and captured by Shaibānī (913) 328.

Kahil *ṣaḥib-i-qadam*—gives his horse to Bābur (908) 174.

Pahlawān **Kalāl**—wrestles (935) 650.

Kalāntar of Dikh-kat (var. *kālāntar* and *kīlāntar*)—his house used by Bābur (907) 150; his aged mother's story *ib.*

Kalīmu'l-lāh Shāh *Bahminī Afghān*—ruling the Dakkhin (932) 482.

Kal-qāshūq—put to retaliatory death (903) 73.

Sayyid **Kāmal**—serving Khusrau Shāh (903) 96 (where for "Qasīm" read Kāmal).

Kamāl Khān *Sāhū-khail Lūdī Afghān*, son of 'Ālam Khān—in the left wing at Kānwa (933) 567.

Kamāl Khwāja—his birth-place Khujand 8; [†803 AH.–1400–1 AD.].

Kamāl *sharbatchī*—in the right wing at Qandahār (913) 335.

Pahlawān Khwāja **Kamālu'd-dīn** *Badakhshī*—in the right wing at Kānwa (933) 566.

Khwāja **Kamālu'd-dīn Ḥusāin** *Gāzur-gāhī*—particulars 280, 281; sent as envoy to Shaibānī (904) 145.

Khwāja **Kamālu'd-dīn Maḥmūd**, retainer of Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī*—☞ with Bābur after the defeat at Ghaj-davān (919) 362–3; [†*cir.* 919 AH.–1514 AD.].

Kamālu'd-dīn *Qūīq* (var.)—lays before Bābur complaint of the begs of the Balkh frontier (935) 649.

Kāmrān Mīrza *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Bābur and Gul-rukh *Begchīk*—☞ the date of his birth App. J, xxxv; ☞ taken on the Transoxus campaign (916–920) 358; carried in haste to meet his father (920) 395; joins his father 417; ☞ the *Mubīn* written for his instruction (928) 438; ☞ left in charge of Kābul and Qandahār (932) App. J, xxxv; a letter from Bābur to him *ib.* and App. L, xliii; his copy of the *Bābur-nāma* App. J, xxxv–vi; gifts sent to him (932) 460, 522, 642; put in charge of Ibrāhīm *Lūdī's* son (933) 544; ☞ of his transfer to Multār (934-5) ☞ 604, 605 n. 3, 645; of his proceedings in Kābul 618; his marriage to a cousin 619; the *Wālidiyyah-risāla*, Hindustān Poems and specimens of the Bāburī script sent to him 642; heads of a letter to him 645, 646; ☞ meets Humāyūn in Kābul (935) 696; ☞ meets Bābur in Lāhor (936) 699: ☞ of his governments 699; ☞ later action in Multān and Lāhor (938) (which read for 935) 699; ☞ visits his father's tomb near Āgra (946) 709; [†964 AH.–1556 AD.].

Kankū or Gangū—killed at Kānwa 573; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].

Karīm-bīrdī—on Bābur's service (935) 661.

Karīm-dād *Turkmān*—at a household party (906) 131; escapes from Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) 141; one of four fighting with Bābur (908) 166, 396; reprieved from a death sentence (914) 345.

Karm-chand—acting for Ḥasan *Mewatī* (933) 545, 578; asks peace from Bābur for Ḥasan's son Nāhar 578.

Kārm Singh—killed at Kānwa 573; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].

Rāja Karna *Gūālīārī*, (or, Kirtī), *Tūnwar Rājpūt*—his buildings in Gūālīār 608 n. 3.

Khadīja Āghā, and later, Begīm, mistress of Abū-sa'īd *Mīrān-shāhī*, wife of Ḥusain *Bāi-qarā*—particulars 262, 268; her dominance 268, 292; visited in Herī by Bābur (912) 301; at an entertainment to him 302; a suspicion against her 302 n. 1; captured by Shaibānī (913) 327; given for a traitor to loot 328; her daughter Āq Begīm and sons Shāh-i-gharīb and Muẓaffar-i-ḥusain *q.v.*

Khadija-sulṭān Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Abū'sa'īd—(probably) seen by Bābur in Herī

(912) 301; Bābur visits her near Āgra (934) 588 and in Āgra Fort (935) 606, 616.

Khaldār *Yāragī Mughūl*, son of Ḥaidar Kūkūldāsh—fights for Bābur at Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) (906) 139.

Khalīfa, see Niẓamu'd-dīn 'Alī *Barlās*.

Khalīl *chuhra*—a brave who fought well for Bābur (904) 101.

Khalīl *dīwāna*—on Aūzūn Ḥasan's service (904) 102 (where for "Dīwān" read dīwāna).

Sulṭān **Khalīl Mīrzā**, *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Mīrān-shāh—mentioned 262 n. 2; [†814 AH.–1411–2 AD.].

Sulṭān **Khalīl Mīrzā** *Mīrān-shāhī* (*ut supra*), son of Abū-sa'īd—his daughter sole wife of Bāī-sunghar *Mīrān-shāhī* 112.

Khalīl Sulṭān *Chaghatāī Chingīz-khānid*, son of Aḥmad, (Alacha Khān), full brother of Sa'īd—his son Bābā Sulṭān *q.v.*

Khalīl Sulṭān *Itārajī Mughūl*, brother of Aḥmad Tambal—holding Māḍū for Tambal (905) 109; captured *ib.*, and released 119; surprises Aūsh 125; helps Bābur against Shaibānī (906) 138; killed at Sar-i-pul 141; [†906 AH.–1501 AD.].

Khalwī *pīāda* (or Khalwā)—his spear-head bitten off by a tiger (925) 393.

The **Khatīb of Qarshī**—an envoy to Bābur (910) 188.

Khān-i-jahān, see Fatḥ Khān *Sarwānī*.

Khān-i-jahān, a "pagan"—opposes Bābur (933) 539.

Khān-qulī, son of Bīān-qulī—leaves Bābur in Samarkand (903) 86; at a household party (906) 131 (where read Khān-qulī for "Khān-i-qulī"); gives ground for suspicion (907) 156; one of eight in the flight from Akhsī (908) 176, 177; in the right-centre at Qandahār (913) 335.

Khān-zāda Begīm (1), *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Maḥmūd—particulars 48.

Khān-zāda Begīm (2), *ut supra*, daughter of Maṣ'ūd and Sa'ādat-bakht—particulars 267; visited by Bābur near Āgra (935) 616.

Khān-zāda Begīm (3), *ut supra*, daughter of 'Umar Shaikh and Qūtlūq-nigār—particulars 17; her marriage with Shaibānī (907) 18, 147, ☞ 184; her divorce and remarriage with Sayyid Hādī Khwāja 352 [H.S. iii], 364; her reunion with Bābur (916) 18, 352, 356; her marriage with Mahdī Khwāja *q.v.*; her summons to Hindūstān (935) 647; his son Khurram Shāh *q.v.*; [†952 AH.–1545 AD.].

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Khān-zādā Begīm (4), *Tīrmīẕī*, wife of Maḥmūd *Mīrān-shāhī*—particulars 48; her son Mas'ūd *q.v.*; her niece 48.

Khān-zāda Begīm (5), *Tīrmīẕī*, niece of the above, wife of Maḥmūd—particulars 48, 9; her son Ḥusain *q.v.*; her five daughters 47–8.

Khān-zāda Begīm (6), *Tīrmīẕī*, wife of Aḥmad *Mīrān-shāhī*—particulars 37; Bābur, a child, pulls off her wedding veil (893) 37.

Khān-zāda Khānīm *Ḥājī-tarkhānī*, daughter of Aḥmad and Badī'u'l-jamāl (Badka)—particulars 258 n. 2, 329; illegally married by Shaibānī (913) 329; her husband Muzaffar-i-ḥusain *Bāī-qarā q.v.*

Khawānd Shāh Amīr, ("Mirkhond"), author of the *Rauzatu'ṣ-ṣafā*—omitted (or lost) from Bābur's list of Herāt celebrities 283 n. 1; [†903 AH.–1498 AD.].

Khiẓr Khwāja Khān *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*—mentioned in Yūnas Khān's genealogy 19.

Khwāja **Khiẓr** *Nūḥānī*, a merchant—killed by a Mughūl (910) 235 (where for "*Lūḥānī*" read *Nūḥānī*).

Khūb-nīgār Khānīm *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*, daughter of Yūnas and Aīsān-daulat—particulars 21, 22; her death announced to Bābur (907) 148, 149; her rebel husband forgiven for her sake (912) 319; her husband Muḥammad Ḥusain *Dūghlāt*, their son Ḥāidar and daughter Ḥabība *q.v.*; [†907 AH.–1501–2 AD.].

Khudā-bakhsh *Chaghatāī*, retainer, (1) of Khusrau Shāh, (2) of Bābur—in the right wing at Qandahār (913) 334; rebels against Bābur (914) 345.

Khudāī-bīrdī Beg *tūghchī, Mughūl*—stays with Bābur at a crisis (903) 91; made a beg and on service 110; killed at Sar-i-pul 141; [†906 AH.–1501 AD.].

Khudāī-bīrdī *būqāq, Mughūl*—killed at Asfara (900) 53 (here *ātākām*, my guardian); his favour from Bābur 105; his son Qulī *chūnāq q.v.*; [†900 AH.–1495 AD.].

Khudāī-bīrdī *tūghchī Tīmūr-tāsh*—made 'Umar Shaikh's Lord-of-the-Gate (*cir.* 870) 14; particulars 24–5; [†a few years after 870 AH.–1466 AD.].

Khurram Shāh *Aūzbeg-Shaibān, Chīngīz-khānid*, son of Shaibānī and Khān-zāda—particulars 18; [†a few years after 916 AH.–1510–11 AD.].

Khūsh-kīldī[1] *Mughūl*—in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335.

Khusrau, an ancient ruler of Persia—mentioned in a couplet 85.

Khusrau *Gāgīānī*—waits on Bābur (910) 230 (where insert his name in the last line); taken as a guide 231.

Khūsrau Kūkūldāsh—at a household party (906) 131 (where insert his name after that of Shaikh Darwesh); captured by Tambal (908) 168; rejoins Bābur (913) 330–1; in the right centre at Qandahār 335; out with Bābur (925) 377, 403; an enquiry 405; ☞ posted in Sīālkot (930) 442; seeming still to hold it (932) 453; on service 465, 471; in the van at Pānīpat 472; in the right wing at Kānwa (933) 566, 568; given Alūr (Alwar) by mistake 578; sent against Balūchīs (935) 638; at social gatherings 385–7–8.

Amīr Khwāja **Khusrau** *Lāchīn Turk*—a couplet of his quoted 503; [†725 AH.–1325 AD.].

Khusrau Shāh[2] *Turkistānī, Qībchāq Turk*,—particulars 49–50; takes Maḥmūd *Mīrān-shāhī* (*æt.* 17) to Ḥiṣār (*cir.* 873) 46–7; referred to as a rival 50; his tolerance of Ḥiṣārī ill-conduct (899) 41–2; expelled from Samarkand on Maḥmūd's death (900) 51–2; opposes Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (901) 57, 60–1; his rise helped by Bāī-qarā failures 61; supports Mas'ūd *Mīrān-shāhī* 64; falls out with him 71, 93; blinds him (903) 95; defeats Badī'u'-zamān *Bāī-qarā* 60–1; re-equips him defeated by his father (902) 70; receives well the fugitive Bāī-sunghar *Mīrān-shāhī* (903) 74; makes him *pādshāh* in Ḥiṣār 93; strangles him (905) 110; a fugitive Tarkhān goes to him (906) 120, 141; his niggardliness to Bābur 129, 130; gives him no help against Shaibānī 138, ☞ 183; Qāsim Beg *quchīn* takes refuge with him (907) 27; his position less secure (910) 188; followers of his join Bābur 189, 192, 196, 227 n. 3; invited to co-operate with the Tīmūrid Mīrzās against Shaibānī 190; takes the Kābul road on Bābur's approach 192, 244; offers him service 192; the interview of his submission 193–4; allowed to go towards Khurāsān 194, 195; breaks his pact and is put to flight 197, 243; gets sensible counsel in Herāt 243; makes trouble for Nāsir *Mīrān-shāhī* in Badakhshān 244–5; beheaded at Qūndūz by the Aūzbegs 244; good results from his death for Bābur 245; Bābur's reflections on the indiscipline of his followers 199, 230 n. 5, 239, 244–5; his former following rebels (914) 335;

[1] His name might mean Welcome, *Bien-venu*.

[2] Khusrau-shāh may be the more correct form.

his brothers Walī and Bāqī, and nephew Aḥmad-i-qāsim *q.v.*; [†910 AH.–1505 AD.].

Khwāja Chishtī var. Ḥusainī—at a feast (935) 631.

'Abdu'l-lāh **Khwājagān-khwāja**, fifth son of 'Ubaidu'l-lāh *Aḥrarī*—his son 'Abdu'sh-shahīd 653 n. 4.

Khwājakā Khwāja, Muḥammad-i-'ubaidu'l-lāh, eldest son of Aḥrarī—protects Bāī-sunghar *Mīrān-shāhī* in the Tarkhān rebellion (901) 62 (where, erroneously, "Khwājaki"); becomes his spiritual guide 63; visited in Farkat by Bābur (907) 149; his brother Yaḥyā *q.v.*

Khwāja Kalān, descendant of 'Ubaidu'l-lāh *Aḥrarī*— ☞ a likely recipient of the *Mubīn* 438, 631 n. 3 (where for "son" read grandson of Yaḥyā); at a feast in Āgra (935) 631; gifts and leave given 632, 641–2; a copy of Bābur-nāma writings sent to him 653.

Mīr **Khwāja Kalān**, son of Maulānā Muḥammad Ṣadru'd-dīn —receives Bajaur (925) 370; particulars 370 n. 2; prisoners pardoned at his request 371; out with Bābur 372; returns to Bajaur 376; is recalled on grounds given (926) 422–3; joins Bābur for Hindūstān (932) 447; on service 465–6; in the right wing at Pānīpat 472; helps to secure Āgra 475; of his leaving Hindūstān 520, 531; his offending couplet about leaving, and Bābur's reply 525–6; has charge of Kābul and Ghaznī 524; conveys money to repair the Ghaznī dam 219, 524 n. 2, 647 n. 1; Bābur's various writings sent to him, quatrains (925) 372, (932) 525–6, (935) the *Wālidiyyah-risāla* and Hindūstān poems 642—letters (925) 411, (935) 604, 618 n. 2, quoted 645–8; commended to Humāyūn as a friend 627; a letter of his mentioned 644; wine parties in his house (925) 371–2, 375; has Ghaznī wine at Milwat (932) 461; urged to renounce wine 648; tells Bābur of a fruitful orange-tree (935) 510, cf. 483 n. 2; ☞ quotation from his ode on Bābur's death 709.

'Abdu'l-lāh **Khwāja Maulānā-i-qāzī**—particulars 29, 89–90; supports Bābur (899) 30; chases off an invader 32; confers with other well-wishers of the boy (900) 43; mediates for Ibrāhīm *Sārū* 53, for Aūrgūtīs (902) 68; envoy to Aūzūn Ḥasan (903) 87; open-handed to Bābur's followers 88; entreats him to save Andijān 88–9; Mīr Mughūl aids him in its defence 122; hanged by Tambal and Aūzūn Ḥasan 89; 'Alī-dost fears retaliation for his death (905) 119; his right guidance recalled by Bābur (912) 303; [†903 AH.–1498 AD.].

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

Khwājaki Mullā-i-ṣadr, son of Maulānā Muḥammad Ṣadru'd-dīn, and elder brother of Khwāja Kalān—particulars 67; killed near Yām 67; [†902 AH.–1497 AD.].

Khwāja Mīr-i-mīrān—speaks boldly at Akhsī (908) 174; in charge of baggage camels (925) 376, 377, and of Bābur's camp 389, 391; Bābur halts near his Lamghān village (926) 424; given charge of Daulat Khān *Yūsuf-khail* (932) 459–60; in the left-centre at Pānīpat 973; entrusted with gifts for Kābul 525.

Khwāja Mīr Sulṭān—he and his son receive gifts (935) 632.

Khwānd-amīr, grandson of Khāwand Shāh Amīr ("Mīrkhond") —☞ associated with Muḥammad-i-zamān *Bāī-qarā* (923) 364–5, 463 n. 3; fleeced by Shaibānī's order (913) 328 n. 2; his discomforts in Herāt 617 n. 2; waits on Bābur (935) 605; Bābur invites him in verse 693; completes the *Ḥabību's-siyar* while at Tīr-mūhānī with Bābur 687 n. 3; his omission (or loss) from Bābur's list of Herāt celebrities 283 n. 1; his and Bābur's varied choice of details 328 n. 2; ☞ his patron Amīr Ghiyāṣu'd-dīn and nephew Ghiyāṣu'd-dīn 436; [†942 AH.–1535 AD.].

Khwāja **Khwānd-sa'īd**—Bābur visits his tomb (925) 407.

Mīr **Khāwand**—Shāh Amīr ("Mīrkhond")—author of the *Rauzatu's-ṣafā*, grandfather of Khwānd-amīr—his omission (or loss) from Bābur's list of Herāt celebrities 283 n. 1; [†903 AH.–1498 AD.].

Kīchīk 'Alī—his courage (908) 176; made prisoner (933) 557, 576; *shiqdār* of Koel 176.

Kīchīk Bāqī *dīwāna*—suspended (911) 248; killed at Qalāt-i-ghilzāī 248; [†911 AH.–1505 AD.].

Kīchīk Begīm *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Ḥusain and Pāyanda-sulṭān—refused in marriage to Mas'ūd *Mīrān-shāhī* 265; "afterwards" marries Multā Khwāja 266.[1]

Kīchīk Khwāja—on 'Askarī's service (935) 681, 682.

Kīchīk Khwāja Beg, son of Maulānā Muḥammad Ṣadru'd-dīn and elder brother of Khwāja Kalān—in the left wing at Khūbān (905) 113; killed at Qalāt-i-ghilzāī 248[2]; [†911 AH.–1505 AD.].

[1] The "afterwards" points to an omission which Khwānd-amīr's account of Ḥusain's daughters fills (lith. ed. iii, 327).

[2] No record survives of the Khwāja's deeds of daring other than those entered above; perhaps the other instances Bābur refers to occurred during the gap 908–9 AH.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Kīchīk Mīrzā *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk,* son of Aḥmad (Mīrzā Sayyidī) and Ākā *Bāī-qarā*—particulars 257.

Kīchkīna *tunqtār*—sent with orders to Tramontane begs (925) 406.

Kīpa and **Kīpīk,** see Kūpūk.

Rāja **Kīrtī** *Gūāliārī,* see Karna.

Kītīn-qarā Sulṭān *Aūzbeg*—in Balkh (932) 545–6; at Jām (935) 622 (where in n. 1 read 935 for "934"); makes complaint to Bābur 649, 645 n. 1.

Kitta Beg *Kohbur Chaghatāī,* son of Sayyidī Qarā—convoys Yūsuf-khail chiefs to Bhīra (932) 461; on Bābur's service 465–6, 468, 528, (933) 545, (935) 638; wounded at Bīāna (933) 548.

Kitta Māh and **Kīchīk Māh,** slaves of Muẓaffar-i-husain *Bāī-qarā*—offend Bābur by their performance (912) 304.

Kūchūm Khān Sulṭān—Kūchkūnjī—*Aūzbeg- Shaibān, Chīngīz-khānid*—particulars 632 n. 3; ☞ his force gathered at Qarshī (917) 353; ☞ a principal actor between 926 and 932 AH. 427; his position in relation to 'Ubaidu'l-lāh (935) 618 n. 6; in the battle of Jām 622; various accounts of his escape or death 623, 636; his envoy to Bābur 631, 632; his sons Abū-sa'īd and Pulād *q.v.*; [†937 AH.–1530–1 AD.].

Kūkī-i[1] Bābā Qāshqa, see Hājī Muḥammad Khān *Kūkī.*

Kūkī,[1] paternal-uncle of the last-entered (A.N.)—on Bābur's service (934) 589, (935) 674, 679; in the battle of the Ghogrā 673; [†940 AH.–1553 AD.?].

Kūpuk Beg, var. Kīpik, Kīpa (hunchbacked)—in Bābur's service (910) 237; promoted (911) 253; frost-bitten (912) 311; in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335; envoy to Mīrzā Khān (925) 405.

Kūpuk Bī *Aūzbeg* var. *ut supra*—blamed for three murders (906) 128; given Khwārizm by Shaibānī (911) 256; his son Qambar-i-'alī *q.v.*

Kūpuk Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā,* Muḥammad Muḥsin, son of Ḥusain and Laṭīf-sulṭān—parentage 262; defeated by his father (904) 260; does not join his brothers against Shaibānī (912) 296–7; defeated and killed 329–30; [†913 AH.–1507 AD.].

[1] This may be a tribal or a family name. Abū'l-ghāzi mentions two individuals named "Kouk". One was Chīngīz Khān's grandson who is likely to have had descendants or followers distinguishable as *Kūkī.* See Add. Note P. 673 on Kūkī fate.

Sayyid **Lāchīn**—bearer of an urgent message from Bābur (932) 453.

Ḥaẓrat **Lām**, (Lāmak, Lāmakān), father of Noah—his reputed tomb, 210.

Langar Khān *Janjūha*—on Bābur's service (925) 380, 381, 388–9, 412; one of a raft-party 385; waits on Bābur 391, 411.

Langar Khān *Nīazāī Afghān*—one of a raft-party (925) 412; waits on Bābur (926) 421.

Laṭīf Begīm *Dūldāī Barlās Turk*—particulars 37 (where for "916" read 917 AH.).

Laṭīf-sulṭān Āghācha *Chār-shamba'ī*, a mistress of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* — particulars 269; her sons Abū'l-muḥsin and Kūpuk *q.v.*; [†before 911 AH.–1506 AD.].

Lope de Vega—a popular use of his name resembling one of Nawā'ī's 287 n. 3.

Luṭfī Beg—measures the Ganges-bank on Bābur's journey (933) 659.

Maghfūr, see Faghfūr.

Māh-afrūz—married by Kāmrān (934) 619 n. 1.

Mah-chūchūq *Arghūn*, daughter of Muqīm and Zarīf—marries Qāsim Kūkūldāsh (913) 342, 199 n. 1, ☞ 365; their daughter Nahīd *q.v.*; [†*cir.* 975 AH.–1568 AD.].

Mahdī Sulṭān *Aūzbeg*, the constant associate (brother?) of Ḥamza — defeated by Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (901) 58; enters Bābur's service 59; deserts 64; defeats 'Alī *Mīrān-shāhī* and goes back to Shaibānī 65; his Mughūls are disloyal to Bābur (904) 105; serving Shaibānī (906) 131; at Sar-i-pul 139; at Ḥiṣār (910) 244; ☞ retires before Bābur (916) 352; defeated and killed by him at Pul-i-sangīn (917) 18, 37, 262, 353, 354; his Mīrān-shāhī wife 36; his sons at Jām (935) 622; [†917 AH.–1511–12 AD.].

Mahdī-Sulṭān *Auzbeg-Shaibān*?—his identity discussed 264 n. 1; his son 'Ādil and grandson 'Āqil *q.v.*

Sayyid **Mahdī Khwāja**, son of Mūsa Khwāja and third husband of Bābur's sister Khān-zāda—Bābur's *dīwān-begī* (916–7) 704 n. 3; ☞ dissuades Muḥammad-i-zamān from accepting Bābur's invitation to Kābul (after 920) 364; on Bābur's service (932) 468, 471; in the left wing at Pānīpat 472, 473; commands troops sent to seize Dihlī 475; gifts made to him 527; given Etāwa 530; orders changed 531;

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

serves as an escort (933) 534, 537; given Bīāna 539; sends news of Sangā's approach 544; joins Bābur quickly 548; in the left wing at Kānwa 567; given leave for Kābul 579; host to Bābur near Etāwa (935) 644; waits on him returning to Āgra 686; displeases him 688 n. 2, 704 n. 2; summoned to Court 689; later particulars 644 n. 4, 688 n. 2, ☞ 692; ☞ discussion of a plan to make him Pādshāh 703–7; ☞ his name may be a gloss in the story 705; his son Ja'far *q.v.*; his inscribed slab at Amīr Khusrau's tomb 704 n. 1; his surmised Tīrmīzī descent 704; his relation or servant Mīr Muḥammad (925) 381.

Māhīm Begīm, wife of Bābur — particulars 344 n. 3, 711, ☞ 712, 714; ☞ with Bābur during the Transoxus campaign (916–920) 358; adopts Hind-āl (925) 374, 385, ☞ 715, App. L; ☞ visits Humāyūn in Badakhshān (928) 436; goes to Āgra (935) 640 n. 2, 650 n. 2, 665, 686–7, 689 n. 2, 690; ☞ her influence probably misused on Humāyūn 694, 707; meets him, sick, in Muttra (937) 701–2; ☞ her care of Bābur's Āgra tomb (937) 709; [†940 AH.–1533–4 AD.].

Sayyid **Maḥmūd** *Āūghlāqchī, Mughūl*—forced to go on foot (910) 239.

Maḥmūd Beg *Nūndākī, Barlās Turk*—particulars 51; defends Hiṣār against Abā-bikr *Mīrān-shāhī* (873) 51, and against Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (901) 58; negociates with Ḥusain 61.

Sulṭān **Maḥmūd** *Dūldāī Barlās Turk*—expelled from Andijān (900) 44; turns informer (905) 125.

Mulla **Maḥmūd** *Farābī,* associated with Khalīfa—reads the Qorān to Bābur (925) 401; rebukes a jest at Khalīfa's expense 416; reads the *Khuṭba* first for Bābur in Dihlī (932) 476; reinforces the right wing [*tūlghuma*] at Kānwa (933) 569; leads the Morning Prayer at Rāprī (935) 643 (where for "Muḥammad" read Maḥmūd).

Sulṭān **Maḥmūd Ghāzī** *Ghaznawī Turk*—his humble capital Ghaznī 217, 219; his and his descendants' tombs 218; Dost-i-nāṣir's tomb near his 396; his dam and Bābur's gift from Hindūstān for its repairs 219; Būt-khāk traditionally named from his idol-breaking 409 n. 3; mentioned as a conqueror of Hindūstān 479; contrast made between his position and Bābur's 479; [†421 AH.–1030 AD.].

Sulṭān **Maḥmūd Khān** *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid,* Khāqān of the Mughūls, elder son of Yūnas and Shāh Begīm—succeeds

his father (892) 13; his disaster on the Chīr (895) 31, 34, 39; invades Farghāna (899) 13, 31; thought of as a refuge for Bābur 29, (908) 178; retires from Farghāna 32; attempts Samarkand and is defeated (900) 52, 111, (905) 122; takes Aūrā-tīpā (900) 55–6; demands Andijān (903) 87; is visited by Bābur (900) 54, (903) 90, 92, (907 and 908) 153–159; sends help to Bābur (903) 90, 92, (904) 101, (906) 138, 139; his men abandon Bābur (903) 91, 92; he opposes Bābur (905) 115–6, 116; moves out against Tambal (907) 154, 156; numbers his army 154; acclaims his standards 155; ceremonies on his meeting his brother Aḥmad (908) 160; goes with him against Tambal 161, 168, 171; they number their armies 161; retires to Tāshkīnt 172; defeated at Archīān by Shaibānī (909) 7, 23, ☞ 182–3; his præ-accession sobriquet Khāmka Khān 23; his summer retreat in Farghānā 5; his Mīrān-shāhī marriage (cir. 892) 13, 35; retainers of his 25, 28; former followers, deported (908) by Shaibānī, return after his death (916) 351; Bābur's comment on him as a soldier 91, 157, and as a verse-maker 154; ☞ murdered with five young sons by Shaibānī 350; [†914 AH.–1509 AD.].

Māḥmūd Khān *Lūdī Afghān*, son of Sikandar—fights for Sangā at Kānwa (933) 562; reported to have taken Bihar (935) 639, 675; one of three competitors for rule 651 n. 5; gathers an army to oppose Bābur 651–2; it breaks up 654; is near the Son 658; flees before Bābur's men 662; referred to 664 n. 7, 679 n. 7; on his title Sulṭān 652 nn. 2, 6, 653–4 n. 1; [†945 AH.–1543 AD.].

Maḥmūd Khān *Nūḥānī Afghān* — holding a district from Bābur; taken by 'Ālam Khān (932) 455, 456; deserts 'Ālam Khān; waits on Bābur and given revenue from Ghāzīpūr 527; sent against Etāma 530; waits on Bābur (935) 659; searches for a passage through the Ghogrā 668; in the battle of the Ghogrā 669 (here *Ghazīpūrī*); receives a grant on Bihār 676; on service against Bīban and Bāyazīd 682.

Maḥmūd Khān *shikdār* of Sikandarpūr—collects boats for Bābur's passage of the Ghogrā (935) 668.

Maḥmūd Khān Sulṭān *Aūzbeg-Shaibān Chīngīz-khānid*—in the battle of Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) (906) 139; receives Qūndūz (910) 244; his protection sought 196 n. 5; dies 244; [†910 AH.–1504 AD.].

Sulṭān **Maḥmūd** *Khiljī* Turk, ruler in Mālwā—particulars 482 (where in n. 2 for "Gujrāt" read Mālwā); his territory (916)

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

593; his jewels (925 and 935) 612–3; thought of by Raḥīm dād as a refuge 688 n. 2 (where for "Muḥammad" read Maḥmūd); [†937 AH.–1531 AD.].

Maḥmūd *kūndūr-sangak, pīāda*—killed fighting 68; [†902 AH.–1497 AD.].

Sulṭān **Maḥmūd** *mīr-akhwur*, see Mīrzā Beg *fīrmgī-bāz* (58 and n. 4).

Sulṭān **Maḥmūd Mīrzā** *Ghāzī, Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Abū-sa'īd—particulars 45–51; defeated by Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (865 and 876), 46, 259–60, 268; succeeds his brother Aḥmad (899) 40–1, 86; alienates allegiance 41–2; sends Bābur wedding-gifts (900) 43; his death 27, 45, 50, 52; his family joins Bābur (910) 189; referred to 12 n. 2, 13 n. 5, 190, 194; his Ḥiṣār house 93; [†900 AH.–1495 AD.].

Sayyid **Maḥmūd Ṣaifī**, Maulānā *'Arūẓī* — author of the *'Arūẓ-i-saifī*—tutor of Bāī-sunghar *Mīrān-shāhī* 111.

Maḥmūd *Sarwānī*, son of Fatḥ Khan Khān-i-jahān—ordered to stay at Court (933) 537.

Maḥmūd Shāh *Ilyās*—his murder mentioned to illustrate a succession custom of Bengal 483.

Sulṭān **Maḥmūd** *Sharqī*, son of Jalālu'd-dīn—Bābur gives him the title of Sulṭān (935) 652.

Maḥmūd, son of Muḥammad-i-makhdūmī — beheaded in Badakhshān 242; [†910 AH.–1504–5 AD.?].

(?) **Mahndī** (415, 473), or Mindī or Hindī (235, 335)—kills an Afghān trader (910) 235; in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335; wine first given to him (925) 415; in the left wing [*tūlghuma*] at Pānīpat (932) 473.

Khwāja **Majdu'd-dīn Muḥammad** *Khawāfī* — particulars 281, 282.

Makan *Farmūlī* (?) *Afghān*—not submissive to Bābur (932) 529; sent out of the way before Kānwa (933) 547; his son Ḥasan *q.v.*

Makhdūm-i-'ālam, Naṣrat Shāh's Governor in Ḥājīpūr—his defences on the Gandak (935) 663.

Ḥaẓrat **Makhdūmī Nūrā**—mentioned 641 n. 1.

Makhdūm-sulṭān Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Maḥmūd and Zuhra—in Badakhshān (*cir.* 935) 48.

Makhdūm-sulṭān Begīm *Qarā-gūz*, wife of 'Umar Shaikh—particulars 18, 24.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

Malik-dād *Kararānī* (*Karānī*)[1]—reprieved (932) 477–8; on service (933) 540, 582, (935) 682; in the right wing at Kānwa (933) 557.

Malik-i-muḥammad Mīrzā *Mīran-shāhī*, nephew of Abū-sa'īd—aspires to rule (899) 41; murdered 41; his wife 47; his house 146; [†899 AH.–1494 AD.].

Maliks of Alangār—their garden a halting-place (926) 424.

Malik of Fān—stingy to Bābur (906) 130.

Malik-qulī *Kūnārī*—Bābur halts at his son's house (926) 423 (where read qulī for "'Alī").

Malik Sharq—returns from service (935) 683.

Mallū Khān of Mālwā—his tank at Chanderī 597 n. 8, 598.

Mamāq Sulṭān *Aūzbeg - Shaibān Chīngīz - khānid*, son of Ḥamza—takes service with Bābur (901) 58, 59; ☞ his death 353; [†917 AH.–1511–2 AD.].

Māmūm Khalīfa *'Abbāsī*, son of Hārūnu'r-rashīd—his Observatory and Tables, Author's Note 79; [†218 AH.–833 AD.].

Mānik - chand *Chauhān Rājpūt* — killed at Kānwa 573; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].

Rāja **Man-sing** *Gūālīārī, Tūnwar Rājpūt*—his buildings 607, 608; his son Bikramājīt *q.v.*; [†924 AH.–1518 AD.].

Shāh **Manṣūr** *bakhshī*—helps Shaibānī to take Herāt (913) 325; given Khadīja Begīm to loot 326.

Shah **Manṣūr** *Barlās*—on service (932) 465–6, 475, 530, (933) 545; in the right centre at Pānīpat (932) 472, 473, and at Kānwa (933) 565, 569; his untimely praise of the Rājpūt army 548, 550.

Sulṭān **Manṣūr Khān** *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*, eldest son of Aḥmad, Alacha Khān—☞ defeats his half-brother Sa'īd (914) 349; ☞ mentioned as Khāqān of the Mughūls, Sa'īd as Khān in Kāshghar 427; [†950 AH.–1543 AD.].

Manṣūr Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā, 'Umar-shaikhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk* —mentioned in his son Ḥusain's genealogy 256; his not-reigning 256; his wife Fīrūza and their children 256, 257; his beg Walī *q.v.*

Manṣūr *Turkmān*—in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335.

Malik Shāh **Manṣūr** *Yūsuf-zāī Afghān*, son of Sulaimān—envoy of his tribe to Bābur (924) 371; his daughter's

[1] Cf. E. and D. for "Karānī" (*e.g.* vol. iv, 530). The Ḥai. MS. sometimes doubles the *r*, sometimes not.

marriage with Bābur (925) 375, App. K; waits on him 399, 400; his brother Ṭaus Khān and cousin Aḥmad *q.v.*; a follower 377.

Maqṣūd *sūchī, shārbatchī, karg*—in the left centre at Qandahār (913) 335, 338; his tossing by a rhinoceros (*karg*) 400.

Marghūb *qul*—in Mahāwīn (932) 523.

Miān **Ma'rūf** *Farmūlī Afghān*[1]—disaffected to Ibrāhīm and (later) to Bābur (932) 523; his opposition 530; flees 533–4; his son Muḥammad (?) leaves him (934) 598; his sons Muḥammad and Mūsa *q.v.*

Ma'rūf *Yaq'ūb-khaīl Dilah-zāk* (*Dīlazāk*) *Afghān*—waits on Bābur at 'Alī-masjid (925) 394.

Shaikh **Maṣlaḥat** *Khujandī*—his birthplace 8; dreamed of by Bābur (906) 132; his tomb visited by Tīmūr (790) 132 n. 2.

Mastī *chuhra*—deals with a drunken man (925) 415; intoxicated by beer (926) 423.

Sulṭān **Mas'ūd** *Ghaznawī*—his tomb 218.

Sulṭān **Mas'ūd Mīrzā** *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Maḥmūd and Khān-zāda I—particulars 47, 48; holding Hiṣār (900) 52; opposes Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* and flees (901) 57–8, 130; one of three besieging Samarkand; retires with his desired Barlās bride 64; quarrels with Khusrau Shāh (902) 71, and with the Hiṣār begs (903) 93; takes refuge with Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* 93, 95, 261, 265; returns to Khusrau and is blinded by him 95, 50; goes back to Ḥusain 95, 266; mentioned as older than Bāī-sunghar 110; meets Bābur in Herāt (912) 302; murdered by Aūzbegs (913) 267; his wives Ṣāliḥa-sulṭān *Mīrān-shāhī*, and Sa'ādat-bakht *Bāī-qarā q.v.*; his betrothed (?) Kīchīk Begīm *Bāī-qarā q.v.*; [†913 AH.–1507 AD.].

Sulṭān **Mas'ūd Mīrzā** *Kābulī, Shāh-rukhī, ut supra*—particulars 382; his cherished followers, sons of Mīr 'Alī Beg *q.v.*; his son 'Alī *asghar q.v.*; [deposed 843 AH.–1439–40 AD.].

Mullā **Mas'ūd** *Sherwānī*, of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā's* Court—no particulars 284.

Ma'sūma-sulṭān Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Aḥmad and Ḥabība-sulṭān, and wife of Bābur—particulars 36, ☞ 711; her marriage arranged (912) 306, ☞ 714; brought from Herāt (913) 330; married 339; dies in child-bed and her name at once given to her child 36; [†*circ.* 915 AH.–1509 AD.].

[1] See *Wāqi'āt-i-mushtāqī*, E. and D. iv, 548.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Ma'sūma-sulṭān Begīm, *ut supra*, daughter of Bābur and Ma'suma-sulṭān (*supra*)—her birth 36; with her father in the Transoxus campaign (916–920) 358; her marriage (or betrothal) to Muḥammad-i-zamān *Bāī-qarā* (923 or 924) 365; gifts made to her servants (935) 633; ☞ in the family-list 705, 706.

Maulānā Sayyidī, or *Mashhadī*—his chronogram on Humāyūn's birth (913) 344.

Shaikh **Mazīd Beg,** Bābur's first guardian—particulars 26, 27, [† before 899 AH.–1494 AD.].

Mīr **Mazīd Ṭaghāī** *Kūnjī Mughūl*, brother or uncle of Aīsān-daulat—takes part in a sally from Samarkand (906) 142; wounded at Akhsī (908) 168; rebels (921) 363, 397; his relations, 'Alī-dost, Sherīm, Ḳul-naẓr *q.v.*; [†*cir.* 923 AH.–1517 AD.].

Mazīd Beg Tarkhān *Arghūn*, son of Amīr Tarkhān Junaid (H.S. lith. ed. iii, 359)—his retainer Khusrau Shāh 49; his action in 873 AH. 51; his brother 'Āshiq-i-muḥammad *q.v.*

Shaikh **Mazīd Kūkūldāsh**—envoy of Muḥammad-i-zamān to Bābur (925) 402.

Medinī Rāo var. Mindī *etc.*—particulars 593 n. 5; his force at Kānwa (933) 562; holding Chanderī (934) 483, 593; Bābur negociates with him 594; his house the scene of a supreme rite 595.

Mihr-angez Begīm *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*—married as a captive (913) 329 n. 1.

Mihr-bān Khānīm (see *infra*)—gifts to and from Bābur (935) 631, 632, 641; her husband Kūchūm *Aūzbeg* and their son Pūlād *q.v.*; a verse seeming to be addressed to her (925) 402.

Mihr-bānū Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī*, half-sister of Bābur (perhaps the Khānīm last entered)—particulars 18.

Mihr-nigār Khānīm *Chaghatāī Chingīz-khānid*, daughter of Yūnas—particulars 21, 149; joins Bābur in Kābul (911) 246; visited by him after her disloyalty (912) 315; goes to Badakhshān (913) 341; dies a prisoner 21.

Millī Sūrdūk—reprieved from death (932) 477, 478.

Mīnglī Bī Āghācha, a mistress of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā*—particulars 269; her sons and daughters 262–3, 266.

Mīnglīk Kūkūldāsh—leaves Samarkand (907) 147.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Minūchihr Mīrzā *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, brother of Abū-sa'īd—an attributed descendant 24; his son Malik-i-muḥammad *q.v.*

Minūchihr Khān *Turk*—delayed in waiting on Bābur by a forcible marriage (925) 386, 388; on Bābur's service in Bhīra 389; leading Daryā-khānīs (934) 589; his relation Naẓar-i-'alī *Turk q.v.*

Mīrak—entrusted with building work (935) 642.

Mīrak Kūr Dīwān (or Gūr)—in Ālā-qūrghān when Shaibānī took Herāt (913) 328.

Mīrān-shāh Mīrzā *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Aūlūgh Beg *Kābulī*—rebels against his father and goes to Khusrau Shāh 95; sent to Bāmīān 96.

Mīrān-shāh Sulṭān Mīrzā *Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, 3rd son of Tīmūr—mentioned in a genealogy 14; his daughter's son Aḥmad *Bāī-qarā q.v.*; [†810 AH.–1407–8 AD.].

Mīr Buzurg *Tīrmīzī*—his daughter and granddaughter, wives of Maḥmūd *Mīrān-shāhī* 47–8, 49.

Mīrīm—Mīr Muḥammad?[1]—adopted son of Aūzūn Ḥasan—killed fighting against Bābur 170; [†908 AH.–1502 AD.].

Mīrīm Dīwān—*ut supra*—captured serving Bābur (904) 106; released (905) 119; discovers a rebel (912) 319.

Mīrīm *Laghārī—ut supra*—leaves Bābur for home (903) 91; captured serving Bābur (904) 106; killed 167; [†904 AH.–1499 AD.].

Mīrīm-i-nāṣir Beg—*ut supra*—enters Bābur's service (904) 103; one of a household-party (906) 131; in the left centre at Qandahār (913) 335, 338; at social gatherings (925) 385, 388; on service 389, 391; receives his dead brother's district 397.

Mīrīm Tarkhān—*ut supra*—drowned while serving Bāī-sunghar *Mīrān-shāhī* 74; [†903 AH.–1497 AD.].

Mīr Khurd *bakāwal*—one of a boat-party (925) 388; ordered to catch pheasants 404; made Hind-āl's guardian 408; on service (935) 640.

Mīr Mughūl, son of 'Abdu'l-wahhāb *shaghāwal*—helps to defend Andijān (903) 122; his son killed (904) 102 (here Mughūl Beg); sent by Tarkhāns to invite Bābur to Samarkand (905) 122, 123; on service (925) 389 (here Beg

[1] Shaikhīm *Suhailī* however was named Aḥmad (277) not Muḥammad.

Muhammad *Mughūl*); measures Bābur's marches (935) 658 (here Mughūl Beg); in the battle of the Ghogrā 673–4 (here Mughūl-i 'Abdu'l-wahhāb).

Mīr Sang-tarāsh—entrusted with building-work (935) 642.

Mīrzā Beg *firingī-bāz*—in Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā's* service (901) 58.

Mīrzā Beg Kaī-khusrawī—in Ālā-qūrghān when Shaibānī took Herī (913) 328.

Mīrzā Beg Ṭaghāī, see Sl. 'Alī M. Ṭaghāī *Begchīk*.

Mīrzā Beg Tarkhān—in the left centre at Pānīpat (932) 472.

Wais **Mīrzā Khān** *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*—Khān Mīrzā—son of Maḥmūd and Sulṭān-nigār *Chaghatāī*—particulars 47; sent by The Khān (Maḥmūd *Chaghatāī*) against Samarkand (905) 122; in Tāshkīnt (908) 159; at Khusrau Shāh's audience of submission (910) 193; demands vengeance on him 194; on service 234; disloyal (912) 313–20; captured and banished 320; rejoins Bābur from Herāt (913) 331; in the right wing at Qandahār 334; his loot 338; goes to Badakhshān on Shāh Begīm's insistance 340–1, 342; his claim to rule in it 698 nn. 1–3; serves as a refuge for Sa'īd *Chaghatāī* (915) 349 and Ḥaidar *Dūghlāt* 350; sends Bābur news of Shaibānī's defeat at Merv (916) 350; invites his help in recovering their ancestral lands *ib.*; messenger of Bābur to Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī* 352; helps him to defend Ḥiṣār (918) 359; receives him plundered 362; sends him an envoy (925) 402; loses lands to Sa'īd *Chaghatāī* 695; ☞ mentioned 427; his death announced to Bābur (927) 433, 621 n. 5; his titles 21 n. 5; his guardians 26, 122; [†927 AH.–1521 AD.].

Mīr-zādas of Khwāst—wait on Bābur (925) 399.

Mīrzā-i-malū *Qārlūq*?—his son Shāh Ḥusain or Ḥasan *q.v.*

Mīrzā Mughūl, son of Daulat-qadam-i-turk—conveys letters (932) 526–7.

Mohan *Mundāhir Rājpūt*—☞ a punitive expedition against him (936) 700–1; [†936 AH.–1529 AD.?].

The **Mother** of the Head-man of Dikh-kat—particulars 150.

Ibrāhīm *Lūdī's* **Mother**—receives an allowance from Bābur (932) 478; attempts to poison him (933) 541; started under guard for Kābul 543; her grandson sent to Kāmrān 544; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].

Mīrzā-qulī Kūkūldāsh (Mīrzā's servant?)—with Jahāngīr (*æt.* 9) in Akhsī (899) 32; one of three with Bābur (908) 166,

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

396 ; fights for him in Akhsī 174–5 ; one of eight in flight 177 ; his horse fails 178 ; at social gatherings (925) 385, 387, 388 ; out with Bābur 403 ; behaves in his own fashion 407.

Müātükān *Chaghatāī Chingīz-khānid* — mentioned in Yūnās Khān's genealogy 19.

Bibī **Mubāraka** *Yūsuf-zāī Afghān*, a wife of Bābur—referred to 367 n. 3 ; her courtship App. K ; asked and given in marriage 375, 376 ; a couplet suiting her 411 ; accompanies Mahīm to Āgra (935) 689 n. 5 ; ☞ her probable charge of conveying Bābur's body to Kābul 709–10 ; her brother Jamāl App. K, xli ; [† early under Akbar 963 AH.–1556 AD.].

Mubārak Khān *Jilwānī*—killed serving Bīban (935) 685.

Mubārak Shāh *Muẓaffarī* — rises in Badakhshān against Shaibānī (*cir.* 910) 242 ; invites Nāṣir *Mīrān-shāhī* 242, 243 ; defeats Aūzbegs (912) 294–5 ; defeats Nāṣir 321 ; in force (913) Author's Note 340 ; invites Mīrzā Khān to Qila'i-ẓafar 21 ; [†*cir.* 913 AH.–1508 AD.].

Mughūl Beg, amīr of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā*—particulars 275.

A **Mughūl servant**—aims an arrow at Bābur (912) 316.

Mūḥammad, the Prophet—reference to 75 ; a saying on travel 184 ; his edicts do not include the imposition of the *tamghā* 555 ; on the duty of a wazīr 556 ; mentioned in the *farmān* and the *fath-nāma* (933) 553, 559–574.

Khwāja **Muḥammad,** an old tailor of 'Umar Shaikh's—allays anxiety for Bābur (899) 30.

Mīr **Muḥammad-i-Mahdī Khwāja**—on service (925) 381.

Pahlawān Ḥajī **Muḥammad**—gifts made to him (935) 633.

Ustad Sulṭān **Muḥammad,** a Kābul builder—orders for his work (935) 646–7.

Muḥammad 'Alī, son of Ḥaidar *kikābdār*—brings a gift (925) 418 ; summons Humāyūn (933) 537–8 ; sent out for news (935) 661, 662.

Muḥammad 'Alī *bakhshī*—on Abū-sa'īd's service and defeated by Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (868) 259.

Muḥammad 'Alī *Jang-jang*—in the centre at Bajaur (925) 370 ; at boat-parties 387, 388 ; his servant's service 391, 392 ; his districts 392–3, 530 ; reinforced 412 ; waits on Bābur 403, 419, (932) 458 ; at Milwat (932) 460, 461 ; at Ḥiṣār-fīrūza 465–6 ; wounded 471 ; in the van at Pānīpat 472 ; on service

530, (933) 549, 550, 576, 582 ; in the left wing at Kānwa 557 ; acts unsuccessfully against Bīban and Bāyazīd (934) 589, 594, 598 ; pursues from near Qānūj 601 ; sent against Balūchīs (935) 638 ; his brother Arghūn and sons Tardī-muḥammad and Nan-roz *q.v.*

Khwāja **Muḥammad 'Alī** *kitābdār* — messenger to Khwāja Yaḥyā (905) 124 ; confuses a pass word (908) 164 (here *sāirt-kīshī* = sārt) ; captured by Tambal 168 ; fights against rebels (912) 315 ; in the left centre at Qandahār (913) 335 ; in charge of treasure 338 ; at entertainments (925) 410, 411, 413 ; ☞ at Kalanūr (930) 442 (here Tājik = Sārt).

Muḥammad 'Alī *Mubashir-beg*—stays with Bābur at a crisis (903) 91 ; at Khūbān (905) 113 ; in the flight from Akhsī (908) 163 ; captured by Tambal 168 ; killed on service 252 ; his servant Sulaimān 175 ; [†911 AH.–1506 AD.].

Muḥammad 'Alī *pūāda*—deserts Nāṣir *Mīrān-shāhī* (913) 343.

Khwāja **Muḥammad 'Alī Ṭaghāī** — 'Asas — brother of Mahīm Begīm ?—in the van at Qandahār (913) 335 ; meets Bābur at a crisis (914) 346 ; waits on Bābur (925) 399, 403 ; answers a military summons 408 ; the first to follow Bābur in renouncing wine (933) 552 ; at various entertainments (925) 387, 388, 400, 412, (926) 423, (935) 683 ; on his identity 522 n. 4 ; ☞ in charge of Bābur's Āgra tomb (937) 709.

Khwāja **Muḥammad-amīn**—out with Bābur (910) 230 ; deserts from Qandahār (913) 343 ; at a garden-wine-party (925) 418 ; his servant Imām-i-muḥammad *ib.*

Muḥammad-āmīn Khān *Qāzānī, Jūgī Chīngīz-khānid*—Shaibānī sends him a Herāt musician 292 ; [†925 AH.–1519 AD.].

Ustād **Muḥammad-amīn** *jībachī*—attention for him desired from Khwāja Kalān (935) 647.

Muḥammad *Andijānī*—sent to Kābul (912) 313–4.

Muḥammad *Arghūn*—with Mughūls against Bābur (904) 106.

Sayyid **Muḥammad-i-aūrūs** *Arghūn*, son of Aūrūs — particulars 279.

Shāh Sulṭān **Muḥammad** *Badakhshī* — his claim to Greek descent and his six daughters 22. (Cf. T.R. trs. p. 107.)

Mīr **Muḥammad** *Badakhshī* of Ishkīmīsh—particulars 288–9 ; waits on Bābur (917) 289.

Muḥammad *bakhshī*—on service at Qandahār (913) 338.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Muḥammad Bāqir Beg *Andijānī*—with Jahāngīr (899) 32; disloyal to Bābur (900) 44; with Bāī-sunghar (902) 65; leaves Bābur for home (903) 91; in Akhsī and seen in the flight (908) 189, 181; ☞ 182; his son Dost *q.v.*

Mūḥammad Barandūq Beg *Barlās Turk*—particulars 270; on Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā's* service (901) 58; retorts on Khusrau Shāh (910) 243; retainer of Muẓaffar-i-ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (911) 274, 293; acts against Shaibānī (912) 296, 297; at a feast 298; concerning Bābur's reception at the Herī Court 299; presses him to winter in Herī 307; his plan of defence rejected (913) 326.

Muhammad Beg *Begchīk*, brother of Ayūb—in the right wing at Qandahār (913) 334.

Pahlawān **Muḥammad Bū-sa'īd**—particulars 292.

Shāh **Muḥammad** *dīvāna*, receives a fugitive Bāī-qarā 263; his son brings Bābur news of Bīban and Bāyazīd (935) 681.

Muḥammad-dost Ṭaghāī *Kūnjī Mughūl*, son of 'Alī-dost—with Bābur (900) 53; remains at a crisis (903) 91; captured by Tambal (904) 106; released (905) 119; his self-aggrandizment 119; deserts to Tambal 125; negociates for him with Bābur (908) 173; blinded by the Aūzbegs 125.

Sayyid **Muḥammad** *Dūghlāt Ḥiṣārī*—enters Bābur's service (901) 58, 59; his Mughūls desert Bābur (904) 105; conspires against Tambal and goes to The Khān (Maḥmūd) (907) 154; sent with Bābur against Tambal (908) 161.

Sulṭān **Muḥammad** *Dūldāī, Barlās Turk*—Bābur's messenger to Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (912) 294; returns with news of Ḥusain's death 295; in the right centre at Qandahār (913) 335; waits on Bābur from Bajaur (925) 401; overtakes him at Jūī-shāhī 410; at a wine-party *ib.*; at Ḥiṣār-fīrūza (932) 465–6; in the right-wing at Pānīpat 472; given Qanūj 530; abandons it (933) 557; unwilling to return there 582; sent against Balūchīs (935) 638; ordered to Āgra 676.

Shāh **Muḥammad** *Farmūlī Afghān*, son of Ma'rūf—particulars 675; Bābur gives him Sārūn (934) 603, 675; waits on Bābur (935) 675, 679.

Sulṭān **Muḥammad** *Galpuk, Itārachī Mughūl* — opposing Bābur (908) 165.

Shaikh **Muḥammad** *Ghauṣ*—particulars 539; helps Bābur to gain Gūālīār (933) 539–40; intercedes for Raḥīm-dād (936) 688, 690.

Muḥammad Ḥaidar Mīrzā *Dūghlāt*, see Ḥaidar.

Muḥammad Ḥusain Mīrzā Kūrkān *Dūghlāt*, receives Aūrā-tīpā (900) 56; effects Qāsim *qūchīn's* dismissal (903) 90; sent by The Khān (Maḥmūd) to help Bābur 92; lends him Pashāghar (904) 97, and Dikh-kat (907) 148; sent against Samarkand (905) 122; keeps back Aūrā-tīpā from Bābur (907) 149; goes to him in Kābul (911) 246; incites a Mughūl revolt against him (912) 313–17; captured and banished 319; ungrateful for leniency *ib.*; Shaibānī avenges Bābur *ib.*; his son Ḥaidar's excuses for him 317 n. 3; his wife Khūb-nigār, son Ḥaidar, daughter Ḥabība *q.v.*; [†914 AH.–1508 AD.].

Muḥammad Ḥusain, brother of Abū'l-ḥasan *qūr-begī*—joins Mīrzā Khān (912) 315; on Bābur's service (925) 413 (here *qūrchī*).

Muḥammad-i-ḥusain Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Ḥusain and Mīnglī—particulars 262, 268; hostile to his father (903) 94; his flight into 'Irāq 262.

Mīr **Muḥammad** *jāla-bān*—examines a ford through the Sind-water (Indus) (925) 378; selects a site for a pontoon-bridge across the Ganges (934) 599; examines fords above Aūd (Oudh) 602; advises about crossing the Sarū (Goghrā) 674; rewarded for his pontoon-bridge (935) 635; his raft-mishaps (925) 407, 423.

Muḥammad Jān, Najm Ṣānī's Lord-of-the-Gate—☞ envoy to Bābur and discontented with his reception (917) 355.

Muḥammad Khalīl *akhta-begī*—sent raiding (933) 538; at Kānwa (933) 569.

Muḥammad Khān *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*—mentioned in Yūnas Khān's genealogy 19.

Muḥammadī Kūkūldāsh, kinsman of Bābā Qashqa (?—*q.v.*)—seen with Bābur by Khān-zāda (before 907 and in 916) 18; on service at Milwat (932) 458, 460; in the right centre at Pānīpat 472, 473, 475; sent against Dūlpūr 530; receives Samāna 528; in the right wing at Kānwa (933) 566, 569, 576; sends news of a second [1] Balūchī incursion (935) 605 n. 3, 638; reports action 675; ordered to Āgra 676; at various entertainments (925) 385, 388, 412.

Muḥammad-i-makhdūmī—his son Maḥmūd *q.v.*

[1] The record of the first appears likely to be lost in the *lacuna* of 934 AH.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Muḥammad Ma'ṣum Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Ḥusain and Mīnglī—particulars 264, 269; his wife Bega *Mīrān-shāhī q.v.*; [†907 AH.–1501–2 AD. See ḤS. iii, 290].

Mullā **Muḥammad** *Mazhab*—profers support to Bābur (932) 463; Bābur's envoy to Bengal (935) 637.

Muḥammad Mazīd Tarkhān *Arghūn Chingīz-khānid*, son of Aūrdū-būghā—particulars 39; has charge of Nāṣir *Mīrān-shāhī* (899) 32; leaves Samarkand after the Tarkhān rebellion (901) 62; displeases 'Alī *Mīrān-shāhī* (905) 121; plotted against *ib.*; invites Mīrzā Khān and Bābur 122, 123; welcomes Bābur 40, 124; joins Khusrau Shāh (906) 129; fights for Bābur at Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) 139; takes refuge with Khusrau Shāh 141; at Kūl-i-malik (918) ☞ 357; killed there 39; his house a post of Bābur's 143; [†918 AH.–1512 AD.].

Sulṭān **Muḥammad Mīrzā** *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*—parentage 257.

Sayyid **Muḥammad Mīrzā** *Dūghlāt*, uncle of Ḥaidar—sent to help Bābur (906) 139; envoy of Sa'īd *Chaghatāī* to him (917) 22; escorts his niece to Kāshghar *ib.*

Sulṭān **Muḥammad Mīrzā** *Mīrān-shāhī*, grandson of Tīmūr—his son Abū-sa'īd *q.v.*

Sultan **Muḥammad Mīrzā** *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid*—his father Abū-sa'īd *q.v.*

Muḥammad *mīskīn, Dūldāī Barlās*, son of Ḥafiẓ—captured by Bābur's men (903) 72.

Muḥammad Muḥsin *Bāī-qarā*, see Kūpūk.

Muḥammad Muqīm Beg *Arghūn*, son of Ẓū'n-nūn—takes possession of Kābul (908) 195 n. 3; loses it to Bābur (910) 198, 199, 227, 246 n. 3; loses Qalāt-i-ghilzāī to him (911) 248–9; seeks his co-operation against Shaibānī (913) 330; withdraws and fails in etiquette 331–2; opposed to Bābur at Qandahār 333–7; flees in defeat 339.

Khwāja **Muḥammad Muqīm** *Herāwī*, father of Niẓāmu'd-dīn Aḥmad the historian—☞ mentioned 691 n. 1, ☞ 692; ☞ his story of a plan to supersede Humāyūn as Pādshāh in 937 AH. 703; discussion of it 704–7; its incredibility as told 704–5.

Muḥammad Mūmin *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Badī'u'z-zamān—Astarābād claimed for him (902) 69; de-

feated by an uncle 71 (where *delete* the *'aīn* from his name); his murder attributed to Khadīja Begim 268.

Shaikh **Muḥammad** *Muṣalmān*, ancestor of the Farmūlī Shaikh-zādas—his tomb and descendants 220.

Sulṭān **Muḥammad Muẓaffar** *Gujrātī, Tānk Rājpūt*—particulars 481–2; his death 481; his sons Sikandar Shāh and Bahādur Khān *q.v.*; [†932 AH.–1526 AD.].

Muḥammad *Nūḥānī*, see Bihār Khān.

Mullā **Muḥammad** *Pargharī*—loquacious (932) 453.

Muḥammad-i-qāsim *Barlās*—comes accidentally on Bābur (925) 417.

Muḥammad-i-qāsim Mīrzā *Arlāt*, son of Abū'l-qāsim (H.S. iii, 327)—his Bāī-qarā wife and their child 265; his sons (?) Bābur and Murād *q.v.*

Muḥammad-i-qāsim Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid*, son of Ḥusain and Pāpā—parentage 265.

Muḥammad-i-qāsim *Nabīra*, grandson of Muḥammad *Sīghal*—made prisoner when opposing Bābur (903) 72.

Muḥammad-i-qāsim *Qībchāq Turk*, son of Bāqī *Chaghānīānī*—leaves his family in Ajar (910) 191; father (?) of Aḥmad-i-qāsim *q.v.*

Muḥammad-qulī *qūchīn* — Mīr Shāh *qūchīn* — helps Bāīsunghar's escape from Samarkand (901) 62; with Bābur at Samarkand and wounded (902) 68; stays with him at a crisis (903) 91; captured (904) and released by Tambal (905) 119; in the van at Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) (906) 139; besieged in Samarkand 142–144; with Bābur when surprised by Tambal (908) 163; in the left wing at Qandahār (913) 334; in a raid (925) 403.

Muḥammad *qūrchī*, retainer of Khusrau Shāh—rises against the Aūzbeg occupation of Badakhshān (910) 242; expels Nāṣir *Mīrān-shāhī* (912) 321; keeping up his head (913) 340.

Ustad **Muḥammad** *sabz-banā*—his son Banā'ī *q.v.*

Maulānā **Muḥammad Ṣadru'd-dīn** *Andijānī*—his six sons' service to Bābur 370 n. 2; his sons Khwājaka Mullā-i-ṣadr, Kīchīk Khwāja, Khwāja Kalān *q.v.*

Muḥammad Ṣālih Mīrzā *Khwārizmī*, author of the *Shaibānī-nāma*—in Khwāja Yaḥyā's service [1] and waits on Bābur (901)

[1] See *Shaibānī-nāma*, Vambéry's ed. Cap. xv, l. 12, for his changes of service, and Sām Mīrzā's *Tuḥfa-i-sāmī* for various particulars including his classification as a Chaghatāī.

64 ; leaves Samarkand with the Tarkhāns (905) 121 ; enters Shaibānī's service 65 n. 3 ; on Shaibānī's service (910) 196 n. 5 ; couplets of his quoted by Bābur 120–1, 448 ; [†941AH.–1534–5 AD.].

Ustād Shāh **Muḥammad** *sang-tarāsh*—cuts an inscription (913) 343 ; receives orders for work (933) 585, 606, (935) 642.

Muḥammad Shāh *Khiljī Turk*, son of Nāṣiru'd-dīn of Mālwā —takes Chanderī and seeks Ibrāhīm *Lūdī's* protection (916) 593 ; his young son Aḥmad *q.v.* ; [†931 AH.–1524 AD. ?].

Muḥammad Shāh Pādshāh *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*—his change of name for an orange 511 n. 4 ; [†1161AH.–1748 AD.].

Mūḥammad *Shaibānī*, see Shaibānī.

Shaikh **Muḥammad-i Shaikh Bhakarī** (?) — on service (933) 382.

Shāh **Muḥammad Shaikh-zāda** *Farmūlī Afghān*, son of Ma'rūf—leaves his Afghān associates (934) 598 (no name here) ; favoured by Bābur 603, 675 ; compelled to act with Bīban and Bāyazīd (935) 675 ; writes dutifully to Bābur *ib.* ; waits on 'Askarī and Bābur *ib.* and 679.

Muḥammad Sharīf *munajjim* (astrologer)—comes to Kābul (925) 399 and to Āgra (933) 551 ; augurs defeat at Kānwa 551, 576 ; offers congratulations on victory, blamed and banished with a gift 576.

Sulṭān **Muḥammad** *Sīghal, Chaghatāī* — his descendants Muḥammad-i-qāsim and Ḥasan *q.v.* (Cf. 66 n. 4 and Ḥ.S. lith. ed. iii, 275 for tribe and title resp.).

Muḥammad Sūlṭān *bakhshī*—left behind to catch pheasants (925) 404 ; in a night-attack on Ibrāhīm's camp (932) 471 ; in the left wing at Pānīpat 472 ; has custody of the cook who poisoned Bābur (933) 542 ; staff-officers at Kānwa 568 ; host to Bābur (935) 629 ; introduces a Kābul messenger 644 ; brings news of Maḥmūd *Lūdī* 653–4 ; writes that Bābur's family is on its way from Kābul 657 ; waits on Bābur 606 ; his servant Shāh Qāsim *q.v.*

Sulṭān **Muḥammad Sulṭān** *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*—Sulṭānīm and Khānika—eldest son of The Khān (Maḥmūd) —sent to help Bābur (903) 92 ; his guardian and he oppose Bābur (905) 116 ; his part in acclaiming the standards (907) 155 ; goes out to meet his uncle Aḥmad (Alacha Khān) (908) 159 ; ☞ murdered 350 ; [†914 AH.–1508 AD.].

Muḥammad Sulṭān-i-jahāngīr Mīrzā *Jahāngīrī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*—Samarkand given to him by his grandfather Tīmūr 85; his college 78.

Muḥammad Sulṭān Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Wais and Sulṭānīm—particulars 265; waits on Bābur at Kalānūr (932) 458; on Bābur's service 468, 471, 475, 530, 534, (933) 545, 548, 582, (934) 589, (935) 682; in the left wing at Pānīpat (932) 472 and at Kānwa (933) 567, 570; gifts to him 527; given Qānūj 582; joins Bābur (935) 651; in the battle of the Ghogrā 671, 672, 674; ☞ mentioned 706 (where wrongly classed with half-Tīmūrids); once owner of the Elphinstone Codex 706 n. 3.

Beg **Muḥammad** *ta'alluqchī* — conveys gifts to Humāyūn (Muḥ. 934) and returns (Rabī' I, 935) 621; Bābur complains of his detention.

Muḥammad Ṭāhir—captured (903) 74.

Muḥammad **Tīmūr Sulṭān** *Aūzbeg-Shaibān, Chīngīz-khānid*, son of Shaibānī—at Samarkand (906) 128; at Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) 139; defeats and kills two Bāī-qarā Mīrzās (913) 263, 329–30; leaves Samarkand on Bābur's approach (917) 354; at Ghaj-davān (918) 360; his marriages with captives 24, 36, 328 n. 1.

Mullā **Muḥammad** *ṭālib-mu'ammāī*—an enigmatist of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā's* Court—particulars 201 n. 7 [1]; a couplet of his quoted 201–2; [†918 AH.–1512 AD.].

Pahlawān Ḥājī **Muḥammad** *tufang-andāzī* — receives gifts (935) 633.

Mullā **Muḥammad** *Turkistānī*, retainer of Khusrau Shāh—makes Qūndūz safe for Shaibānī Khān (910) 192.

Muḥammad-i-'ubaidu'l-lāh, son of Aḥrārī, see Khwāja Khwāja.

Sulṭān **Muḥammad Wais**—waits on Bābur (902) 66; runs away and is suspected (907) 156; serving Bābur at Akhsī (908) 174; his retainer Kīchīk 'Alī *q.v.*

Muḥammad Walī Beg—particulars 277; on Ḥusain Bāī-qarā's service (901) 57, (902) 70, (903) 94.

Muḥammad-i-yūsuf *Aūghlāqchī*, elder son of Yūsuf—waits on Bābur (905) 125.

[1] He died serving Bābur, at Kūl-i-malīk (H.S. iii, 344).—Further information negatives my suggestion (201 n. 7) that he and Mīr Ḥusain (p. 288 and n. 7) were one.

Mīr **Muḥammad-i-yūsuf**—particulars 285; waits on Bābur in Herāt (912) 285; Shaibānī instructs him in exposition (913) 329.

Muḥammad *Zaitūn*'—opposing Bābur (932) 523; written to and makes false excuse 529, 530; waits on Bābur (933) 540; sent out of the way before Kānwa 547.

Khwāja **Muḥammad Ẓakariya**,[2] son of Yaḥyā—murdered 128; [906 AH.–1500 AD.].

Muḥammad-i-zamān Mīrzā *Bāi-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, grandson and last surviving heir of Ḥusain—particulars 261, 269 n. 6, 279; spared by Shaibānī 263; his wanderings and association with Khwānd-amīr 364–5, 463 n. 3; sent to Bābur and married to his daughter Ma'ṣūma-sulṭān (923–4) 365; in Balkh 365, 522; dutiful letters and tribute sent by him to Bābur (925) 385, 402, ☞ 427, ☞ (926–932) 428; with Bābur (935) 606, 631, 639, 659; objects to the Bihār command 661–2; does homage for it and is given *insignia* of royalty 662, ☞ 706; starts for Bihār but is recalled 663, 664; in the battle of the Ghogrā 668, 669, 671; ☞ given Jūnpūr 682; pursues Bīban and Bāyazīd 682; grounds for surmising in Bābur the intention to leave him as ruler in Hindūstān 705–7; ☞ of his later uprisings against Humāyūn 714 n. 1; [†drowned at Chausa 946 AH.–1539 AD.].

Muḥibb-i-'alī Khān *Barlās Turk*, son of Khalīfa—☞ marries Nāhid Begim (930) 443; in a night-attack (932) 471; in the left centre at Pānīpat 472, 473 and at Kānwa (933) 565; unhorsed in 'Abdu'l-'azīz' discomfiture 549–50; on service (934) 601.

Muḥibb-i-'alī *qūrchī*—on Khusrau Shāh's service (901) 60, (902) 71; joins Bābur (910) 188; Bābur's praise of him (912) 307, 308; loyal 313, (914) 346; in the van at Qandahār (913) 335; collector of an impost (925) 384; at Ḥiṣār-fīrūza (932) 465–6; at an entertainment 410.

Muḥibb-sulṭān *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Maḥmūd—particulars 48, 49.

Sāqī **Muḥsin**—wrestles (935) 660.

[1] "Zaitun is the name of the Chinese city from which satin was brought (*hodie* Thsiuancheu or Chincheu) and my belief is that our word satin came from it" (Col. H. Yule, E. and D. iv, 514).

[2] My text omits to translate *yīgīt*(*aūghūl*) and thus loses the information that Yaḥyā's sons Bāqī and Ẓakaria were above childhood, were growa to fighting age—braves—but not yet begs (see Index *s.n. chuhra*).

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Muḥsin *Dūldāī Barlās*—at Chanderī (934) 590.

Muīnu'd-dīn al Zamjī—omitted (or lost) from Bābur's list of Herāt celebrities 283 n. 1.

Mujāhid Khān *Multānī*—on Bābur's service (933) 540.

The **Mulla**, see 'Abdu'r-raḥmān *Jāmī*.

Mullā Bābā *Farkatī*—brings Bābur news of Shaibānī (913) 343.

Mullā Bihishtī—conveys gifts to Hind-al (935) 642.

Mullā Bābā *Pashāgharī, Chaghatāī*—comes into one of Bābur's dreams (906) 132; at Sar-i-pul 141; envoy for Bābur to Khusrau Shāh (910) 188; loyal (912) 313, (914) 346; ☞ disloyal in Ghaznī (921) 363; deserts Humāyūn (932) 545; joins the Aūzbegs; his proceedings 546; his brother Bābā Shaikh *q.v.*; his Kābul garden 315.

Mullā Hijrī, a poet—waits on Bābur (907) 153.

Mullā Kabīr—his devious route to wait on Bābur (925) 399.

Mullā Khwājakā—prescribes for Bābur (925) 399 (where read Khwajakā).

Mullā Khwāja-i Sayyid Ātā—his Bāī-qarā wife 265–6.

Mullā Tabrīzī—conveys gifts (935) 642.

Mullā Ṭaghāī—envoy to Bābur of Abū-sa'īd *Aūzbeg* (935) 631, 632, 641.

Mūmin—suspected of the death of Nūyān Kūkūldāsh (907) 151–2.

Mūmin-i-'alī *tawāchī*—conveys orders (932) 451; conveys the Kānwa Letter-of-victory to Kābul (933) 580.

Mūmin Ātākā—out with Bābur (925) 404; on service (932) 465, 534; in the left wing (*tūlghuma*) at Kānwa (933) 568, 569; his brethren (935) 679.

Khwāja **Munīr** *Aūshī*—incites attack on Bukhāra (902) 65.

Sayyid **Murād** *Aūghlāqchī*[1]—referred to as father of Yūsūf 39 and Ḥasan 279; [†874 AH.–1469–70 AD.].

Mūrād Beg *Bāyandarī Turkmān*—his joining Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (908) 280, 336.

Murād Mīrzā *Arlāt*, son of Muḥammad-i-qāsim and Rābi'a-sulṭān *Mīrān-shāhī*—his Bāī-qarā (?) marriage 266.[2]

Murād *Qajar Turkmān, qūrchī*—'Irāqī envoy to Bābur (935) 666, 688, 689, n. 4.

[1] See Add. Notes under p. 39.
[2] See Add. Notes under p. 266.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Mullā Khwāja **Murshid** *'Irāqī*—envoy of Bābur to Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* (925) 385, ☞ 427 n. 3 ; made Dīwān of Bihār (935) 661, 662.

Mīr **Mūrtāẓa**—particulars 284.

Musā Khwāja—whispers of Mughūl rebellion (914) 346.

Malik **Musā** *Dilah-zāk* (*Dilazāk*) *Afghān*—receives gifts (925) 394 ; brings tribute 409.

Musā Sulṭān *Farmūlī*, son of Ma'rūf—waits on Bābur (935) 685 ; in the battle of the Ghogrā 669.

Muṣṭafa Shaikh-zāda *Farmūlī Afghān* — on service for Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* (932) 527 ; his brother Bāyazīd *q.v.* ; [†932 AH.–1525–6 AD.].

Muṣṭafa *Rūmī*, *tawāchī*—his culverin-discharge at Pānīpat (932) 474 ; has carts made for defence at Kānwa (933) 550 ; at Kānwa 550, 568–9 ; at the Gangas bridge (934) 599 ; in the battle of the Ghogrā (935) 668, 669, 670.

Mū'yad—leading Daryā-khānīs for Bābur (933) 582.

Shāh **Muẓaffar**—particulars 291 ; his artist-training owed to Nawā'ī 272.

Muẓaffar *Barlās*—particulars 270–1.

Sulṭān **Muẓaffar** *Gujrātī*—his death and successor 534 (where for [Jumāda II] "and" read 932 ; [†932 AH.–1526 AD.].

Muzaffar-i-ḥusāin Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid*, *Barlās Turk*, son of Ḥusain and Khadīja—particulars 262, 268 ; serving under his father (901) 58, (902) 71 ; given Astarābād (902) 61, 69 ; made joint-ruler in Herī (911) 292–3 ; combines in action against Shaibānī (912) 296–7 and withdraws 301 ; fails in etiquette 297 ; in social relation with Bābur 298, 299, 300, 302–3 ; plain speech to him from Qāsim Beg 304 ; a false report of him in Kābul 313 ; irresolute in opposing Shaibānī (913) 326 ; his army defeated 327 ; flees (to Astarābād) abandoning his family *ib.* ; his wife Khān-zāda Khānīm *q.v.*

Sulṭān **Muẓaffar Shāh** *Ḥabshī*, mentioned in illustration of a Bengal custom 483.

Mīrzā Yār-i-aḥmad **Najm Ṣānī**, wazīr of Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī*—his killing Sohrāb *Bāī-qarā* 262 ; ☞ his commission to correct Bābur (918) 355, 359 ; ☞ his massacre in Qarshī 360 ; ☞ slain at Ghaj-dawān 262 n. 4, 361 ; Bābur's alleged

failure to support him 361; his retainer Muḥammad Jān *q.v.*; [†918 AH.–1512 AD.].

Nādir Shāh *Afshārid*—his birthplace (mod.) Qalāt-i-nādirī 329 n. 4; [†1160 AH.–1747 AD.].

Nahār, son of Ḥasan Khān *Mewātī*—released by Bābur from capture (933) 545; returns to Court 578; escapes 581.

Nāhid Begīm—☞ her marriage (930) 443.

Na'man Chuhra—captured by Tambal (908) 168; at a wine-party (925) 385.

Gurū **Nānak Shāh**—his relations with Daulat Khān *Yūsuf-khail* and traditionally with Bābur 461 n. 3; [†946 AH.–1539 AD.].

Napoleon—☞ his problem of creed in Egypt less difficult than that of Bābur with Shī'a support 356.

Nārpat Hāra *Chauhān Rājpūt*—his force at Kānwa (933) 562.

Nāṣir Beg—makes over Andijān to Bābur (904) 103; counsels him (908) 165; captured by Tambal 168; his sons Dost-, Mīrīm-, and Shāhīm-i-nāṣir; his brother-in-law Aūzūn Ḥasan *q.v.*

Naṣīr Khān *Nūḥānī Afghān*—particulars 659 n. 4; disaffected to Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* and unsubmissive to Bābur (932) 523; discussion of his movements 530; assembles a force but flees before Bābur's 533–4, 544; his son Farīd *q.v.*

Nāṣir Mīrzā *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of 'Umar Shaikh—particulars 17; in Kāsān (*æt.* 8) (899) 32; taken to his uncle Aḥmad 32; meets Bābur (908) 172, 178; at the capture of Kābul (910) 198, 199; Zurmut hostility 220; given Nīngnahār 227; misconduct 229, 241–2; accepts an invitation to Badakhshān 242–3; has an imbroglio with Khusrau Shāh 243; clans which had left him 255; defeats Aūzbegs (912) 295; defeated by Badakhshīs and goes to Bābur 321; Bābur's reflections on the situation 322; out with Bābur (913) 324; in the van at Qandahār 335; his loot and command and beleaguerment in Qandahār 339–40; goes to Ghaznī 343, 344; ☞ given Kābul (917) 363; ☞ returns it to Bābur (920) 363; dies in Ghaznī (921) 363; his sister Mihr-bānū and wife Qarā-gūz *Bāī-qarā q.v.*; [†921 AH.–1515 AD.].

Khwāja **Naṣīru'd-dīn** *Ṭūsī*—his Astronomical Tables 79; [†672 AH.–1274 AD.].

Sulṭān **Nāṣiru'd-dīn** *Khiljī Turk*, Sulṭān of Malwā—events following his death 593; his son Maḥmūd *q.v.*; [†916 AH.–1510 AD.].

Naṣrat Shāh *Ḥusain-shāhī*, Sulṭān in Bengal — particulars 482–3; reported friendly to Bābur (935) 628, 637; sends him an envoy 637; negociations with him 661, 664, 676; referred to as at peace with Bābur 665; mentioned 667, 677, 679; his troops defeated on the Ghogrā 671–4; peace made 676; [†939 AH.–1532 AD.].

Naṣrat Shāh *Tūghlūq Turk*—receives Dihlī from Tīmūr 481 n. 4.

Naurang Beg—☞ punishes the Mundāhirs (936) 700, 701.

Nau-roz, brother of Muḥammad-'alī *Jang-jang* — at Bajaur (925) 370.

Naukar Hindū, see Tūka.

Naẓar-i-'alī *Turk*—on Bābur's service (925) 389; his relation Minūchihr *q.v.*

Naẓar Bahādur—killed on Khusrau Shāh's service 93, 94, 279; [†903 AH.–1497–8 AD.].

Naẓar Bahādur *Aūzbeg*—one of five champions worsted by Bābur in single combat (914) 349 n. 1.

Shāh **Naẓar** *Turkmān*—in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335; rebels (914) 345.

Ni'amat *Arghūn*—his defeat 34.

Mullā **Ni'amat**—killed in a surprise by Sangā 549; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].

Khwāja **Ni'amatu'l-lāh**—his son Āṣafī 286 n. 2.

Nīgārsī, see Dankūsī.

Niẓām Khān *Bīāna'ī*—not submissive to Bābur (932) 523; receives letters and a quatrain from him 529; defeats Bābur's troops (933) 538–9; waits on Bābur 539; in the left wing at Kānwa 567; on service (935) 678.

Khwāja **Niẓāmu'd-dīn Aḥmad**, the author of the *Ṭabaqāt-i-akbarī*, son of Muḥammad Muqīm—☞ discussion of his story of the intended supersession of Babur's sons 702–8; [†1003 AH.–1594 AD.].

Sayyid **Niẓāmu'd-dīn 'Alī Khalīfa** *Marghīlānī, Barlās Turk* son of Junaid—escapes from prison and death (900) 55; driven from Bābur's presence (903) 90, (905) 119; defends Kābul (912) 313; mediates (914) 345; hears rumours of

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · GSL

Mughūl revolt 346; in the left centre at Bajaur (925) 369 and at Pānīpat (932) 473; given charge of Ibrāhīm's corpse 474 n. 1; at Kānwa (933) 556, 558, 564–5; on service 384, 395, 666; communicates bad news at Chanderī (934) 594 and (935) 639; mediates for Rahīm-dād 689; ☞ declines the Badakhshān government (936) 697; ☞ discussion of his plan to set Humāyūn aside (in Hindūstān?) 702–8; his seat at a feast 631; host to Bābur 408; his sons Muḥibb-i-'alī, Ḥusamu'd-dīn-i-'alī, Ḥamza and daughter Gul-barg *q.v.*

Shaikh **Niẓāmū'd-dīn Auliyā**—his tomb visited by Bābur (932) 475; [†725 AH.–1325 AD.].

Niẓāmu'l-mulk *Khawāfī*, Dīwān in Herī—arrested and put to death 282; [†903 AH.–1497–8 AD.].

Hazrat **Nuḥ** (Noah)—his father Lām *q.v.*

Nūr Beg (perhaps Sayyid Nūru'd-dīn *Chaghāniānī infra*)—disobeys the Law, plays the lute (925) 395; joins Bābur in an autumn garden 418; his brethren on service (932) 446; with Bābur in the East (935) 653; in the battle of the Ghogrā 673; sent to allay Rahīm-dād's fears 688–9; his brother Shāham *q.v.*

Sayyid **Nūru'd-dīn** *Chaghāniānī*—Sayyid Amīr—a son-in-law of Bābur and father of Salīma-sulṭān ☞ 713; perhaps Nūr Beg *supra.*

Shaikh **Nūru'd-dīn Beg** *Turkistānī, Qībchāq Turk*—grandfather, through a daughter, of Yūnas *Chaghatāī* 19 (see T.R. trs. p. 64).

Nūru'l-lāh *ṭambūrchī*—his experience in an earthquake (911) 247.

Sayyid **Nūyān Beg** *Tīrmīẓī*—particulars 273; his son Ḥasan-i-ya'qūb *q.v.*

Nūyān Kūkūldāsh *Tīrmīẓī*—makes a right guess (906) 131–2; on service against Shaibānī 142; his sword sent as a gift to Tambal (907) 150; that sword wounds Bābur's head (908) 151, 167, 396; his suspicious death 151–152; Bābur's grief 152; Nūyān's uncle Ḥaq-naẓar *q.v.*; [†907 AH.–1502 AD.].

Padmāwatī, wife of Rānā Sangā—in Rantanbhūr (935) 612; mentioned 613 n. 1; her son Bikramājīt and kinsman Asūkmāl *q.v.*

Pahār Khān *Lūdī*, see Bihār.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Pahār Mīrza, a father-in-law of Jahāngīr *Mīrān-shāhī*—his daughter brings her son Pir-i-muḥammad to Bābur (913) 331.

Pahlawān *Aūdī* (*Oudhī*)—wrestles (935) 683, 688.

Pahlawān *Lāhorī*, a boatman—wrestles (935) 656.

Pāpa Aghācha, a mistress of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā*—particulars 266, 268–9; her five sons and three daughters *ib.*[1]

Pāpā-aūghūlī, of Bābur's household—out with Bābur (910) 234; at Qandahār (913) 335.

Parbat *Kakar*—conveys tribute to Bābur (925) 391, 392, 393.

Pasha Begīm *Bahārlū*, *Aq-qūlūq Turkmān*, daughter of 'Alī-shukr Beg—particulars 49; her nephew Yār-'alī *Balāl q.v.*[2]

Pāyanda-muḥammad *Qīplān*—out with Bābur (925) 404.

Pāyanda-sulṭān Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid*, *Barlās Turk*, daughter of Abū-sa'īd and wife of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā*—particulars 263, 265, 268; her son Ḥaidar and her daughters *ib.*; visited in Herāt by Bābur (912) 301; arranges a marriage for him 306; captured by Shaibānī (913) 327.

Pietro della Vallé—an illustration drawn from his recorded morning-draught (1623 AD.) 395.

Khwāja **Pir Aḥmad** *Khawāfī*—his son 281.

Pir Budāgh Sulṭān, Khāqān in Desht Qībchāq (Ḥ.S. iii, 232)—his Bāī-qarā marriage 258 n. 2.

Mīr **Pīr Darwesh** *Hazār-aspī*—in charge of Balkh (857) 50; fights there *ib.*

Pīrī Beg *Turkmān*—joins Bābur (913) 336; particulars Author's Note, 336.

Pīr Kānū of Sakhī-sarwār—Bābur halts at his tomb (910) 238.

Pīr Muḥammad *Aīlchī-būghā*, *qūchīn*—particulars 50 and nn.; drowned 48 n. 4, 50; [895 AH.–1490 AD.].

Pīr Muḥammad *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid*, *Barlās Turk*, son of Jahāngīr—brought by his widowed mother to Bābur (913) 331.

Pīr-qulī *Sīstānī*—in the right wing at Pānīpat (932) 472, and at Kānwa (933) 566; on service (932) 530.

Pīr Sulṭān *Pashāī*—one of Bābur's guides (912) 308.

Prester John, Wang Khān [T.R. trs. 16], Ong Khān [Abu'l-ghāzī, Desmaisons' trs. p. 55]—his title 23 n. 3.

[1] For emendation of 266 n. 7, see Add. Notes under P. 266.

[2] On p. 49 l. 3 for "Black" read White; and in l. 3 read ("wife of") Muḥammadī son of ("Jahān-shāh").

Pulād Sulṭān *Aūzbeg - Shaibān Chīngīz - khānid* — son of Kūchūm—Bābur sends him his earliest-mentioned Dīwān (925) 402, 632 n. 3; at Jām (934) 622; an envoy goes from him to Bābur (935) 631, 632, 641.

Pūrān (Allāh-birdī or Allāh-qulī)—out with Bābur (910) 234; wounded (913) 342; his father-in-law Qāsim *qūchīn q.v.*

Qābil (Cain)—Bābur goes alone to his tomb (925) 415.

Qādir-bīrdī *Ghainī*—spoken to by Bābur when in hiding (908) 180–1.

Qāitmās *Turkmān*, retainer of Jahāngīr—drowned (910) 237.[1]

Qalandar *pīāda*—on Bābur's service (932) 529.

Qambar-i-'alī *Arghūn*—on Bābur's service (935) 688.

Qambar-i-'alī Beg—mobilizes the Hindūstān army by Abū-sa'īd's order (873?) 46; expelled from Khurāsān with Maḥmūd *Mīrān-shāhī* 47.

Qambar-i-'alī Beg *qūchīn*, son of Qāsim—races with Bābur (?) (907) 147; wounded, brings Bābur a message (908) 174; one of the eight in flight from Akhsī 177; gives Bābur his horse 177–8; beats down snow for a road (912) 308–9; fights rebels in Kābul 315; at Qandahār (913) 334; wounded 336; hurries from Qūndūz against rebels in Ghaznī (921) 364; brings Bābur a letter from Balkh (?) (925) 385.

Qambār-i-'alī Beg *Silākh, Mughūl*—particulars 28; his inconvenient absence (904) 106; recalled (905) 108; goes away 110; returns 112; in the van at Khūbān 113; goes away 115; returns and is ill-tempered 117; his districts 115, 124; his ill-timed pacificism 118; his misconduct 123; goes to Tambal, made prisoner, escapes to Bābur 124; on Bābur's service (906) 130, 131; at Sar-i-pul 138, 139; sends his family out of Samarkand 141; ? races with Bābur (907) 147; ? leaves Bābur in Dikh-kat 150 n. 3; conspires against Tambal and goes to The Khān (Maḥmūd) 154; serves Bābur against Tambal (908) 161, 162, 165, 166; counsels Bābur distastefully and flees 168, 170; talks to him of peace with Tambal 173; made prisoner in Akhsī against Bābur's wish 174; leaves Khusrau Shah for Bābur (910) 189; dismissed by Bābur and why 192, 532 n. 1; his son 'Abdu'-shukūr *q.v.*

[1] Cf. H.S. Ferṭī's trs. p. 70 for the same name Qaitmās.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Qambar Bī *Aūzbeg*—blamed by Shaibānī for three murders (906) 128; on service for him (910) 242, 244; defeated by Ṭahmāsp *Ṣafawī's* men (934) 622.

Qarā Aḥmad *yūrūnchī*—Bābur's messenger to the Kābul begs (912) 314.

Qarā Barlās—leaves Samarkand with the Tarkhāns (905) 121; fights for Bābur at Sar-i-pul (906) 139; besieged and holds out to the end 143, 144.

Sayyid **Qarā Beg** *Kohbur Chaghatāī*—remains with Bābur at a crisis (903) 91; invited into Akhsī (for Bābur) (904) 101; escapes after defeat 106; at Khūbān (905) 113; released 119[1]; his (?) hasty retreat to entrenchments (906) 138, 232 n. 4; his son 'Abdu'l-qadūs *q.v.*

Qarā Bīlūt—surrenders Qalāt-i-ghilzāī to Bābur (911) 248–9.

Qaracha Khān—punished for disobedience (925) 390–1; on service (934) 602, (935) 638; his messenger with news of Mahīm's journey 650, 659.

Qārā-gūz Begīm *Arlāt*—her marriage with Nāṣir *Mīrān-shāhī* 265.

Qarā-gūz Begīm, see (1) Makhdūma, (2) Rābi'a-sulṭān.

Qarā-qūzī—on Bābur's service (932) 471; in the left-wing [*tūlghuma*] at Pānīpat 473.

Qārlūghāch Bakhshī kills Mughūl Beg's son (904) 102.

Qashqa Maḥmūd (or Qāshqa), Beg of the Chīrās *tūmān* of Mughūls—sent to help Bābur (906) 138; quarrels with a Begchīk for the military post of honour (907) 155. (He may be "Bābā Qashqa" *q.v.*

Mullā **Qāsim**—building work given to him (935) 642.

Sayyid **Qāsim** (p. 96), see Sayyid Kāmal.

Qāsim-i-'ajab Beg—remains with Bābur at a crisis (903) 91; promoted to beg's rank (904) 104; captured by Tambal's men (905) 115–6; released 119.

Qāsim-i-'alī *tariyākī*—musician at entertainments (925) 385, 387, 388.

Qāsim Beg *qūchīn*—particulars 26; supports Bābur (899) 30, (900) 43; his appointments 43, 44 (where delete Sayyid as his title); punishes misconducted Mughūls (902) 66–7, 153 and has to leave Bābur (907) 27, 67; on missions (903) 90, (904) 100, 101; remains with Bābur at a crisis (903) 91;

[1] His capture is not recorded.

defeated by Mughūls (904) 105–6 ; in the centre at Khūbān (905) 113 ; banished from Andijān by 'Alī-dost 119 ; rejoins Bābur for Samarkand 123, (906) 130 ; suspects Banā'ī 136 ; in the centre at Sar-i-pul 139 ; defending Samarkand 141, 142, 143, 144 ; races with Bābur (907) 147 ; advises a tactful gift 150 ; out with Bābur (910) 234 ; rewarded (911) 252 ; goes with a punitive force to Nigr-aū 253 ; a saying of his twisted for ill 254 ; defeats Aūzbegs (912) 295 ; insists in Herāt on ceremony due to Bābur 298 ; angered by Bābur's being pressed to drink wine 304 ; mistaken as to a route 308–9 ; mistakenly compassionate 313 ; allowed to keep his Fifth of spoil (913) 324 ; in the left wing at Qandahār 334, 335 ; wounded 336 ; retainers allotted to him 339 ; his counsel 339–40 ; mediates for suspects (914) 345 ; waits on Bābur returned from Hindūstān (925) 395 ; mediates for Tramontane clans to leave Kābul 402 ; Bābur breaks fast at his house 408 ; his sons Ḥamza, Tīngrī-bīrdī, Qambar-i-'alī *q.v.* ; his ill-conducted nephew 414 ; a servant 313 ; a father-in-law Banda-i-'alī *q.v.* ; [†928 AH.–1522 AD.].

Qāsim *Duldāī, Barlās Turk* — serving Bāī-sunghar *Mīrān-shāhī* (902) 65 ; joins Bābur 66.

Qāsim-i-ḥusain *Aūzbeg-Shaibān*, son of Qāsim and 'Āyisha-sulṭān *Bāī-qarā*—particulars 267, 298 ; joins Bābur (933) 550 ; at Kānwa 556, 559 ; receives Badāūn 582 ; on service 582, (934) 589, (935) 682 ; in the battle of the Ghogrā (935) 669 ; mentioned 631 n. 4, ☞ 706.

Sayyid **Qāsim** *Jalāīr*—wins the Champion's Portion at Asfara (900) 53 ; takes it at Shāhrukhiya 53 ; stays with Bābur at a crisis (903) 91 ; joins him for Samarkand (905) 123–4 ; at Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) (906) 139 ; his strange doings in Pāp (908) 171 ; his unseasonable arrival in Akhsī 174 ; defeats an Aūzbeg raider (910) 195 ; out with Bābur 234, (925) 403 ; drunk 415 ; Bābur pays him a consolation-visit 418 ; a party in his country-house (926) 420 ; assigned to reinforce Khwājā Kalān in Kābul (935) 647.

Qāsim Khān *Qāzzāq, Jūjī Chingīz-khānid*—his marriage with Sulṭān-nigār *Chaghatāī* 23 ; his good administration 23–4 ; [†924 AH.–1518 AD.].

Qāsim *Khītka* (?) *Arghūn*, (var. *Jangeh*)—in Akhsī (908) 171.

Qāsim Khwāja—succeeds in his brother Yakka's appointments (935) 674 ; on service 682.

Qāsim Kūkūldāsh—at a household party (906) 131 (his name is omitted from the Ḥai. MS. f. 83 and from my text); helps Bābur at his mother's burial (911) 246; at Qandahār (913) 335; his Arghūn marriage 342, 199 n. 1, ☞ 443.

Qāsim Mīr-akhwūr—stays with Bābur at a crisis (903) 91; on service (933) 548.

Malik **Qāsim** *Mughūl*, brother (p. 568) of Bābā Qashqa—in the right-wing [*tūlghuma*] at Pānīpat (932) 473, and at Kānwa (933) 568; on service with his brethren (932) 528, (933) 558, 582, (934) 589; his good service near Qanūj and his death 599; his kinsmen, see *s.n.* Bābā Qashqa; [†934 AH.–1528 AD.].

Shāh **Qāsim** *pīāda*—sent on a second mission to Bābur's kinsfolk in Khurāsān (935) 617.

Qāsim *Sambhalī*—not submissive to Bābur (932) 523; surrenders 528, 529; sent out of the way before Kānwa (933) 547 (where the Ḥai. MS. adds "Beg", by clerical? error).

Qāsim Sulṭān *Aūzbeg-Shaibān Chingīz-khānid*—his Bāī-qarā marriage 267; at a reception (912) 298; his son Qāsim-i-ḥusain *q.v.*

Qātāq Begīm, wife of Aḥmad *Mīrān-shāhī*—particulars 36; of Aḥmad's escape from her dominance 36 n. 1.

Qayyām Beg—Aūrdū (Ūrdū) Shāh—out with Bābur (925) 403; waits on Bābur as Governor of Nīngnahār (926) 421; joins him in Hindūstān (933) 550 (here Qawwām Aūrdū-shāh); at Kānwa 556, 569.

Qāẓī Bihzādī—Bābur forbids unlawful drinks in his house (925) 398.

Qāẓī Ghulām—escapes death by pretending to be a slave (904) 102.

Qāẓī Jīā—waits on Bābur (932) 527; on service 530, (933) 544, (935) 639; joins Bābur 667; on service 668, 682.

Qāẓī of Kābul—waits on Bābur (925) 395.

Qāẓī of Samāna—☞ complains of Mundāhir attack (936) 693, 700.

Qismatāī Mīrzā—on Bābur's service in Hindūstān (932) 474, (933) 545, 546–7, 548; his untimely praise of the Rājpūt army 548, 550.

Qilka *Kāshgharī*—escapes death (904) 102.

Qīzīl *tawāchī*—messenger of Shāh Beg *Arghūn* to Bābur (925) 395.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Qublāī Khān, great-grandson of Chingīz Khān—his building at Qarshī 84 n. 2; [†693 AH.–1294 AD.].

Qūch Beg (Qūj), son of Aḥmad *qarāwal*—in the left wing at Khūbān (905) 113; his courage at Bīshkharān 118; leaves Bābur for Ḥisār (906) 129; ? reprieved at Qāsim *qūchīn*'s request (914) 345; on Bābur's service (925) 374, (925) 384; at Parhāla 390; comes on summons to Kābul 409; referred to as dead (933) 565; his brother Tardī Beg *q.v.*

Qūch *Arghūn*—allotted in Qalāt to Qāsim *qūchīn* (913) 339.

Qūch Beg *Kohbur Chaghatāī*, son of Ḥaidar-i-qāsim—at Sar-i-pul (906) 139; in Samarkand besieged 142, 143, 144.

Qul-arūk—drowned in the Sind-water (910) 237.

Qul-bāyazīd *bakāwal*—particulars 237; swims the Sind-water (910) 237; at Qandahār (913) 335, 338; his son Tizak *q.v.*; his tomb near Kābul 198.

Qulī Beg *Arghūn*—known as attached to Bābur (913) 337; returns from an embassy to Kāshghar (925) 415; his brother Aḥmad-'alī Tarkhān *q.v.*

Qūlij Bahādur *Aūsbeg*—mentioned in Ṭahmāsp's *Ṣafawī*'s account of Jām (935) 636 n. 2.

Mīrzā **Qūlī Kūkūldāsh**, see Mīrzā-qulī.

Qulī-muḥammad *Būghdā qūchīn*—particulars 40.

Ustād **Qul-muḥammad** *'Aūdī*—particulars 291; his musical training owed to Nawā'ī 272.

Qul-nachāq—holding Balkh for the Bāī-qarās (912) 294, 296; surrenders it to Shaibānī 300.

Qul-naẓar of Ṭaghāī Beg—sallies out from Samarkand (906) 142; does well 144.

Qurbān *Chīrkhī*—sent into Bhīra (925) 381; a false rumour about him as invited into Balkh (935) 625; gifts to his servants 633; in the battle of the Ghogra 669; on service 678.

Quṣam ibn 'Abbās, one of the Companions—his tomb at Samarkand 75.

Qusum-nāī (?)—on service (932) 534.

Quṭb Khān *Sarwānī*—not submissive to Bābur (932) 523; Mahdī Khwāja sent against him in Etāwa 530; takes Chandwār (933) 557; abandons both places 579, 582; defeated 587.

Khwāja **Quṭbu'd-dīn** *Aūshī* (*Ūshī*)—his birthplace in Farghāna 475 n. 6; Bābur visits his tomb in Dihlī (932) 475; [†633 AH.–1235 AD.].

Qūtlūq Khwāja Kūkūldāsh—with Bābur in Samarkand (906) 143, 144; host to Bābur (925) 398, 407; held up as an example 406.

Qūtlūq-muḥammad Kūkūldāsh, foster-brother of Daulat-sulṭān Khānīm—brings Bābur letters from Kāshghar (925) 409 (where for "Daulat" read Qūtlūq).

Qūtlūq-nigār Khānīm *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid,* mother of Bābur—particulars 21; mentioned 17, 19; in Andijān (900) 43; entreats her son's help (903) 88, 89; sent to join him in Khujand 92, and in Aūrā-tīpā (905) 136; her Mughūls rebel (904) 105; with Bābur in Samarkand (906) 136; leaves the town with him (907) 147; hears of a sister's death 148–9; goes to her own family in Tāshkīnt 149; her dangerous illness *ib.*; her safety leaves Bābur free (908) 157, 158; ☞ with him in Sūkh 184; uses his tent in the exodus from Farghāna (910) 188; left in Kāhmard 189; crosses Hindū-kush and rejoins him in Kābul 197; her death (911) 21, 246; her treatment as a refugee in Tāshkīnt (908) contrasted with that of her refugee-relations in Kābul (912) 318; her concern for her son's marriage affairs (905) 120, (910) 48; her old governess 148; [†911 AH.–1505 AD.].

Qūtlūq-qadam *qarāwal*—out with Bābur (910) 236–7; in the left-centre at Qandahār (913) 335; on service (925) 403, (932) 458, 460, 468, 471, 530; in the left wing at Pānīpat 472 and at Kānwa (933) 567, 570; on service 475; host to Bābur (926) 424; his tomb and bridge near Kābul 198, 204; [†934 AH.–1528 AD.?].

Qūtlūq-sulṭān Begīm, daughter of Mīrān-shāh son of Tīmūr—wife of Ḥusain *Qānjūt* 256 n. 5.

Rābi'a-sulṭān Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*—Qarā-gūz Begīm—daughter of Aḥmad—particulars 13, 35.

Sayyid **Rafī'u'd-dīn** *Ṣafawī*—Mullā Rafī'—mediates for Niẓām Khān with Bābur (933) 539; concocts tonic powders (935) 606; at a feast 631.

Khwāja **Raḥīm-dād,** paternal-nephew of Mahdī Khwāja—receives and obtains possession of Gūālīar (933) 539, 540, 547; his quarters and constructions there (935) 607, 610, 613; Bābur sleeps in his flower-garden 612, 613; action against him as seditious 688–9, (936) 690; his son held as hostage and escapes (935) 688–9; ☞ Ibn Batuta's account

of him 692 n. 1; ☞ no sequel of his rebellion mentioned in the *Akbar-nāma* 692.

Rahmat *pīāda*—conveys letters to Kābul (932) 466.

Rāja of Kahlūr—☞ waits on Bābur (936) 699.

Rajab-sulṭān Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Maḥmūd—particulars 48, 49.

Ramẓān *lūlī*—a musician at parties (925) 387, 388.

Rāo *Sarwānī*, see Dāūd.

Sulṭān **Rashīd Khān** *Chaghatāī Chingīz-khānid*, son of Sa'īd and Makhtūm *Qālūchī* (T.R. trs. p. 187) — his Qāzzāq marriage 23.

Mr. Thomas **Rastel**—an illustration drawn from his morning-draught recorded [1623 AD.] 395.

Rānā Ratan-sī—successor of his father Sangā in Chītor 613; mentioned in connection with the Khīljī jewels *ib.*; his younger brother Bikramājīt *q.v.*

Rauḥ-dam—musician at entertainments (925) 385, 387, 388; in a raft-misadventure 407.

Rawū'ī *Sarwānī* (Rāo)—serving Bābur (933) 538 (here read as Dāūd), (935) 682; host to Bābur (934) 588.

Rīnīsh (var. Zīnīsh) *Aūzbeg*—his defeat by Ṭahmāsp *Ṣafawī* (934) 618, 622 (where in n. 1 for "934" read 935 as the date of the battle of Jām); [†934 AH.–1528 AD.].

A **Rūmī** prescribes for Bābur (935) 657, 660.

Rāja **Rūp-narāin**—included in Bābur's Revenue List 521.

Ruqaiya Aghā, wife of Badī'u'z-zamān *Bāī-qarā*—captured in Herāt and married by Tīmūr *Aūzbeg* 328.

Ruqaiya-sulṭān Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of 'Umar Shaikh—particulars 18, 19; [†*cir.* 935 AH.–1528 AD.].

Rūstam-i-'alī *Turkmān*—in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335; on service (925) 377, (933) 538; in the *tūlghuma* of the left-wing at Kānwa 568, 569.

Rustam Khān—Iliās (p. 576)—captures Bābur's commander at Kūl (Koel) (933) 557, 576; captured and flayed alive 576.

Sa'ādat-bakht Begīm—Begīm Sulṭān—*Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Ḥusain—particulars 266–7.

Nāṣiru'd-dīn **Sabuktīgīn** *Ghaznawī Turk*—the humble status of his capital 217; a legend concerning him 219; his son Maḥmūd *q.v.*; [†387 AH.–997 AD.].

Sadharān *Tānk Rājpūt*—his acceptance of Islām 481 n. 5.

Pahlawān **Ṣādiq**—made to wrestle (935) 650; forbidden as an antagonist 653; wrestles 688.

Mullā **Sa'du'd-dīn Mas'ūd** *Taftazānī*—a descendant of 283; [†792 AH.–1390 AD.].

Sultān **Sa'īd Khān** *Ghāzī, Chaghatāī Chīnqīz-khānid*, son of Aḥmad—particulars 698 nn. 2, 3, 349; meets Bābur (908) 159; stays with him in Kābul (914) 318, 349–50; receives Andijān from him (916) 318, 357; loyal to him 344 n. 2, ☞ 351–2; sends an envoy to him (917) 22; Ḥaidar *Dūghlāt* goes from Bābur to Sa'īd (918) 362; two kinswomen take refuge with him (923 and 924) 24 (where in n. 1 *delete* the second sentence); reported to have designs on Badakhshān (925) 412; an envoy to him returns 415; ☞ named as a principal actor between 926 and 932 AH. 427; writes and sends gifts to Bābur (932) 446; ☞ invades Badakhshān (936) 695–6; ☞ gist of a letter from Bābur to him 697–8; ☞ Bābur moves menacingly for the North-west 698; his full-brother Khalīl, his son Rashīd, his wife Ḥabība, and *kūkūldāsh* Yāngī Beg *q.v.*; [†939 AH.–1533 AD.].

Sa'īdlīq Sa'd *Turkmān*—defeated by Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (873?) 260.

Saif-i-'alī Beg *Bahārlū Qarā-qūlūq Turkmān*, father of Bairām Khān-i-khānān—particulars 91 n. 3.[1]

Maulānā **Saifī** *Bukhārī*—'Arūẓī—particulars 288; [†909 AH.–1503–4 AD.].

Saif Khān *Nūḥānī*, son of Daryā Khān—deserts 'Ālam Khān *Lūdī* (932) 457.

Saifu'd-dīn Aḥmad, Shaikhu'l-islām in Herāt—particulars 283; takes the keys of Herāt to Shaibānī (913) 328; his pupil Muḥammad-i-yūsuf *q.v.*; killed by Shāh Ismā'īl 283; [†916 AH.–1510 A.D.].

Ḥājī **Saifu'd-dīn Beg**, ? uncle of Tīmūr—his descendant Walī Beg 272.

Sakma *Mughūl*—rebels against Bābur (914) 345.

Ṣalāḥu'd-dīn (Silhādī)—particulars 562 n. 3, 614 n. 2; his force at Kānwā (933) 562; attack on him planned and abandoned (934) 598; Bābur visits village near his birth-place (935) 614; mentioned 628 n. 2.

[1] He joined Bābur with his father Yār-i-'alī *Balūl* (*q.v.*) in 910 AH. (Blochmann's Biographies, A.-i-A. trs. 315).

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Ṣāliḥa-sulṭān Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī*, daughter of Maḥmūd and Pasha, wife of Bābur—(name not now in the Turkī text) 47 ; ☞ the likelihood that she and "Dil-dār" were one 713 (where read Ṣāliḥa).

Ṣāliḥa-sulṭān *Mīrān-shāhī*—Āq Begīm—daughter of Aḥmad and Qātāq—particulars 35 ; gifts from her wedding reach Bābur (900) 43.

Salīma-sulṭān Begīm—☞ her parentage 713.

Sulṭān **Sālīm** *Rūmī*—takes Badī'u-z-zamān *Bāī-qarā*, a captive, to Constantinople (920) 327 n. 5 ; ☞ defeats Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī* at Chāldirān (920) 443, 469 ; [†926 AH.–1520 AD.].

Ṣamad *Mīnglīghī*—wounded and dies 106 ; [†904 AH.–1499 AD.].

Mehtar **Sambhal**, slave of Shāh Beg *Arghūn* — particulars 338 n. 2 ; captured at Qandahār and escapes (913) 338 ; ☞ Commander in Qandahār and revictuals it for Shāh Beg 432.

Sulṭān **Sanjar** *Barlās Turk*, son of 'Abdu'l-lāh — incites a Mughūl revolt in Kābul (912) 313–17 ; spared on family grounds 317.

Sulṭān **Sanjar Mīrzā** *Mervī* — his daughter Bega Sulṭān Begīm's Bāī-qarā marriage (*cir.* 860) 267.

Rānā **Sangā** *Mewārī*—particulars 483, 558 n. 2 ; his capture of Chanderī 593 ; proffers Bābur co-operation against Ibrāhīm *Lūdī* (931?) 426, 529 ; fails him (932) 529 ; takes Kandār 530, 539 ; Bābur's attack on him deferred 530–1 and determined (933) 538 ; his strength and approach 544, 547 ; defeated at Kānwa 559–574 ; escapes 576 ; references to the battle 267, 533, 579, 582, 583, 599, 600, 630 n. 4, 637, 663 ; his lands not invaded, on climatic grounds 577, 578 ; Bābur's planned attack on him in Chītor frustrated (934) 598 ; his wife Padmāwatī and sons Ratan-sī and Bikramājīt *q.v.* ; his trusted man Medinī Rāo *q.v.* ; [†934 AH.–1528 AD.].[1]

Sangur Khān *Jānjūha*—waits on Bābur (925) 383 ; on service 389, 419 ; killed in a sally from Bīāna 548 ; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].

Mīr **Sar-i-barhana**, see Shamsu'd-dīn Muḥammad.

Sārīgh-bāsh Mīrza *Itārachī*—sent by The Khān (Maḥmūd) to help Bābur (908) 161, 170.

Mullā **Sarsān**—Kāmrān's messenger and custodian of Ibrāhīm *Lūdī's* son (933) 544.

[1] Concerning the date of his death, see Additional Notes under p. 603.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

GSL

Sar-u-pā *Gujūr*—Bābur's guide to Parhāla (925) 389, 391.

Satrvī Kachī—his force at Kānwa (933) 562.

Sulṭān **Sātūq-būghra Khān Ghāzī Pādshāh** (b. 384 AH.–994 AD.).—a surmised descendant 29 n. 8; his style Pādshāh 344 n. 2.

Sayyid Amīr, see Nūru'd-dīn *Chaghanīānī*.

Sayyid Dakkanī—Shāh Ṭāhir *Khwāndī Dakkani*—present at a feast (935) 631.[1]

Sayyid Daknī *Shīrāzī*, or Ruknī, or Zaknī—receives honours and orders (935) 619; on his name and work *ib.* n. 2, 634 n. 1; (see *supra*).

Sayyidī Beg Ṭaghāī, see Sherīm Ṭaghāī.

Sayyidīm 'Alī *darbān* (? Muhammad-'alī), son of Bābā 'Alī Beg—particulars 307; serving Khusrau Shāh (901) 60–1; leads the Rustā-hazāra to join Bābur (910) 196; a follower punished 197; takes Bāī-qarā service (912) 307; drowned by Badī'u'z-zamān 307–8; [†*cir.* 913 AH.–1507 AD.].

Sayyid Mashhadī (var. Masnadī)—brings Bābur news of Khwāja Raḥīmdād's sedition (935) 688.

Sayyid Mīrzā *Andikhūdī*, ? brother of Apāq Begīm—his two Bāī-qarā marriages 267.

Sayyid Rūmī—at a feast (935) 631.

Sayyid Ṭabīb *Khurāsānī*—attends Bābur's mother (911) 247.

Shād Begīm *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*—particulars 263–4; her husband 'Ādil Sulṭān *Aūzbeg q.v.*

Shādī, a reciter—his son Ghulām-i-shadī 292.

Shādī Khān *Kīwī Afghān*—fights and submits to Bābur (910) 233.

Shādmān *chuhra*—wrestles (935) 660.

Shāh Bābā *bīldār*—entrusted with building work (935) 642.

Shah-bāz *qalandar*—his tomb destroyed by Bābur (925) 377.

Shah-bāz *Qārlūq*—serving Tambal (908) 170.

Shāh Beg *Arghūn*—Shuja' Beg—son of Ẓū'n-nūn—his close association with his father 274; mentioned as with him in Qandahār (902) 71, (910) 198, 227; they give refuge to

[1] Since my text was printed, my husband has lighted upon what shows that the guest at the feast was an ambassador sent by Burhān Niẓām Shāh of Ahmadnagar to congratulate Bābur on his conquest of Dihlī, namely, Shāh Ṭāhir the apostle of Shiism in the Dakkan. He is thus distinguished from Sayyid Daknī, (Ruknī, Zaknī) *infra* and my text needs suitable correction. (See Add. Notes under p. 631 for further particulars of the Sayyid and his embassy.)

Badī'u'z-zamān *Bāī-qarā* (902) 71, (913) 307; act with the Mīrzā (903) 94, 95; favoured by Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* 264; his dominance *ib.*; proffers and renounces co-operation with Bābur against Shaibānī (913) 330, 331–2; loses Qandahār to him 337–8; ☞ released from Ṣafawī imprisonment by his slave Sambhal's devotion (917) 338 n. 2, 365; news of his taking Kāhān reaches Bābur (925) 395; his interpretation of Bābur's reiterated attack on Qandahār 365, ☞ 427; other suggestions for the attack of 926 AH. 430; ☞ action of his checks an expedition into Hindūstān (926) 428, 429, 430; ☞ his position and political relations 429; Bābur's campaign against Qandahār (926–928) 366, 430–436, App. J. xxxiv; ☞ final surrender to Bābur (928) *ib.*; ☞ his death 437, 443; his son Shāh Ḥasan, brother Muḥammad Muqīm, slave Mehtar, commissary Qīzīl *q.v.*; [†930 AH.–1524 AD. ?].

Shāh Begīm *Badakhshī*, wife of Yūnas Khān *Chaghatāī*—particulars 22–3; visited by Bābur (903) 92, (907) 149, (908) 157; delays to accept his plans 158; meets her younger son Aḥmad 159; ☞ ordered by Shaibānī to stay in Tāshkīnt 184; comes to Bābur in Kābul (911) 246; disloyal (912) 317; his reflections on her conduct 318–9; goes to Badakhshān (913) 21, 35, 341; captured by Abā-bikr *Kāshgharī*; her sons Maḥmūd and Aḥmad, her daughter Daulat-sulṭān, her nephews Sanjar *Barlās*; her grandsons Mīrzā Khān and Sa'īd (and his brothers) *q.v.*

Shāh-i-gharīb Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Ḥusain and Khadīja—particulars 261, 268; his retainer Āhī the poet 289 n. 3; [†902 AH.–1496–7 AD.—H.S. lith. ed. iii, 260].

Shāhī *qalandar*—plays the *ribāb* (925) 417.

Shāhī *ṭamghāchī*—appointed clerk (935) 629.

Shāhīm (Shāh Muḥammad ?)—sent for news (932) 454; climbs into Chanderī (934) 595 (here *yūz-bāshī*); his brother Nūr Beg *q.v.*

Shahīm-i-nāṣir—one of eight fugitives from Akhsī (908) 177.

Shāh-jahān Pādshāh *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*—☞ 184; his imitation of Bābur (1030) 298 n. 3; ☞ his work in Bābur's burial-garden 710, App. V, lxxx, [†1076 AH.–1666 AD.].

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Shāh Muhammad *muhrdār*, son of Bābā Qashqa—on Bābur's service (925) 388, (935) 688; his kinsmen *see s.n.* Bābā Qashqa; [†958 AH.–1551 AD.].[1]

Shāh-qulī *ghichakī*—a guitar-player—particulars 291.

Shāh-qulī *Kūl-ābī*—goes into Ḥiṣāt (935) 640; his brother Wais *q.v.*

Shāh-qulī, ? servant of Div Sulṭān (p. 635)—sent to give Bābur a report of the battle of Jām (935) 649; conveys from Bābur an acceptance of excuse to Ṭahmāsp *Ṣafawī* 649.

Shahrak—conveys letters and a copy of Bābur-nāma writings (935) 652, 653.

Shahr-bānū Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrīd, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Abū-sa'īd—particulars 268; married to Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (*cir.* 873) and divorced (876) 21 n. 1, 268.

Shahr-bānū Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī, (ut supra)*, daughter of 'Umar Shaikh, wife of Junaid *Barlās*—particulars 18.

Shāhrūkh Mīrza *Barlās Turk*, son of Tīmūr—mentioned in a genealogy 14; ruling in Herāt when Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* was born there (842) 256; his wazīr serves Ḥusain (after 873) 281; [†850 AH.–1447 AD.].

Shāhrukh-Sulṭān *Afshār Turk*—commands a reinforcement for Bābur from Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī* (917) 354.

Shāh Ṣufī—does well in Samarkand (906) 144.

Shāh Sulṭān Begīm (? *Arghun*), wife of Ābū-sa'īd *Mīrān-shāhī* and mother of 'Umar Shaikh—her parentage not stated 13 n. 5,[2] 45 n. 1; goes from Akhsī to Andijān when widowed (899) 32; a mediator (905) 113; her death announced (907) 149; [†906 AH.–1501 AD.].

Shāh-suwār *Mughūl*—fights in single combat (904) 106.

Shāh Ṭahir *Khwāndī Dakkanī*, see Sayyid Dakkanī.

Shāh-zāda, ? Shāh Ḥasan *Arghūn*—(926) 417, 418.

Shāh-zādā *Mungīrī*, son of Naṣrat Shāh—negociates with Bābur (935) 676 (where the note reference "5" should follow Mungir).

Shaibak *pīāda*—brings news of Hind-āl's birth (925) 385.

A **Shaibān-Aūzbeg Sulṭān's** marriage 23.

[1] For further particulars see Add. Note under p. 688.

[2] For "H.S. ii" read iii (as also in some other places).

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Muhammad **Shaibānī Khān** — Shaibāq Khān [1] — *Aūzbeg-Shaibān Chīngīz-khānid* — his relations with Ḥamza and Mahdī Sulṭāns *q.v.*; invited to help Bāī-sunghar (903) 73; raids Shīrāz 92; defeats Tarkhāns in Dabūsi (905) 40, 124, (906) 137; takes Bukhārā 125; is given Samarkand by 'Alī *Mīrān-shāhī* 125; murders the Mīrzā (906) 128; his men murder Khwāja Yaḥyā and two sons 128; loses Samarkand by Bābur's surprise attack 131, 132, 134; Bābur's comparison of this capture with Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā's* of Herāt 135; Bābur's estimate of Shaibānī's position 137–8; defeats Bābur at Sar-i-pul (Khwāja Kārdzan) 138–141; besieges Samarkand and effects its surrender (906) 142–7; receives an envoy from Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* 145; crosses the frozen Saihūn and raids Shahrukhiya 151; plunders Aūrā-tīpā 152–3; referred to (908) 158, 168; invited into Farghāna 172; defeats the Chaghatāī Khāns and Bābur at Archīān 18, ☞ 183; captures Andijān (909?) 192; beheads Walī *Qībchāq* (910) 196; takes Khwārizin (911) 242, 255–6; co-operation against him invited by Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (910) 190, (911) 255; his men beaten in Badakhshān (911–2) 294–5; takes Balkh 300; his capture of Herāt (913) 263, 275, 296–7, 325–330; besieges Nāṣir *Mīrān-shāhī* in Qandahār and retires 339–40, 343; a recognized menace to Kābul 21 n. 4; 340, 342; orders Sa'īd *Chaghatāī's* death (914) 349; ☞ murders Chaghatāī and Dughlāt chiefs 350; war begun with Shāh Ismā'īl (915) 350; defeated and killed at Merv 350; his wives Mihr-nigār *Chaghatāī*, Khān-zāda *Mīrān-shāhī*, Zuhra *Aūzbeg q.v.*; his sons Tīmūr and Khurram *q.v.*; Banā'ī his retainer (906) 136; creates a Tarkhān 133; [†915 AH.–Dec. 1510 AD.].

Shaikhī—receives gifts (935) 633.

Shaikhīm Beg, amīr and poet of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā*—particulars 277, 286; [†918 AH.–1512–3 AD.].

Shaikhīm Mīrzā *Aūzbeg*—holding Qarshī for his nephew 'Ubaidu'l-lāh (918) 360.

Shaikhīm *mīr-shikār*—loses one of Bābur's good hawks (925) 394.

Shaikhī *nāyī*, flautist in Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā's* Court—particulars 291; owed his training to Nawā'ī 272.

[1] Down to p. 131 the Ḥai. MS. uses the name Shaibānī or Shaibānī Khān; from that page onwards it writes Shaibāq Khān, in agreement with the Elphinstone MS. —Other names found are *e.g.* Gulbadan's Shāhī Beg Khān and Shah-bakht. (My note 2 on p. 12 needs modification.)

GSL

Shaikh **Sharaf** *Qarā-bāghī*—his arrest for sedition (935) 687–8.

Shaikh **Sharafu'd-dīn** *Munīrī* — his father Shaikh Yaḥyā *Chishtī* 666; his writings read aloud to Akbar 666 n. 7; [†782 AH.–1380 AD.].

Shāmī (Syrian)—deserts from Qandahār (913) 343.

Sher-afgan, brother of Tardī and Qūj Begs—on Bābur's service (933) 538.

Sher-i-aḥmad—belittled as good company (935) 648.

Sherak Beg *Arghun* (var. Sher, Sherka) — serving Muqīm *Arghūn* (910) 195; defeated and takes service with Bābur 196, 198; in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335.

Sher-i-'alī *Aūghlān*,[1] *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khanīd*—mentioned in Yūnas Khān's genealogy 19.

Sher-i-'alī *chuhra* (a brave?)—deserts Bābur (906) 129; put to death under suspicion (911) 248.

Mīr **Sher Ḥājī Beg** *Kūnjī Mughūl*—his daughter's marriage with Yūnas Khān 20 (where for "'Alī-sher" read Sher Ḥājī).

Sherīm (Sher-i-muḥammad?) *chuhra*, a brave?—defends Ḥiṣār (910) 244; killed at Qūndūz *ib.*; [†910 AH.–1505 AD.].

Sherīm Ṭaghāī *Kūnjī Mughūl*—Ṭaghāī Beg—maternal uncle of Bābur's mother—supports Bābur (899) 29, (903) 91, 98; captured by Tambal (905) 110; released 119; in Samarkand (906) 141, 143, 188; Bābur's reflections on his conduct 141, 188; thinks of leaving Bābur (910) 188; on his service 194, 197, 234; loses an index-finger 235; his post against rebels (912) 314; an opinion on game (*kiyīk*) (913) 325; in the right wing at Qandahār (913) 334, 337; counsels a retreat to Badakhshān from Kābul 340; ☞ disloyal (916) 351; heads Mughūl revolt in Ghaznī (921) 363; defeated 364, 397; takes refuge with Bābur 364; his son Tūqā *q.v.*; his (and other) abbreviated names 29 n. 2.

Sherīm Ẓikr Beg—put to death in Kābul under 'Abdu'r-razzāq (909?) 195 n. 3.

Sher Khān *Lūdī Afghān*, son of 'Ālam Khān—on his father's service (932) 455.

Sher Khān Sūr *Afghān*—Farīd Khān—Sher Shāh—favoured by Bābur (934) 652; serving Maḥmūd *Lūdī* (935) 652; co-guardian of Jalāl Khān *Nūḥānī* with Dūdū Bībī 652 n. 1, 664 n. 2; writes dutifully to Bābur 659; his training, cog-

[1] The title "Aūghlān" (child, boy) indicates that the bearer died without ruling.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

nomen and one of his marriages 664 n. 2, 659 n. 4; his victory over Humāyūn (1540) 652 n. 3.

Sher Khān *Tarkalānī*—host to Bābur (926) 424.

Sher-qulī *qarāwal Mughūl*—loyal to Bābur (912) 315; at Qandahār (913) 333, 335; rebels (914) 345.

Bābā **Sher-zād,** *see* Bābā Sher-zād.

Mullā **Shams**—very riotous (932) 453.

Sulṭān **Shamsu'd-dīn** *Āīltmīsh*[1] (*Altamsh*) of the Slave dynasty in Dihlī—his buildings in Gūālīār 610, 611; [†633 AH.–1236 AD.].

Sayyid **Shamsu'd-dīn Muḥammad**—Mīr Sar-i-barahna—particulars 280.

Shamsu'd-dīn Muḥammad—bearer of letters between Khwāja Kalān and Bābur (935) 644, 645, 649.

Maulānā **Shihāb** *mu'ammāī*—arrives in Āgra from Herāt (935) 605; invited in verse by Bābur 683; [†942 AH.–1535 AD.].

Khusrau's **Shihabu'd-dīn**—on Bābur's service (935) 689, (936) 690.

Shaikh **Shihābu'd-dīn** *'Arab*—at a feast (935) 631.

Mu'zzu'd-dīn **Shihābu'd-dīn Muḥammad** *Ghūrī*—his capital Ghaznī 217; mentioned as a conqueror of Hindūstān 479; his position contrasted with Bābur's 479–80, 481; [†602 AH.–1206 AD.].

Shāh **Sikandar**—on Bābur's service (932–3) 546; sent to Bihār (935) 664.

Sikandar-i-Filkūs—Alexander of Macedon—Badakhshī chiefs claim of descent from him 22; a surmise that he founded Samarkand 75; his supposition that the Indus was the Nile a probable root of a geographical crux 206 n. 3; [†327 B.C.].

Sulṭān **Sikandar Mīrzā** *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, nephew of Ḥusain—parentage 257; his wife Sulṭān-nizhad *q.v.*; [†908 AH.–1502–3 AD.].

Sulṭān **Sikandar** *Lūdī Afghān*, son of Buhlūl—over-lord in Bhīra (910) 382, 383; his treasure 470, exhausted (935) 617; his siege of Gūālīār 477; his capture of Jūnpūr and Dihlī (881) 481, 571 n. 5; Bābur visits his tomb (932) 476; his brother 'Ālam Khān and sons Ibrāhīm and Maḥmūd *q.v.*; ☞ his death and its date 427 and n. 3; [†923 AH.–1517 AD.].

[1] This cognomen was given because the bearer was born during an eclipse of the moon (*āī*, moon and the root *al* taking away); *see* Badāyūnī Bib. Ind. ed. i, 62.

Sikandar Shāh *Gujrātī* — his accession and murder 534–5 (where for "2nd" read 932); [†932 AH.–1526 AD.].

Siktū *Hindū*—father of Dīwa *q.v.*

Sīūndūk *Turkmān*—his hands frost-bitten (912) 311; in the centre at Qandahār (913) 335; rebels against Bābur (914) 355.

Sīūnjuk Sulṭān Khān *Aūzbeg-Shaibān, Chīngīz-khānid*, son of Abu'l-khair—☞ besieges Tāshkīnt (918) 358, 396; his son Bārāq at Jām (935) 622.

Sohrāb Mīrzā *Bāī-qarā*, son of Abū-turāb—particulars 262.

The **Spanish Ambassadors**—the place of their first interview with Tīmūr 78 n. 2.

Sulaimān—offers his horse to a wounded man (908) 175.

Sulaimān Āqā *Turkmān* — envoy of Ṭahmāsp *Ṣafawī* to Bābur (933) 540, 583; in the right wing at Kānwa 566.

Sulaimān Mīrzā *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Mīrzā Khān (Wais)[1]—☞ brought to Kābul on his father's death (927) 433 n. 1; in the right centre at Pānīpat (932) 472, and at Kānwa (933) 565; ☞ sent to govern Badakhshān (936) 697–8, 699; ☞ Bābur's protective warning to Sa'īd *Chaghatāī* 697–8 (here styled Shāh Mīrzā); on his descent 698 nn. 2, 3; meets his rebel grandson Shāhrukh (*cir.* 983) 191 n. 2; [†997 AH.–1589 AD.].

Mīān **Sūlaimān Shaikh-zāda** *Farmūlī Afghān* → reinforces 'Ālam Khān *Lūdī* (932) 456; gives him 4 *laks* 457; Bābur dismounts at his Dihlī home 476.

Malik Shāh **Sulaimān** *Yūsuf-zāī Afghān* — murdered by Aūlūgh Beg *Kābulī* App. K, xxxvi; his sons Manṣūr and Ṭāūs, his nephew Aḥmad *q.v.*

Sulṭān-bakht Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Abū-sa'īd—her daughter visited by Bābur (935) 616.

Sulṭānīm Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī* (*ut supra*), daughter of Aḥmad and Qātāq—particulars 36.

Sultānīm Begīm *Bāī-qarā* (*ut supra*), daughter of Ḥusain and Chūlī Begīm—particulars 265; arrives in Kābul (925) 397; dies on her way to Āgra (933) 265; her husbands Wais *Bāī-qarā* and 'Abdu'l-bāqī *Mīrān-shāhī*, her son Muḥammad

[1] Here *delete* "Sulṭān-nigar Khānīm", who was his grandmother and not his mother.

GSL

Sulṭān Mīrzā and grandson Aūlūgh Mīrzā (265 n. 5) *q.v.*; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].

Sulṭān Malik *Kāshgharī, Duldāī Barlās Turk* — his sons Ḥāfiz Muḥammad and Aḥmad Ḥājī Beg, his brother Jānī Beg *q.v.*

Sulṭān-nigār Khānīm *Chaghatāī Chingīz-khānid*, daughter of Yūnas Khān and Shāh Begīm—particulars 23; long parted from a half sister (907) 149; meets her brother Aḥmad (908) 159; mentioned in Bābur's reflection on disloyal kinsfolk (912) 318; writes to him from Kāshghar (932) 446 n. 2; her son Wais [Mīrzā Khān] and grandson Sulaimān *q.v.*[1]; [†934 AH.–1527–8 AD.].

Sulṭān-niẓhād Begīm *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Ḥusain and Pāpā—particulars 266; her husband Sikandar *Bāī-qarā q.v.*

Sultān-qulī and Sulṭān 'Alī, see Bābā-qulī and Bābā 'Alī.

Sulṭān-qulī *chūnāq, Mughūl*—his fidelity (904) and treachery(?) (914 and 921) 105, 109 n. 5; falls into a pit outside Kābul (910) 198; does a bold deed 236; out with Bābur (911) 252–3; rejoins Bābur from Herāt (913) 330–1; in the Mughūl rebellion at Ghaznī (921) 364 n. 1.

Sulṭān **Suyūrghatmīsh Mīrzā** *Shāh-rukhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Shāh-rukh—mentioned in his son Mas'ūd's genealogy 382.

Ṭaghāī Beg, see Sherīm Ṭaghāī.

Ṭaghāī Shāh *bakhshī*—put in charge of Shāh Beg's treasury (913) 338.

Tāham-tan *Turkmān*—particulars 279; his grandson Muḥammad-i-zamān *q.v.*

Ṭāhir Beg *Dūldāī Barlās Turk*, son of Ḥāfiẓ-i-muḥammad—joint governor of Mīrzā Khān (905) 122; feeds the famished Bābur (907) 148.

Ṭāhir *tībrī*—finds Ibrāhīm *Lūdī's* body (932) 475; surprised by Rājpūts (933) 549.

Shāh-zāda[2] **Ṭahmāsp** *Ṣafawī 'Arab*, son of Ismā'īl—☞ mentioned as reigning from 930–932 AH. 427; Bābur's envoy to him (930) returns with gifts (933) 540, 560 n. 2, 538, ☞ 712; his campaigns against the Aūzbegs (934) 618, (935) the battle of Jām 617 n. 3, 622–4 (where on p. 622 n. 1 read 935

[1] On p. 433 n. 1 her name is mistakenly entered as that of Sulaimān's mother.
[2] Concerning this title, see Add. Notes under p. 540.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

for "934"), 625 n. 4, 635–6; his own account of the battle 635–6; desires peace 639 n. 3; his envoys in Āgra 630, 632; his friendship enjoined on Kāmrān 645; [†984 AH.–1576 AD.].

Tāj Khān *Sārang-khānī Afghān*—sends Bābur news that Mahmūd *Lūdī's* army has broken up (935) 654; waits on Bābur 657; brings news which prevents hunting 658; sent on service 682; superseded in Chunār by Junaid *Barlās* 683.

Tāju'd-dīn Maḥmūd *Arghūn*—holding Qalāt for Muqīm (913) 339; waits on Bābur (925) 418.

Sultān Aḥmad **Tambal** *Itārachī Mughūl*—with Bābur at Asfara (900) 53; wounded near Samarkand (902) 67; promoted (903) 86; deserts Bābur under privation 86, 87; joins Aūzūn Ḥasan in supporting Jahāngīr in Farghāna 87–8; induces The Khān (Maḥmūd) to withdraw support from Bābur 91; his tyranny (904) 100–1; brings Jahāngīr against Bābur in Marghīnān 101; his men drubbed out of Akhsī and defeated at the ferry 101–2; loses Andijān 103; is joined by anxious Mughūls 105; takes Jahāngīr against Andijān and retires 106–7; Bābur's campaign against him (905) 108–110, 112–5; defeated at Khūbān 113; helped feebly by The Khān 115–6; opposes Bābur at Archīān 117 and at Bishkāran 118; terms made 118–9; waits on Bābur 119; his ill-influence 119, 125; makes Qambar-i-'alī prisoner 124; deserters to him 118, 125, 156; moves against The Khān (906) 145, 154; an uncle's rough comment on him 145; is sent Nūyān's sword by Bābur (907) 150–1; conspiracy against him 154; the two Khāns join Bābur against him (908) 161–176; wounds Bābur with Nūyān's sword 166–7, 396; terms with him repudiated by Bābur 169, 171; invites Shaibānī into Farghāna 172; occupies Akhsī citadel 173; left by Jahāngīr 173–174; mentioned to Bābur in the flight from Akhsī 178, 182; ☞ helped by Shaibānī 183; defeated by him and killed 244 and n. 3; a couplet of Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ's about him 289; his brothers Beg Tīlba, Khalīl, Muḥammad and Bāyazīd *q.v.*; [†909 AH.–1504 AD.].

Tāng-ātmīsh Sulṭān *Aūzbeg-Shaibān ?*—at a feast (935) 631; his descent 631 n. 4; in the battle of the Ghogrā 669.

Tardī Beg, brother of Qūj (Qūch) and Sher-afgān—in the left centre at Pānīpat (932) 472, 473, and at Kānwa (933) 565; on service 538–9, 582, (934) 590, 602; [†946 AH.–1539 AD.].

Tardī Beg *khāksār*—Bābur visits him (925) 417–8; makes verse dropping down the Kābul-river (932) 448; praises a

spring and receives a district 467, 581; returns to the darwesh-life (933) 583; conveys a gift to Kāmrān in Qandahār 583.

Tardīka—Tardi *yakka* (568 n. 1)—on service (932) 462; in the right wing [*tūlghuma*] at Kānwa (933) 568, 579; joins Bābur at Dugdugī (935) 651; on service 678.

Tardī-muḥammad *Jang-jang*, son of Muḥammad *Jang-jang*—sent into Bhīra (935) 661, 664.

Tardī-muḥammad *Qibchāq*—at entertainments (925) 386, 400.

Tarkhān Begīm *Arghūn Chingīz-khānid*, daughter of 'Abdu'l-'alī—particulars 36.

Tarsam Bahādur—punishes the Mundāhirs (936) 700–1.

Tarsūn-muḥammad Sultān—serving Humāyūn (935) 640.

Malik **Ṭāūs** *Yūsuf-zāī Afghān*—escorts his sister Mubāraka to her wedding with Bābur (925) 375.

Tātār Khān *Kākār* (or *Gakar*)—particulars 387; detains one travelling to Bābur (925) 386; killed by his cousin Hātī 387, 389; Bābur dismounts at his house in Pauhāla 390; [†925 AH.–1519 AD.].

Tātār Khān *Sārang-khānī Afghān*—Khān-i-jahān—in Gūālīār and not submissive to Bābur (932) 523; surrenders (933) 539–40; on Bābur's service (935) 582 (here Khān-i-jahān).

Tātār Khān *Yūsuf-khail Lūdī Afghān*—particulars 382, 383; his son Daulat Khān *q.v.*; [†a few years before 910 AH.–1504–5 AD.].

Amīr **Tīmūr Beg** *Barlās Turk*—Ṣāḥib-i-qirān—mentioned in genealogies 14, 256; his birthplace Kesh 83; Samarkand his capital 75, 77, 78; his description of Soghd 84; his removal of the body of Sayyid Barka to Samarkand 266 n. 4; circumambulates Shaikh Māslahat's tomb (790) 132 n. 2; and Aḥmad *Yassawī's* (799) 356; captures of Qarshī 134 n. 1; his example followed in the bestowal of Farghāna 14; his gifts of the governments of Dihlī 487 and Samarkand 85; his descendants styled Mīrzā down to 913 AH. 344; Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* the best swordsman of his line 259 and greatest in his lands 191; a descendant 567; favoured begs 19, 39; one of his old soldiers 150; a descendant effects the migration of fowlers to Multān 225; Bābur's victory where his had been at Pul-i-sangīn 352; his and his descendants rule in Hindūstān 382; their loss of lands to the Aūzbegs 340; his builders and Bābur's numerically compared 520; [†807 AH.–1405 AD.].

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Tīmūr 'Uṣmān *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*—mentioned 280.

Tīngrī-bīrdī *Bashaghī* (?) *Mughūl*—in the left wing [*tūlghumā*] at Pānīpat (932) 473.

Tīngrī-bīrdī Beg, son of Qāsim *qūchīn*—helps to beat down snow for a road (912) 308–9; in the left wing at Qandahār (913) 334, 336; his servant at Bajaur (925) 361; entertains Bābur 401; returns to his districts Khwāst and Andar-āb 403; overtakes Bābur at Jūī-shāhī 410; acts swiftly for him (932–3) 546.

Tīngrī-qūlī, a musician—plays at Bābur's entertainments (925) 385, 386, 388; upset into the Parwān-water 407; first given wine 415.

Tīrahī Sulṭān—takes a letter to Khwāja Kalān (925) 411.

Mulla **Tirik-i-'alī** (= Pers. Jān-i-'alī ?)—fights for Bābur at Bajaur (925) 368 and (on his name) n. 5; on service (933) 551 (where read Tirik).

Tīzak, son of Qūl-i-bāyazīd *bakāwal*—captured as a child and kept 4 years (910) 197.

Ṭūfān *Arghūn*—joins Bābur and so creates a good omen (913) 333.

Sayyid **Ṭufān**—on Bābur's service (932) 453.

Tūghlūq-tīmūr Khān *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*—mentioned in Yūnas Khān's genealogy 19.

Tūka *Hindū* (var. Nau-kār)—given charge of gifts for Kābul (932) 525.

Tūkhtā-būghā Sulṭān *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*, son of Aḥmad (Alacha Khān)—waits on Bābur (934) 601; at a feast (935) 631; referred to as serving Bābur 318; works magic 654; in the battle of the Ghogrā 672, 673; receives praise, thanks, and guerdon 674, 677; on service 682; [†*circ.* 940 AH.–1533–4 AD.].

Tūlik Kūkūldāsh[1]—Tambal strikes him with Bābur's sword (912) 316; defeats Aūzbegs in Badakhshān (925) 408; on Humāyūn's service (935) 640; his servant Barlās Jūkī *q.v.*

Tūlmīsh *Aūzbeg*—in the battle of the Ghogrā (935) 669; on service 678.

Tūlūn Khwāja Beg, *Bārīn Mughūl*—particulars 87; on Bābur's service (902) 66, (903) 88; killed 88; [†903 AH.–1498 AD.].

[1] He may be the Tūlik Khān *qūchīn* of the *Ma'āsiru'l-umrā* i, 475.

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · MINISTRY OF CULTURE · सत्यमेव जयते · सत्यमेव जयते

Tūn-sulṭān (var. Yūn) *Mughūl—ghūnchachī* of 'Umar Shaikh 24.
Tūqā Beg, son of Sherīm Ṭaghāī — captured by Tambal when serving Bābur (904) 106; killed as a prisoner 107; [†904 AH.–1499 AD.],

Khwāja **'Ubāidu'l-lāh** *Aḥrārī Naqshbandī* — his righteous influence in Samarkand 42; his intervention for peace between 'Umar Shaikh and kinsmen 62 and n. 1; Pashāghar once his village 97; disciples named by Bābur, Aḥmad and 'Umar Shaikh *Mīrān-shāhī*, Darwesh Beg Tarkhān, and Maulānā-i-qāzī *q.v.*; held in slight esteem by Maḥmūd *Mīrān-shāhī* 46; his family ill-treated by Maḥmūd (899) 41; dreamed of by Bābur (906) 132; his *Wālidiyyah-risāla* versified by Bābur 619–20, 468 n. 4, ☞ 604; his sons [Muḥammad 'Ubaidu'l-lāh] Khwājakā Khwāja and Yaḥya *q.v.*; [†895 AH.–1491 AD.].
'Ubaidu'l-lāh Sulṭān Khān *Aūzbeg, Shaibānī Chīngīz-khānid,* son of Maḥmūd and nephew of Shaibānī—defeats two pairs of Bāī-qarā Mīrzās (913) 263, 329–30; defeated at Merv (917) 354; defeated north of Bukhārā *ib.*; his vow and return to obedience 348, 356; victorious over Bābur at Kūl-i-malik (918) 201 n. 7, 357–8; routs Najm Ṣānī at Ghaj-davān 360–1; avenges Mughūl tyranny in Ḥisār 362; attacks Herāt (927) 434; takes Merv (932) 534, 617 n. 2; takes Mashhad (933) 534, 623 n. 3; attacked by Ṭahmāsp *Ṣafawī* (934) 618, 622; defeated at Jām (935) 622 (where in n. 1 for "934" read 935), 635–6; Ṭahmāsp's description of him 636 n. 2[1]; his wives by capture Ḥabība *Dūghlāt* and Mihr-angez *Bāī-qarā q.v.*; [†946 AH.–1539 AD.].
Rāwal **Ūdai-singh** *Bāgarī*—his force at Kānwa (933) 562; his death 573; [†933 AH.–1527 AD.].
Ūlugh, Ūlūs, see Aūlūgh, Aūlūs.
Mīr **'Umar Beg** *Turkmān*—particulars 279; his sons Abū'l-fatḥ and 'Alī Khān *q.v.*
'Umar Mīrzā *Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk,* son of Mīrān-shāh—mentioned 262 n. 3.
'Umar Shaikh Mīrzā I, son of Tīmūr—mentioned 14 (where in l. 3 for "and" read who); receives Farghāna 14; [†797 AH.–1395 AD.].

[1] Ḥaidar Mīrzā gives an interesting account of his character and attainments (T.R. trs. p. 283).

GSL

'Umar Shaikh Mīrzā II *Mīrān-shāhī*, father of Bābur—particulars 16–19, 24–28; his lands 17, 24, 50, 55, 95 n. 2, 103; Akhsī his capital 10; his ambition 12; his family relations 12; betroths Bābur 35, 120; Farghāna invaded (899) 13; his death 13, 29, 32, App. A, i, iii; his house used by Bābur (908) 172 and his tomb visited (900) 54, (908) 173; his mother Shāh Sulṭān Begīm *q.v.*; his retainers Tūlūn Khwāja, 'Abdu'l-wahhāb, Khwājakī Khwāja *q.v.*; his old tailor 30; mentioned 6; [†899 AH.–1494 AD.].

Umīd Āghācha *Andijānī, ghūnchachī* of 'Umar Shaikh—her son Nāṣir *q.v.*; [†before 899 AH.–1494 AD.].

'Uṣmān, the Third Khalif—Bābur surmised that Samarkand became Musalmān in his reign 75; [†murdered 35 AH.–665 AD.].

Mullā-zāda Mullā **'Uṣmān**—particulars 284; his birthplace Chīrkh 217.

Amīr **Wāḥid**—his tomb in Herāt visited by Bābur (912) 306; [†35 AH.–655–6 AD. ?].

Beg **Wais**—brings news from Kābul to Āgra (933) 536.

Pīr (or Mīr) **Wais**—stays with Bābur at a crisis (903) 91; released (905) 119; leaves Samarkand during the siege (906–7) 146.

Shaikh **Wais**—stays with Bābur at a crisis (903) 91; leaves Samarkand during the siege (906–7) 146.

Wais Ātāka—his canal at Kābul 200.

Wais Khān *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*, father of Yūnas Khān—mentioned 19; his sons Yūnas and Aīsān-būghā *q.v.*; [†832 AH.–1428–9 AD.].

Sulṭān **Wais** *Kūlābī*—his friendship recommended to Humāyūn (935) 627; ☞ reinforces Qila'-i-ẓafar (935 or 936) 696; his daughter Ḥaram Begīm *q.v.*

Wais *Lāgharī* **Beg** *tūghchī*—particulars 28; joins The Khān (Maḥmūd) (899) 32; safe-guards his ward Nāṣir *Mīrān-shāhī ib.*; on service for Bāī-sunghar (902) 65; waits on Bābur 66; stays with him at a crisis (903) 91; on his service (904) 98, 100, 101, 106; at Khūbān (905) 113; advises 117; plundered by 'Alī-dost 119; leaves Samarkand during the siege (906–7) 146; his son (?) Beggīna *q.v.*

Wais *Mīrān-shāhī*, see Mīrzā Khān.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Sulṭān **Wais Mīrzā** *Bāī-qarā Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Bāī-qarā II—parentage 257; his cousin and wife Sulṭanīm *q.v.*

Sulṭān **Wais** *Sawādī*—mentioned 372; sent to collect a tax he had fixed (925) 374; receives gifts and leave 376.[1]

Sulṭān **Wālāma** *Taklū*—mentioned in Shāh Ṭahmāsp's account of the battle of Jām (935) 626 n. 2.

Pīr **Walī** *Bārlas Turk*—☞ loses Sīwīstān to Shāh Beg (*cir.* 917) 429 n. 1.

Walī Beg *Barlās*—particulars 272–3; his son Muḥammad-i-Walī *q.v.*; [†973 AH.].

Walī Beg *Qībchāq Turk*, brother of Khusrau Shāh[2]—particulars 51; on his brother's service (901) 60, 64, (902) 71, (903) 93–4; mentioned (906) 129, (910) 191 by Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā*; inquired for from Khusrau by Bābur 193; defeated by Aimaqs 196; his death 51, 196; his former followers gathered together 242; [†910 AH.–1504 AD.].

Walī *khazānchī, Qarā-qūzī*—captured by Tambal in Akhsī (908) 181; in the left centre at Qandahār (913) 335; his matchlock shooting at Bajaur (925) 369; on service 391, (932) 458, 465–6, 471; in the right wing at Pānīpat 472, 475, and at Kanwā (933) 566; his ill-behaviour in the heats 524.

Walī *pārschī* (cheeta-keeper)—receives a gift (935) 633.

Walī Qīzīl *Mughūl*—rebuked (932) 453; in the right-wing [*tūlghumā*] at Pānīpat 473; made *shiq-dār* of Dihlī 476; on service (934) 601, (935) 638.

Yādgār-i-muḥammad[3] **Mīrzā** *Shāh-rukhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Muḥammad—his capture of Herāt referred to 278; his defeat by Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* at Chanārān (874) 260; his loss of Herāt to Ḥusain (875) 260, 279, compared with Shaibānī's of Samarkand to Bābur (906) 134–5; the date of his death referred to 259 n. 1; his Master-of-horse Mīr (Qambar-i-)'alī *q.v.*; [†875 AH.–1470–1 AD.].

Yādgār-i-nāsir Mīrzā *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, son of Nāṣir—gifts made to him (935) 632; [†953 AH.–1546 AD.].

Yādgār-i-sulṭān Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī* (*ut supra*), daughter of 'Umar Shaikh—particulars 18; her Aūzbeg marriage (908) 18, 356; her return to Bābur (917) 356.

[1] See Additional Note under P. 372.

[2] See Additional Notes under P. 51.

[3] Here the Ḥai. MS. and Ilminsky's Imprint add "Nāṣir".

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Yādgār Ṭaghāī—his daughter Bega Begīm *q.v.*

Khwāja **Yaḥyā,** younger son of 'Ubaidu'l-lāh *Aḥrārī*—his part in the Tarkhān revolt (901) 63 ; treats with Bābur (904) 98 ; welcomes him to Samarkand (905) 124 ; waits on Shaibānī (906) 127 ; banished by him and murdered with two sons 128, 147 n. 4 ; his house mentioned 133 ; his sons Muḥammad Zakariya and Bāqī, his grandsons 'Abdu'sh-shahīd and Khwāja Kalān *q.v.* ; [†906 AH.–1500 AD.].

Shaikh **Yaḥyā** *Chīshtī*—his tomb visited by Bābur (935) 666 ; his son Sharafu'd-dīn *Munīrī q.v.*

Yaḥyā *Nūḥānī,* at the head of Hindūstān traders—allowed to leave Kābul (925) 416.

Yaḥyā Nūḥānī (perhaps the man last entered)—waits on Bābur (935) 676 ; a grant and leave given 683 ; his younger brother (no name) 683.

Yakka Khwāja—on Bābur's service (934) 598 ; in the battle of the Ghogrā (935) 671 ; drowned 674 ; his brother Qāsim *q.v.* ; [†935 AH.–1529 AD.].

Yāngī Beg Kūkūldāsh—brings Bābur letters and gifts from Kāshghar (932) 445–6.

Ya'qūb-i-ayūb *Begchīk,* son of Ayūb—on Ḥusain Bāī-qarā's service (901) 58 ; proffers Khusrau Shāh's service to Bābur (910) 192–3.

Sulṭān **Ya'qūb Beg** *Āq-qūīlūq Turkmān*—a desertion to him 275 ; affords refuge to Banā'ī 287 ; his beg Tīmūr 'Uṣman *Mīrān-shāhī q.v.* ; [†896 AH.–1491 AD.].

Maulānā **Ya'qūb** *Naqshbandī* — his birthplace Chīrkh 217 ; [†851 AH.–1447 AD.].

Ya'qūb *tez-jang*— ☞ one of five champions defeated in single combat by Bābur (914) 349 n. 1.

Ya'qūb Sulṭān—mentioned as at Jām 636 n. 2.

Mullā **Yārak**—plays one of his compositions and incites Bābur to compose (926) 422.

Yārak Ṭaghāī (var. Yārīk)—stays with Bābur at a crisis (903) 91 ; *locum tenens* in Akhsī (905) 116 ; retaliates on Turkmān Hazāras (911) 253 ; takes charge of sheep raided by Bābur (912) 313 ; in the right wing at Qandahār (913) 334.

Yār-i-'alī *Balāl, Bahārlū Qarā-qūīlūq Turkmān,* grandfather of Bairām Khān-i-khānān—stays with Bābur at a crisis (903) 91 ; wounded (905) 109 (where in n. 5 for "father" read

grandfather); rejoins Bābur (910) 189; on his Tramontane service (932–3) 546.

Yār-i-ḥusain, grandson of Mīr (Shaikh) 'Alī Beg—waits on Bābur (910) 228; asks permission to raise a force in Bābur's name 231; kills Bāqī *Chaghāniānī* (911) 250–1.

Yārīm Beg—Yār-i-muḥammad?—on Bābur's service (913) 337.

Yilī-pars Sulṭān *Aūzbeg-shaibānī*—his brother Aisān-qulī (*q.v.*) 265.

Yisūn-tawā Khān *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid*—mentioned in Yūnas Khān's genealogy 19.

Yūl-chūq—conveys a message to Bābur (904) 99.

Yūnas-i-'alī, son of Bābā 'Alī Lord-of-the-Gate—surprised at a Tuesday's fast (925) 398; on Bābur's service 278, 468 (where read his name in l. 3) 475, 521; in the right centre at Pānīpat (932) 472, 473 and at Kānwa (933) 565, 569; has charge of Ibrāhīm's mother 543, 545; makes a garden (932) 532; in social charge of Ṭahmāsp *Ṣafawī's* envoys (935) 631; inquires into Muḥammad-i-zamān *Bāī-qarā's* objections to Bihār 661, 662; in the battle of the Ghogrā 671; at entertainments (925) 400, (935) 683; his kinsman Ibrāhīm *qanūnī q.v.*

Yūnas Khān *Chaghatāī Chīngīz-khānid,* Bābur's maternal grandfather—particulars[1] 19–24; made Khān of the Mughūls by Bābur's grandfather 20, 344 n. 2, 352; his friendly relations with Bābur's father 12; receives Tāshkint from him 13; defeats him 16; his sons Maḥmūd and Aḥmad *q.v.* and daughters 21–4; his servant Qambar-i-'alī *q.v.* mentioned 92 n. 1, 149, 565 n. 1; [†892 AH.–1487 AD.].

Khwāja **Yūnas** *Sajāwandī*—his birthplace in Luhūgur (Logar) 217.

Yūsuf-i-'alī—musician at entertainments (925) 385, 387, 388; 418.

Yūsuf-i-'alī *bakāwal*—on Bābur's service in Bajaur (925) 375.

Yūsuf-i-'alī Kūkūldāsh—made joint-*dārogha* in Herāt (911) 293; Bābur's cicerone in Herāt (912) 304; his good dancing 303.

Yūsuf-i-'alī *rikābdār*—conveys a letter concerning Hind-āl's pre-natal adoption (925) 374; receives a gift for swimming

[1] The natural place for this Section of record is at the first mention of Yūnas Khān (p. 12) and not, as now found, interrupting another Section. See p. 678 and n. 4 as to "Sections".

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

401; meets Bābur 418; (?) in Sambhal (934) 587; (?) dies there 675, 687 (here 'Alī-i-yūsuf); [†935 AH.–1529 AD.].[1]

Khwāja **Yūsuf** *Andījānī*, a musician—particulars 4.

Yūsuf-i-ayūb *Begchīk*, son of Ayūb—Bābur warned against him (910) 190; takes service with Bābur 196; winters with Nāṣir 241; leaves Bābur for Jahāngīr (911) 190, 254.

Yūsuf *badī'*[2]—particulars 289; [†897 AH.–1492].

Sayyid **Yūsuf Beg** *Aūghlāqchī*, son of Murād—particulars 39; waits on Bābur from Samarkand (903) 72; holding Yār-yīlāq for 'Alī *Mīrān-shāhī* (904) 98; dismissed from Khurāsān on suspicion 98; joins Bābur (910) 196; advises him 197; his death 241; his brother Ḥasan and sons Muḥammad-i-yūsuf and Aḥmad-i-yūsuf *q.v.*; [†910 AH.–1505 AD.].

Yūsuf dārogha of Akhsī?—interviews Bābur during the flight (908) 181–2.

Sayyid **Yūsuf** *Machamī*—particulars 118; opposes Bābur (905) 118, 117 n. 2.

Zāhid Khwāja—abandons Sambhal (933) 557; on service (935) 682; [†953 AH.–1546 AD.].

Shaikh **Zain** *Khawāfī*—verse-making on the Kābul-river (932) 448; his account of Bābur's regretted couplet 448 n. 5; goes into Dihlī for the Congregational Prayer 476; makes a garden at Āgra 532; recals a vow to Bābur (933) 553; his *inshā* on Bābur's renunciation of wine and of the *tamghā* 553–6; his *Fatḥ-nāma* of Kānwa 559–574, and chronograms of victory 575; in the left centre of the battle 565; prefers requests for Muḥammad-i-zamān *Bāī-qarā* (935) 662; invited in verse by Bābur 683; his maternal uncle Abū'l-wajd *q.v.*; [†940 AH.–1533–4 AD.].

Zainab-sulṭān Begīm—her granddaughter met by Bābur near Āgra (935) 616.

Zainab-sulṭān Begīm *Mīrān-shāhī Tīmūrid, Barlās Turk*, daughter of Maḥmūd—particulars 48; married to Bābur (910) 48, 711; [†*circ.* 912 AH.–1506–7 AD.].

Zard-rūī—on Bābur's service (935) 668, 669.

Zar-dusht ("Zoroaster")—mentioned in a verse 85.

Bībī **Zarīf Khātūn**—her daughter Māh-chūchūq 199 n. 1, 342 n. 3.

[1] The entries of 934 and 935 may concern a second man 'Alī-i-yūsuf.

[2] Perhaps skilled in the art of metaphors and tropes (*'ilmu'l-badī'*).

Zubaida Aghācha *Jalāīr*—particulars 267, 273 n. 2; [†before 911 AH.–1506 AD.].

Zubaida Khatūn, wife of Khalīfa Hārūnu'r-rashīd—a surmise concerning her 306 n. 1; [†216 AH.–831 AD.].

Zubair *Rāghī*—revolts against Aūzbeg rule in Badakhshān (910) 242, (912) 295; defeats Nāṣir *Mīrān-shāhī* 321; standing firm (913) 340; [†914 AH.–1508 AD.].

Zuhra Begī Āghā *Aūzbeg*, concubine of Maḥmūd *Mīrān-shāhī*—particulars 47, 49; intrigues disastrously with Shaibānī (905) 125–6, (906) 127–8.

Mīr Shaikh **Zū'n-nūn Beg** *Arghūn*—particulars 274–5; captures Shāl (Quetta) (884) 429 n. 1; his ward-ship of 'Alī *Mīrān-shāhī* (900) 55; imprisons Khalīfa 55; surrenders Aūrā-tīpā 56; serving Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (901) 57, 60 n. 3; becomes an ally of the rebel Badī'u-z-zamān (902) 71, (903) 94–5, 260; invited by Ḥusain to co-operate against Shaibānī (910) 190, 191; goes for refuge to Ḥusain 243; dealings with his son Muqīm 198, 227, 248; his title Lion-of-God 281; part of the coalition government in Herāt (911) 293; defeats Aūzbegs (912) 296; social matters 298, 299, 307; hears plain speaking from Qāsim Beg *qūchīn* 304; his futile opposition to Shaibānī (913) 326; defeated and killed 275, 327; his retainer Jān-aīrdī; [†913 AH.–1507 AD.].

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Index II. Geographical.

Ābāpūr (S.E. of Āgra), Babur at 642–3.

Āb-ā-qūrūq (Kābul), Bābur at 197.

Āb-burdan (Upper Zar-afshān), description of 152 ; spring and pass of 152 ; a route through 40 n. 4.

Āb-dara (Hiṣār-shādmān), Bābur takes up good ground at 353.

Āb-dara (Hindū-kush), a winter-route through 205, 242, 321, 351.

Āb-i-khān (Farghāna), Tambal in 110, 112.

Āb-i-rahmat = Qarā-sū *q.v.* (Samarkand), mentioned to locate Kān-i-gil 78, 81.

Āb-istāda (S.E. of Ghaznī) described 239 ; Bābur at 218, 239.

Abiward (Khurāsān), Anwārī's birthplace 260 n. 1.

Āb-i-yār-qūrūq (Samarkand), Bābur in 66.

Abuha or Anuha (N.W.F.P. India), limits Sawād 400.

Ābūn- or Ātūn-village (Kābul), Bābur at 407.

Ādampūr or Ārampūr-*pargana* (U.P. India), Bābur at 650, 684 ; 682 n. 1 ; location of 650 n. 3 ; 684 n. 3.

Adīnapūr (Kābul), on the Surkh-rūd 209 ; of the name 207, App. E, xxi ; a dārogha's head-quarters 208 ; the Bāgh-i-wafā near 421, 443 ; Bābur at 229.

Adūsa-and-Mūrī (U.P. India), Bābur at 645.

Afghānistān, Bābur's limitation of the name 200 ; demerits of its mountains 223.

Āgra, revenue of 521 ; 'Ālam Khān plans to attack 455–6, 474 ; estimate of Pānīpat casualties made in 474 ; submits to Bābur 523 ; exhaustion of treasure in 617 ; a military rendezvous 676 ; supplies from 685 ; hot season in 524 ; measurement of Kābul-Āgra road 629 ; water-raising in 487 ; Bābur takes oleanders to 610 ; his workmen in 520, 630, 642 ; keeps Ramẓān in 584 ; receives letters from 639 ; comes and goes to and from 478, 548, 581, 606, 686 ; others ditto 475, 526, 540, 576–8, 606, 621–4, 650 ; mentioned to locate places 529, 531 (2), 588, 597, 641, 650–8, 680.

Āhangarān (on the Herī-rūd, Khurāsān), 308 n.

Āhangarān-julgā[1] (S.E. of Tāshkīnt), Bābur at 90, 152, 161.

Ahār-passage (Ganges), Bābur's troops at 528.

Aībak, mod. Hāibak, Fr. map Boukhara, Hai-bagh (Kābul-Balkh route), Bābur at 189 ; a rebel near 546, and for location 546, n. 2.

Aikarī-yār (Kābul), Bābur's scouts fight near 196.

Aiki-sū-ārā[2] = Miyān-dū-āb = Between-the-two-waters (Farghāna) an alternative name Rabāṭik-aūrchīn 88 ; located 88, *n.* 2 ; Mughūls in 88, 105 ; Bābur in 114 ; Tambal in 116.

Ailāish- or Ailāmish-daryā, ? Qarā-daryā (Farghāna), Bābur's men defeated on, 105 ; game near 114.

Ailāk-yīlāq (Hiṣār-shādmān), Bābur at 187–8, 194.

Aīlchī (E. Turkistan), of the name 50, *n.* 2.

Aīndīkī var. (Kābul), Bābur gathers tooth-picks near 407.

'Aish-pushla (Farghāna), Tambal near 106 ; Bābur near 165.

Aitmāk-dābān (Samarkand) described 83 ; a boundary 84 ; 64 n. 1 ; 80 n. 2.

Aī-tūghdī (Kābul) position of 253 n. 3 ; Bābur at 253.

Ajar Fort (in Kāhmard, or Kahmard *q.v.* Fr. map Maimènè), Bābur's and his followers' families left in 189 ; various occurrences in 197, 243, 293 ; a plan to defend 191 ; gifts to its peasantry 633 n. 5.

Akhsī, Akhsīkīt (Farghāna), described 9 ; book-name of 9 and n. 4 ; position of 13 ; — 'Umar Shaikh's capital 10 ; exploit at 16 ; death at 13 ; — a rebel at 26 ; a death in 40 ; appointments to 32, 115 ; a notable of 110 ; a village of 171 ; a melon of 82 ; besieged 31–2, 54 ; threatened 44 ; army of, called up against Bābur 110 ; comings and goings from and to 87, 90, 101–3, 124, 161, 176, 180, 182, 183 ; river-fight below 102 ; Bābur at 54, 116, 170–1–2 ; apportioned to Jahāngīr 118–9 ; an army hostile to Bābur near 162 ; promised to Bābur 168 ; his attempt to defend 173–6 ; his flight from 176, 396 ; Shaibānī defeats the Chaghatāī Khāns near 18, 182, 351–6.

Akrīāda-*pargana* (Panj-āb), a holder of 453.

Alāī-tāgh (Farghāna), on a Hiṣār–E. Turkistān route 129 ; sub-districts of 162.

Alangār-*tūmān* (Kābul), described 210 ; a constituent of the true Lamghānāt 210 ; a holder of 241 ; Bābur in 424.

Ālā-qūrghān = Ikhtiyāru'd-dīn (Herāt), Bābur reported captive in 313 ; the Bāī-qarā households in 327 ; captured by Shaibānī 328.

Ālā-sāī-*bulūk* (Kābul), described 220–1 ; wines of 221.

[1] My text has *julgāsī*, but I am advised to omit the genitive *sī* ; so, too, in aiki-sū-ārā-sī, Rabāṭik-aūrchīn-ī *q.v.*

[2] Cf. *s.v.* Āhangarān-julga n. as to form of the name.

Alā-tāgh (s. of Qalāt-i-ghilzāī, Afghānistān), over-run 249.
Alexander's Iron-wall (Darband *q.v.* Caspian Sea), mentioned in metaphor 564; purpose of 564 n. 3.
Alexandria ad Caucasum (Kābul), site of 214 n. 7.
Alghū-tāgh var. Aūlūgh-tāgh (mid-Oxus valley), a Bāī-qarā arrival near 60.
'Alī-ābād (Samarkand), Shaibānī in 135.
'Alī-masjid (Khaibar-route), Bābur passes 394, 411–2, 450; description of its spring 412 n. 1.
'Alī-shang-*tūmān* (Kābul), described 210; a constituent of the tune Lamghānāt 210; a holder of 241; Bābur in 342, 424.
Allāhābād (India), *see* Piāg.
Almāligh (E. Turkistān), depopulation of 1; located 2 n. 1; referred to 162 n. 2.
Almār (s. of Maimènè, Fr. map), Bābur passes through, 296.
Ālmātū (E. Turkistān), depopulation of 1; located 2 n. 1; referred to 162 n. 2; * a battle near 349.
Alti-shahr (E. Turkistān), an occasional name of Yiti-kint 11 n. 6.
Alwār, Alūr (Rājpūtāna), a rebel leaves 545; an arrival from 687; mentioned to fix limits 577–8–9; gift made of its treasure 519; an appointment to 578.
Ambahar (N. W. F. P. India ?), on a suggested route 376; pass of 376.
Ambāla (Panj-āb), Bābur at 465.
'Ambar-koh (Qūndūz), a fight on 61.
Amla (Kābul), Bābur at 422.
Amrohā (U. P. India), revenue assigned of 685.
Amū-darya, Oxus, Bābur on 48, 189, 249, others on 57, 74, 193, 244, *359[1]; of Trans-Amū tribes 242; limits territory 49; *Bābur's fortunes lost beyond 426;—ferries of, Aūbāj, 93, 95 (where for Aūbāj read Chār-jūī), 110, 189, Chārjūī (which read for Aūbāj), Kilif 57, 191, Kirkī 191, Tirmīz 191.
Andar-āb (n. of Hindū-kush), a n. boundary of Kābul 200; mountains of 221; roads from 205; a holder of 403; comings through 51, 193 (Bābur's), 196.
Andarābā (Panj-āb), Bābur at 391–2.
Andijān (Farghāna), description of 3–4; the capital, sport in, pure Turkī in, climate of 4—its water 5, mountains of 15, 55, 102, 118, 125; tribes of 162; a grass of 221; its Chār-bāgh 29; celebrities of 4, 280; mentioned to locate places, etc., 4, 8, 10, 16, 113, 396; its railway 30 n. 5; given to 'Umar Shaikh I and II, 14; people of led into captivity 20, 22; Bābur its governor 29 n. 1; succeeds in it 29 attacks on 27, 30, 54, 87–8, 106–8, 161–8, 171, 192; captures of 18, 20, 89, 90, 122, 192, 244; demanded from Bābur 87, 168, 318, 351–2; Auzbeg chiefs wait on Bābur in 58; lost by Bābur 89–90, 122; his attempts to regain 92–7–8, 162–5; succeeds, 103–4, 115; proposed disposition of 118; the cause of his second exile from 105; he compares it with Samarkand 123; a raid near 164; its army on service, 48, 87, 101, 171–2; occupied by Sa'īd Khān 351–7, 362; commandants of 25, 32, 44; gifts sent to 633; comings and goings to and from 32, 58, 64, 102–3–6–8–9, 113, 145, 150, 165–8, 170, *183, 399; Bābur's comings and goings to and from 55, 66, 71, 114–9, 174; hint of another visit 358 and n. 2; (*see* Farghāna).
Andikān (Farghāna), 161 *see* Andijān.
Andikhūd (w. of Balkh, Khurāsān), fighting near 46, 260; plan to defend 191; Sayyids of 266–7–8; a commandant of 279; a traitor in 325.
Anwār, ? Unwāra (near Āgra), Bābur at 589, 641.
Āqār-tūzī (Samarkand), a battle near 34.
Āq-būrā-rūd (Farghāna), rapid descent of 5 n. 3.
Āq-kūtal (between Soghd and Tāshkīnt), a force passes 111.
Āq-qāchghāī (Aūrā-tīpā, Samarkand), a rapid message through 25.
Āq-sū (Aūrā-tīpā, Samarkand), Ahmad *Mīrānshāhī* dies on 33.
Āq-sū (Eastern Turkistān), 20 n. 5, 29 n. 5.
'Arabia, a bird of 497.
Arāt (Kābul), App. G. xxv.
Archa-kīnt (Farghāna), a road through 116.
Archīān-qūrghān (Farghāna), Tambal enters 117; scene of the Chaghatāī Khāns' defeat 117 n. 2, *182, *351 (where read Archīān for "Akhsī"), 356 (here read near Akhsī).
Argand-āb (Qandahār) irrigation off-takes of 332 n. 4, 333 n. 4.
Ārī-*pargana*, Arrah (Bihār, India), Bābur in 664–6.
Arind-water, Rind (U. P. India), Bābur on 684.
Arūpār (U. P. India), *see* Rūpār.
Arus-, Urus-, Arys-sū (W. Turkistān), a battle near 16.
Asfara (Farghāna), described 7; Persian-speaking Sārts of 7 and n. 3; a holder of 115; Bābur takes refuge in 7 and sends gifts to Highlanders of 633 and n. 4; Bābur captures 53; Bābur in a village of 123.
Asfīdūk (Samarkand), Bābur in 131–2.
Aspara or Ashpara (Mughūlistān), Abū-sa'īd *Mīrān-shāhī* leads an army to 20.
Astar-āb (e. of Pul-i-chiragh, Fr. map Maimènè), tribes in 255.
Astarābād (Khurāsān), partridge-cry in 496; oranges of 510; a poet of 290 n. 3; Husain *Bāī-qarā* and 46, 95, 259, 260, 261, 272; assignments of 61–9, 70, 94; commandants

[1] Asterisks indicate Translator's matter.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · GSL

in 272 (Nawā'ī), 275; two Bāī-qarās put to death in 262, 266.

Atak, "Attock" (on the Indus), locates Nīlāb 206 n. 3, and Bābā Walī *Qandahārī's* shrine 332 n. 4.

Atar (Kābul), located 211; Bābur at 343, 422-3.

Aūba, Ubeh, "Obeh" (on the Herī-rūd), a holder of 274.

Aūd (U.P. India), *see* Oude, Oudh.

Aūlābā-tū (Ghaznī ?), Bābur at 323.

Aūlīā-ātā (E. Turkistān), 2 n. 1.

Aūlūgh-nūr (Kābul), located 209; a route past 209; on the "nur" of the name App. F, xxiii; Bābur at 421-5.

Aūnjū- or Ūnjū-tūpa (Farghāna), Bābur at 110.

Aurangābād (Haidarābād, Dakhin, India), a grape of 77 n. 2.

Aūrā-tīpā (between Khujand and the Zarafshān, Samarkand), its names Aūrūsh and Aūrūshna 77; an alp of 25; Dikhkat a village of 149, 154; locates Khwās 17; escapes to 124, 141, 156; transfers of, to 'Umar 'Shaikh 17, to Aḥmad 27, 30, 35, to Muḥ. Ḥusain *Dūghlāt* 97; Aḥmad dies in 33; The Khān in 92; Bābur's family in 136; Bābur in 98-9, 124, 149 (2); enemies of Bābur in 152, 154.

Aūrganj or Ūrgenj (Khwarizm), a claim to rule in 266.

Aūrgūt (Samarkand), surrenders to Bābur, 68.

Aūsh, Ūsh (Farghāna), described 4; a trick of the ragamuffins of 6; course of its water 10; appointments to 32, 65; a raid near 25; an arrival from 112; fugitive to 168; dependencies of 109, 110; Tambal and 103-7, 123; Bābur's men in 114; oppression of 172; good behaviour at 176; Bābur at 108, 161-2-4-7-9 (advice to go to).

Aūtrār, Ūtrār, "Otrār" (W. Turkistān), *see* Yāngī.

Aūtrūlī, Atraulī (U.P. India), Bābur at 587.

Aūz-kint (Farghāna), refuge in planned, for the child Bābur, 29; Mughūls take refuge in 105; Jahāngīr, with Tambal, and 103, 114-6-8, 123; Bābur and 29, 108-9, 118, 161-2-9; Bābur's note on 162.

Awighūr (Farghāna), a holder of 118, 125 n. 2.

Āzarbāījān (on the Caspian), taken by White Sheep 49; cold of 219; a comer from 280; Timūr's workmen in 520.

Bābā Ḥasan *Abdāl, i.e.*, Bābā Walī *Qandahārī* (Qandahār), irrigation-channels towards 332-6; shrine of the saint near Atack (Attock) 332 n. 4.

Bābā Ilāhī (Herāt), Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* dies at 256; (*see* Fr. map Herat, Baboulei).

Bābā Khākī (Herāt), a rapid message from Farghāna to 25; an army at 326; located 25 n. 2, 326 n. 1.

Bābā Lūlī (Kābul), Bābur advances towards 315.

Bābā Qarā (Bajaur *q.v.*), spring of 371; ? identical with Khwāja Khizr 371 n. 1; valley of 367 n. 3.

Bābā Tawakkul's Langar (Farghāna), the younger Khān halts at 168.

Bābā Walī (Atak, Attock), *see* Bābā Ḥasan.

Bābur-khāna (Panj-āb), 450 n. 5.

Bāburpūr (U.P. India), Bābur at 644 n. 6.

Bachrātā var. (Farghāna), a ferry crossed near 116, 170 (by Bābur).

Badakhshān, Farghāna's s. boundary 1; Hindū-kush divides Kābul from 204; trees of 221; locates Kāfiristān 46; Kābul trade of 202; Bābur sends sugar-cane to 208; a poet of 283; Rusta Hazāra of 196; unprofitable to Bābur 480; reference to his conquest of 220; Greek descent of its Shāhs 22, 242; a series of rulers in 47-9, 208 n. 8, 243, 340, *426, *433, *697; a plan for defence of 191; Aūzbegs and 242, 294; considered as a refuge for Bābur 340; various begīms go to 21-2-4, 48; Nāsir's affairs in 242-3, 321-2; a letter of victory sent to 371; Bābur plans going to 412; Bābur and Māhīm visit Humāyūn in 426, 436; Sa'īd *Chaghatāī's* affairs with 412, *695-6; *Humāyūn's desertion of 690, 707; *offered to Khalīfa 697 and n. 1; *contingent disposition of 706.

Badām-chashma (Kābul), climatic change at pass of 208; Bābur at 229, 409, 445.

Badāyūn (U.P. India), appointments to 267, 582.

Bādghīs (Khurāsān, n. of Herāt), Aūzbegs defeat Bāī-qarās in 275; Bābur in 296, 307.

Bād-i-pich-pass, Bād-pakht ? (Kābul), a route through 209; Bābur goes through 343, 421; places an inscription in 343.

Badr-aū-*bulāk*, Tag-aū (Kābul), described 221; water of 227 n. 1; a route through 209; Bābur in 421.

Badrū-ferry (Ghogrā, Sarū); 667 n. 5.

Bādshāh-nagar (U.P. India), Bābur's visit gives the name to 678 n. 1.

Bāgar (Rājpūtāna), a holder of 573; identified 573 n. 2.

"Bāghdād," a variant for Būghdā 40 and n. 2.

Bāghlān (Qūndūz), nomads leave Kābul for 402.

Bahār or Bihār (Kābul), seat of a tribe 413; Bābur at 414.

Bahat, Bihat, Jhelum river (Panj-āb), course of 485; Bābur on 382, *441, 453; crossed in fear of him 382.

Bahraich (U.P. India), revenue of 521; locates Ghazrā crossings 669.

Bajaur (N.W.F.P. India), concerning its name 367 n. 4, 571 n. 3; once a Kābul dependency 207; wines and fruit of 372, 510-1; monkeys and birds of 492-3-4; beer made in 423; a test of women's

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

GSL

virtue in 211 ; Bābur and 367 to 370, 371–3, 377, *429 ; repopulation of 375 ; tribute of 400 ; Dost Beg's valour at 370, 397 ; Khwāja Kalān and 370, 411, 422–3 ; Bībī Mubārika left in 376 ; arrivals from 401.

Bakkak-pass (between Yaka-aūlāng and the Herī-rud valley), Bābur's perilous crossing of 309 ; an alternative pass (Zirrīn) 310 n. 2.

Baksar *sarkār* (U.P. India), revenue of 521.

Baksara (U.P. India), Bābur at *603, 660.

Balādar, Bīlādar (U.P. India), Babur at 686.

Bālā-ḥiṣār (Kābul), present site of 198 n. 4 ; (*see* Citadel).

Bālā-jūī (Kābul), maker and name of 200 and n. 5.

Ballia (U.P. India), sub-divisions of 637 n. 1, 664 n. 8, 667 n. 2.

Balkh (Oxus valley), border-countries of 76, 261, 204 ; heat in 520 ; a melon-grower of 686 ; its trade with Kābul 202 ; holders of 18, 61–9, 257, 263, 275 ; exploits at 50, 93, 270 ; Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* and 70, 191 ; Khusrau Shāh and 93–4, 110, 270 ; Shaibānī and 294–6, 300, *363 ; Kītīn-qarā and 545–6 ; 'Ubaid and 622 ; *Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī* and 359, 363 ; Muḥammad-i-zamān and *364, 385, *428 ; Bābur and 220, *359, *426–7, *442–4–5–6, 463 and n. 3, 546 n. 1, 625.

Balkh-āb, headwaters of 216 ; Bābur crosses 295.

Balnāth Jogī's hill (Panj-āb), Bābur near 452.

Bāmiān (Khurāsān ? w. of Ghūr-bund, Kābul), mountains of 215 ; how reached from Kābul 205 ; Khusrau Shāh and 96 (where for "Qāsim" read Kāmal ; Bābur and 189, 311, *351, 409.

Bām-valley (Herāt), a *laṅgar* in 308 n. 1 ; Bābur in 296, 297 n. 1.

Banākat, Fanākat = Shāhrukhiya (Tāshkīnt) 2 n. 5, 76.

Banāras, Benares (U.P. India), crocodiles near 502 ; threatened 652–4 ; Bābur near 657.

Banas-river (India), course of 485.

Bāndīr, Bhander (C. India), a fruit of 507 ; Bābur at 590–8.

Band-i-sālār Road (Farghāna), Bābur on 55, 116.

Bangarmāwū, Bangarmau (U.P. India), Bābur near 601.

Bangash *tūmān* (Kābul), described 220, 209, 233, 405 ; a holder of 27, 252 ; plan of attack on 229, 231–3, 382.

Bannū plain (N.W.F.P. India), a limit of Kābul territory 200 ; a waterless plain near 234 ; date of the modern town 232 n. 5; Bābur and 218, 231–2, 382, 394.

Bānswāra (Rājpūtāna), an old name of 573 n. 1.

Banūr (Paṭiāla, Panj-āb), Bābur on (Ghaggar) torrent of 464.

(The) Bar (Panj-āb), 380 n. 4.

Baraich (U.P. India), *see* Bahraich.

Barak or Birk (? N.W.F.P. India), mentioned as between Dasht and Farmūl 235.

Barakistān, Birkistān (Zurmut, Kābul), a tomb in 220 ; ? tongue of 207.

Barā-koh (Farghāna) described 5 ; position of 5 n. 2.

Bāramūla (Kāshmīr), a limit of Sawād territory 372 n. 3.

Bārān-sū,[1] Panjhīr-sū (Kābul), affluents to 210–1 ; the bird-migrants' road 224 ; migration of fish in 225 ; bird-catching on 228 ; routes crossing 209, 342 ; locates various places 207 n. 5, 215, App. E, xvii ;—passers along 195, 242 ; Bābur and 254, 420, *see* Koh-dāman.

Bārān *wilāyat* (Kohistān, Kābul), Bābur in 253, 320, 405.

Bāra (N.W.F.P. India), road of 411 ; Bābur fords the water of 230.

Bārī (Rajpūtāna), hills of 486 ; hunting-grounds in 509 n. 2 ; Bābur at 509, 585.

Bārik-āb (affluent of the "Kābul-river"), Bābur on 409, 414, 446.

Bast, Bost, Bust (on the Helmand, Afghānistān), Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā's* affairs at 94, 260.

Bastam ('Irāq), a w. limit of Khurāsān 261 (where read Bastam) ; captured 622.

Bateswār (U.P. India), ferry of 643 n. 3.

Bāzār and Tāq (India), *see* Dasht.

Bāzārak (Hindū-kush), described 205.

Beg-tūt (Kābul), earthquake action near 247.

Benares (India), *see* Banāras.

Bengal, Bangala (India), particulars of the rules and customs in 482 ; envoys to and from 637, 640, 665 ; army of 663 ; Bābur at ease about 677, 679 n. 7 ; traversed by the Ganges 485 ; a bird of 495 ; fruits of 504.

Between-two-waters (Farghāna), *see* Aīkī-sū-ārā.

Betwī-river, Betwa (C. India) described 597.

Bhānder (C. India), *see* Bāndīr.

Bhīlsān (C. India), Sangā's 483, Bābur's plan against 598.

Bhīra (Panj-āb), history of 382 ; revenue of 521 ; tribes of 387 ; Balūchīs in 383 ; locates places 379, 380, 381 ; limit of Lūdī Afghān lands 481, and of Bābur's in Hindūstān 520 ; servants from 616, 678 ; arrivals from 228, 391, 419 ; local soldiery 389, 539, rhinoceros in 490, Bābur and 377–8, 382–3–7, *429, 478 ; he stays in the fort of 384 ; safeguards people of 383, 478 ; sends prisoners into 461 ; summons by Māhīm of an escort from 650 ; a governor 386–8, 392–9.

Bhūjpūr (Bihār, India), Bābur at 662.

Bīah-sū, Beas (Panj-āb), course of 485 ; Bābur crosses 458.

[1] Bābur uses this name for, Anglicé, the Kābul-river as low as nearly to Dakka.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Bāna, Bayāna (Rājpūtāna), mountains in 486; red-stone of 532, 611; water-raising in 487; a dependency of 563; locates places 539, 613; disaffection to Bābur of 523–9; taken 530–8, 540–5; a gun made to use against it 537; praise of its soldiers 548, 550; an appointment to 579; asked for 613; Bābur at 577, 581; his workmen in 520; revenue from assigned to support his tomb *709.

Biānwān *pargana* (U.P. India), assignment on 540.

Bībī Māh-rūī (Kābul), Bābur at 314.

Bīgrām, Bīkrām (Panj-āb), four ancient sites so-named 230 n. 2; Bābur at 230, 394, 450–1.

Bihār (India), a limit of Afghān lands in Hind 480–1, and of Bābur's 520; revenue of 521; Bābur and 639, 656, 677–9; an assignment on 676; mentioned as if Bābur's 561; Muḥammad-i-zamān and 661–3–4; an earlier Lūdī capture of 675; a dīwān of 661.

Bihiya (Bihār, India), Bābur at 662–7 n. 2.

Bih-zādī (Kābul), Bābur at 398, 416–8; wine fetched from 417; 19th century vinegar of 417 n. 2.

Bijānagar, Vijāynagar (Dakhin, Deccan, India), a ruler of 483.

Bilādar (U.P. India), *see* Balādar.

Bilah (Panj-āb), Bābur at 237.

Bilkir? (Kābul), Bābur at 420.

Bilwah ferry (Ganges), Bābur at 658.

Bimrūkī *pargana* (Panj-āb), a holder of 453.

Birk and Birkistān, *see* Barak.

Bishkhārān (Farghāna), good fighting at 28; Bābur at or near 117–8, 170.

Bīsh-kint (on the Khujand-Tāshkint road), Tambal at 145, 154; Bābur at 151.

Bī-sūt (Kābul), Bī-sūtīs migrated to Bajaur 375.

Bolān-pass (Balūchistān), *Shah Beg's entrance to Sind 429.

"Bottam" (? débouchement of the Zar-afshān), a word used by Ibn Hankal 76 n. 6.

Būdana-*gūrūg* (Samarkand), described 82; Bābur at 131 (here Quail-reserve).

Buhlūlpūr (Panj-āb), Bābur at 454.

Bukhārā (Transoxiana), described 82; w. limit of Samarkand 76 and of Soghd 84; deficient water-supply of 77; trade with Kābul 202; wines of 83; melons of 10, 82; bullies in 7; Bābur sends sugar-cane to 208; various rulers of 35, 38, 112; governors in 40, 52, 121; taken by Shaibānī 125; various attacks on 63–5, 124, *356–7–9, *454, *359, *360; Bābur's capture of 21, 704 n. 3; Mahdī Khwāja and 704 n. 3; various comings and goings from and to 62–3–4, 135, 534.

Būlān (Kābul), a route through 209.

Būlī (Rājpūtāna), revenues of 521.

Burhānpūr (C. India), Bābur on water of 592–8.

Burh-ganga (Old Ganges), its part in the battle of the Ghogrā 667 n. 2; 674 n. 6, 667 n. 2.

Būrka-yīlāq (Aūrā-tīpa *q.v.*), Bābur at the fort of 92, 124.

Busāwar (Rājpūtāna), Bābur at 548 (where read Busāwar) 581.

Bū-stān-sarāī (Kābul), Bābur at 251–4.

Bū-stān-sarāī (Samarkand), 62; Bābur at 74, 134.

Būt-khāk (Kābul), damming of its water 647; Bābur at 409, 446 n. 4.

Buz-gala-Khāna (Samarkand), *see* Aitmak-dābūn.

Chāch, *see* Tāshkint.

Chachāwalī (U.P. India), Bābur at 649.

Chach-charān (on the Herī-rūd), a holder of 274; Bābur at 308.

Chaghānīān (Hiṣar-shādmān), located 48 n. 5; an earlier extension of the name 188 n. 4; Nūndāk dependent on 471; a meadow (*aūlāng*) of 129; a ruler in 47; Khusrau Shāh at 93; Bābur in 188.

Chāghān-sarāī *bulūk*, Chīghān-sarāī (Kābul), described 212; water of 211–2; name of 212 n. 2; a governor of 227; Bābur's capture of 211 (where for "920" *read* 924), *366–7 n. 3.

Chahār *see* Chār.

*Chak-chaq pass (Hiṣār-shādmān), Bābur traverses 359.

Chāldirān (Persia), cart-defence in the battle of 469 n. 1.

Chambal-river (C. India), course of 485; Bābur on 509, 585–9, 607, 614; Shāh-i-jahān pours wine into 298 n. 3.

Champāran (Bihār, India), revenue of 521.

Chanārān (n.w. of Mashhad), Husain *Bāiqarā's* victory at 260; located 260 n. 1 and Ferté *q.v.* p. 39 n. 2).

Chandāwal (Bajaur, N.W.F.P.), of its name 367 n. 3; torrent of 372; Bābur hunts near 372.

Chandawār, Chandwār (U.P. India), correct name of 642 n. 8, water-raising in 487; comings and goings from and to 531, 552, 582; Bābur at 589, 642–3; he loses it 557, 581.

Chandīrī (C. India), described 582–3–6; hills of 486; death of a holder of 573; mentioned to fix dates 269, 483, 605; Bābur's capture of 589, 590–2–4–8.

Chapar-kuda (U.P. India), identity with Chaparghatta 650 n. 1; a start from 659 n. 5; Bābur at 650.

Chār-dār *col* (Hindū-kush), 204 n. 4.

Chār-dih plain (w. of Kābul-town), the Kābul-river traverses 200 n. 4; *overlooked from Bābur's tomb 710.

Chārikār, Chār-yak-kār (Kābul), altitude of 204 n. 4; name of *ib.* 295 n. 1; Judas-trees of 216 n. 3.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

Index II. Geographical

GSL

Chār-jūī ferry (Oxus), 95 (where "Aūbāj" is wrong).

Char-shamba = Wednesday (Oxus valley *see* Fr. map Maimènè), 71 n. 2.

Chār-sū (Samarkand), an execution in 196.

Chār-yak (Fr. map Maimènè), over-run 295, 94 (where for "San-chīrik" *read* San and Chār-yak).

Chashma-i-tūra pass (Kābul), Bābur at 403–4.

Chāsh-tūpa (Kābul), Bābur at 320.

Chatsū (Rājpūtāna), revenue of 521.

Chā-tū var. Jāl-tū (Kābul), Bābur at 228.

Chatur-mūk (U.P. India), a Ghogrā-crossing at 669, 677.

Chaupāra (N.W.F.P. India), an Indus ferry at 206; a limit of Bannū 233; Bābur near 234.

Chaupāra (U.P. India), ferry of 677–9.

Chausa (Bihār, India), a death at 273 n. 3; Bābur at *603, 659, 660.

Chausa or Jūsa (C. India), Bābur at 581.

Chīchik-tū (Balkh-Herāt road), located 300; Bābur at 296.

Chihil-dukhtarān (Farghāna), 107, 162; (Herī) 296, 301; (Kābul), 107 n. 1.

Chihil-qulba (Kābul), Bābur hunts near 420.

Chikmān-sārāī (Andikhūd, Oxus valley), a defeat at 46, 260, 268.

Chīn, China, Kābul trade with 203; a Chīnī cup 407; [for "Chīna" *see* Khitāī].

Chīn-āb, Chān-āb, tract and river (Chen-āb, Panj-āb), course of 485; the Bar in 380 n. 4; a Turk possession 380–2; Bābur resolves to regain 380; he on the river *441, 453; envoys to him from 386; his family reach 659; an appointment to 386.

Chīna-qūrghān (Kābul), Bābur at 407.

Chīnīūt or Chīniwat (Panj-āb), a Turk possession 380–2; Bābur resolves to regain 380.

Chīrāgh-dān (Upper Herī-rūd), Bābur at 309; *see* Add. Note p. 309 for omitted passage.

Chirkh (Kābul), described 217; a mullā of 284; a soldier of 669, 678.

Chīr-sū, Chīr-chik (Tāshkint lands), Ahmad *Miran-shāhī's* disaster at 17, 25, 31–4–5.

Chitr (Panj-āb), Bābur at 645.

Chitūr, Chitor (Rājpūtāna), hills of 486, Bābur's plan against 598; Rānā Sangā's 483, 617.

Chunār (U.P. India), advance on 652–4; arrival from 657; appointments 682–3; Bābur at 658; road measured from 659; question of identity 682 n. n.

Chūpān-ātā (Samarkand), 72 n. 3, 76 (Kohik), 76 n. 4; Bābur crosses 124; [*see* Kohik].

Chūtiālī (Dūkī, Qandahār), Bābur at 238–9.

Cintra (Portugal), oranges of 511 n. 4.

Citadel (*arg*) of Kābul, 201; Bālā-hiṣār 198 n. 4; —of Samarkand, 77; position of 78 n. 6; Bābur in 134, 141.

Dabūsī (Samarkand), Aūzbeg victories at 40, 124, 137.

Dahānah (*see* Fr. map Maimènè), corn from 295; traversed 194–7, 243, 295.

Dakka (Kābul), App. E. xx; [*see* note to Bārān-sū].

Dakkan, Dakhin, Deccan (India), rulers in 482; ? Daknī = Dakkanī 619, 631, Add. Note pp. 619, 631.

Dāman (N.W.F.P. India), *see* Dasht.

Dāmghān (Persia), a w. limit of Khurāsān 261; Bāī-qarās captured in 263; Aūzbegs defeated at 618, 622.

Dandān-shikan pass (Khurāsān), Bābur crosses 294.

Dara-i-bām (Badghīs, Khurāsān), Bābur in 296.

Dara-i-gaz (s. of Balkh), a recal from 14.

Dara-i-Ghāzī Khān (Panj-āb), 233 n. 3.

Dara-i-khwush (Kābul), Bābur in 27, 251–3.

Dara-i-nūr (Kābul) described 210; unique character of 210, 241, App. F; wines of 210, 410, App. G, xxv; monkeys of 211, 492; name of App. F, xxiii, xxiv; a holder of 227, 344; attacked 241; Bābur in 422.

Dara-i-pūr-amīn (Kābul), Bābur at 342 (where for "anīm" *read* amīn).

Dara-i-ṣūf (Khurāsān), character of 222.[1]

Dara-i-zang (Khurāsān), defence for planned 191.

Dara-i-zindān (Kābul-Balkh road), mountains of 222; located 189 n. 6; Bābur in 189.

Darband (Caspian Sea), 564 n. 5.

Darband-i-ahanīn (Hiṣār-shādmān), a limit of territory 47; a name of Qulūgha, Quhqa, 194; *Bābur at 353; Najm Ṣāmī near 359.

Dar-i-gham canal (Samarkand) described 76, 84; Bābur on 124–5; (*see* Kohik-water).

Darūta (Kābul), Bābur at 421–2.

Darwāza (Bājaur? N.W.F.P. India), a road through 376.

Dasht (Plain), Dāman, Bāzār and Tāq (N.W.F.P. India), names of 229 n. 1, 233 and n. 1; (Mehtar Sulaimān) mountains of 223; limits Bannū 233; a route through 206; Bābur and 229, 235–7, 394.

Dasht-i-shaikh, Kurrat-tāziyān (Kohistān, Kābul) described 215.

Dāwar (Kohistān, Kābul), Bābur at 421; perhaps Dūr-nāma 421 n. 5.

Dhār (C. India), observatory in 79.

Dibālpūr (Panj-āb), revenue or 521; water-wheels in 486, 532; commandants in 442–3, 463; Bābur captures 208, *441, 575–8.

Dih-i-afghān (Kābul), a rebel in 345; a goer to 402.

Dih-i-ghulāmān (Kābul), Bābur at 413.

Dih-i-yaq'ūb (Kābul), narrows of 200; water of 241; Bābur at 409, 445.

[1] "The Dara-i-ṣūf, often mentioned by the Arabian writers, seems to lie west of Bāmiān" (Erskine, *Memoirs*, p. 152 n. 1).

Dihlī, mountains of 485 ; the capital of Hindūstān 463 ; a Lūdī possession 481 ; revenue of 521 ; Mīwāt and 577 ; 'Ālam Khān and 455-6 ; Ibrāhīm marches from 465 ; Sangā gives Bābur rendezvous near 529 ; Bābur takes possession of 475 ; appointments to 476 ; submissive 523 ; mentioned as Bābur's 561 ; Khwāja Kalān's inscription in 525 ; an arrival from to Bābur 526 ; treasure of 583, *695 n. 1, 617.
Dikh-kat (Aūrā-tūpa, Samarkand), described 149, 152 ; an arrival in 151 ; Bābur in 149, 150, 633 n. 4.
Dīlmāū var. (U.P. India), comings and goings from and to 534-7, 681-4 ; variants of name of 681 n. 3.
Dīn-kot, Dhānkot (N.W.F.P. India), location and name of 206 n. 6 ; limit of Koh-i-jūd 380 and of Bannū 233 ; routes through 206, 399.
Dīrapūr (U.P. India), Bābur in 649.
Dīrī pass (Kābul), a route through 209.
Diyūl (Samarkand), allies of Bābur in 138.
Dizak (Samarkand), Bābur a fugitive in 148 ; a governor of 26.
" Doāb," *see* Miyān-dū-āb.
Dū-āba (U.P. India), Gangetic changes in 667 n. 2.
Dugdūgī (U.P. India), Bābur at 651-2.
Dūghāba river (Khurāsān), head-waters of 216.
Dūkī (Qandahār), mountains of 223, 236 ; Bābur in 218, 238, 382.
Dūlpūr, " Dholpur " (Rājpūtāna), mountains of 486 ; Ibrāhīm *Lūdī's* begs in 593 ; Bābur and 520, 552, 585, *603-6, 614, 634-5-9, 659 ; accounts of work in 606, 634, 642 ; a view from 610.
Dūn (Jaswān, Panj-āb) ; 'Ālam Khān in 457 ; Bābur in 461-2.
Dungarpūr (Rājpūtāna), old name of 573 n. 1.
Dūr-nāma or -nama't (Kohistan, Kābul), described 215 ; Bābur at 420 ; (*see* Dāwar).
Dūrrīn- or Dūrrīn-tangī (Kābul), a limit of Shāh-i-Kābul 200, 417.
Dū-shamba (Badakhshān), Humāyun at 621.
Dūshī (n. of Hindū-kush), Khusrau Shāh submits to Bābur at 51, 191-5.

Egypt, *see* Miṣr.
Etāwa, Itāwa (U.P. India), hostile to Bābur 523-9, 530 ; appointments to 530-3, 579, 582 ; comings and goings from and to 541, 645, 689 ; Bābur at 644, 686.

Faizābād (Badakhshān), *? Bābur and Māhīn at 436.
Fakhru'd-dīn-aūlūm (Balkh-Herāt road), Bābur at 296 ; (*see* Fr. map Maïmènè).
Fanākat, Banākat = Shāhrukhiya (Tāshkint), passed by the Sīr-daryā 2 ; identity of 2 n. 5, 7 n. 5.
Fān-tāgh (Hisār-shādmān), Lake Iskandar in 129 ; Bābur in 130.
Fārāb (W. Turkistan ?), a mullā of 643.
Farāghīna (Farghāna), Bābur at 168.
Farghāna mog. Kokand, description of 1 to 12 ; extent of 2 n. 3 ; included in Transoxiāna 76 ; Alps of 223 ; nick-name of 289 ; winter-route into 2, *183 ; capitals of 3, 10, 162 ; an e. limit of Samarkand 76 ; Kābul trade of 202 ; celebrities of 4, 7, 76, 90, 289 ; 'Umar Shaikh's (I and II) 14-7, 24 ; Bābur succeeds in 1, 29 ; invasions of 13, 20-9, 54, *183 ; proposal to dispossess Bābur 168 ; an arrival in 28 ; an exit from 190 ; Bābur's loss of 19 n. 1, *183 ; Bābur's leaving 187 ; (*see* Andijān).
Far-kat (n. of Kindīr-tau *q.v.*), a refugee in 149 ; a mullā of 343 ; reached from Ghawā (Farghāna, Fr. map, Gava), 179.
Farmūl *rūmān* (Kābul), described 220 ; a s. limit of Kābul 200 ; Urghūn in 206 n. 2 ; roads through 206, 231-3-5 ; Shaikh-zādas of 220, 679 n. 7.
Fathpūr (U.P. India), Bābur at 643, 686.
Fathpūr or Nathpūr (U.P. India), a dependency of 680 ; lake of 681.
Fathpūr-Aswa (U.P. India), Bābur at 651.
Fīrūzābād (U.P. India), 643 n. 3.
Fīrūz-koh (Ghūr-Kābul road), Bābur on 365.
Fīrūzpūr (-jhirka ; Gurgaon, Panj-āb), described 580 n. 1 ; Bābur at 580.
Fulūl (Badakhshān), Khusrau Shāh and 60 ; Mughūls from, join Bābur 192 (where *read* Fulūl).

Gagar, Ghaggar, Kakar river (Patiāla, Panj-āb), Bābur visits and describes 464-5 ; called *rūd* (torrent) of Banūr and Sanūr 464.
Gagar, Kakar (U.P. India), a constituent of the Gogrā, Ghogrā *q.v.* ; the word Gagar or Kakar used 602.
Gamb(h)īr-water (India), Bābur crosses 606.
Gandak river (India), course of 485 ; defence of 663.
Gandamak (Kābul), Bābur at 394, 414, 446.
Gang-river, Ganges (India), course of 485 ; changed course of 667 n. 2, 674 n. 6-7 n. 2, 682 n. 1 ; bridged by Bābur 495, 599, 633 ; lands and chiefs east of 523, 628, 638, 651 ; various crossings made of 530, 544, 583-7, 598, 669, 681-4 ; Bābur on 598 to 665, 666-7 ; a battle-station east of 371 ; Bābur swims 603-5, 655, 660.
Garm-chashma (Kābul), Bābur at 229, 411, 448.
Garm-sīr (S. Afghānistān), *432 ; a bird of 495.
Garzawān (Khurāsān, Fr. map Maïmènè, Ghourzistan), mountains of 222 ; locates a place 69 ; a plan for defence of 191 ; Bābur at 296 (where mis-spelled " Gurzwān ").

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

Index II. Geographical

GSL

Gau or Kau-water (Kābul), Kāfiristān the source of 210.
Gawār or Kawār (Kābul), position of 210.
Ghain (Kābul), a punitive force against 253.
Ghaj-davān (Bukhārā), *besieged 360; *battle of 361, 279: a fugitive from 363.
Gharjistan, Ghurjistān (Khurāsān), mountains of 222; Bābur near 308; Muhammad-i-zamān in 365.[1]
Ghawā (Farghāna, Fr. map, Gava), Bābur seeks the road to 179, 180–1–*2.
Ghāzipūr (U.P. India), crocodiles of 502; an assignment on 527; a holder of 669; threatened 544, 680; Bābur at 659; his boats sent to 679.
Ghaznī = Kābul and Zābulistan, Ghaznīn (Kābul); describes 217, 321; a N.W. limit to Hindūstān 481; cold of 219, 526; game in 224; no honey from 203; firewood of 223; highwaymen on road to 228; wines of, taken to Hindūstān 461, 551; repairs of a dam at 219, 646; a route to 206; locates Zurmut 220; a Shāhrukhī's 382 (here Kābul); Aūlūgh Beg and 95 n. 2; Dost Beg buried at 396; various governors of 227, 253–4, 307, 343–4, 363, 397, 525; not subjected to Bābur (912 AH.) 300; rebellion in (912 AH.) 363; Khwāja Kalān and 447, 526; Bābur and 199, 228, 239, 240, 330, 526.
Ghūr (Khurāsān), mountains of 222; w. limit to Kābul 200; road from Kābul to 214; a holder of 274.
Ghurām (Panj-āb), an assignment of 525.
Ghūr-bund *tūmān* (Kābul), described 214; Nīl-āb (Naulibis) in 206 n. 3; roads from 205; a tulip of 215; Bābur in 195, 294, 314.
Ghārī (Khurāsān), position of 409; a route through 94; corn from 295; a failure in 546.
Ghurjistān, *see* Gharjistān.
Ghwāliri pass (on the Gūmāl *q.v.*, India), a surmised route through 235 n. 2.
Gibrik or Kibrik (Kāfiristān), people of 207.
Gingūta (Panj-āb), described 462; an occupation of 457.
Girdiz (Kābul), head-quarters in Zurmut 220; tribesmen on road to 228, 403; a road for 405; locates a place 403; Khwāja Kalān's 525; Tang-i-waghchān a name for its pass 403 n. 1.
Gogrā, Ghogrā, Gagar, Kakar river (U.P. India), *see* Sarū.
Gosfand-liyār (n. of Bannū-plain), a sheep-road travelled by Bābur 233.
Goshta (Kābul), 206 n. 4.
Gūāliār, Gwālior (C. India), described 607 to 612, 613–4; Bābur's building in 520; hills of 486; revenue of 521; forms of the name 486; ruler of killed at Pānīpat 477; hostile to Bābur 523–9 (where add "Gūāliār" after Dūlpūr, l. 4 fr. foot), 539; assigned 539; gained 540; reinforced 547, 557; Bābur's visit to 605, 552, 607 to 614; on envoy from 612; sedition in 688–9, 690, *692 n. 1.
Gūī-water, Gumtī (U.P. India), course of 485 (where for "Gumti" *read* (Bābur's) Gūī); Bābur on 601, 658, 683–4.
Gujrāt (Panj-āb), a tree of; a ruler in 481; affairs of 534–5.
Gūk-sarāī (Samarkand), described 41 n. 2, 63, 77; ascension-stone in 77 n. 5; a Mīrzā sent to 41.
Gul-i-bahār (Kohistān, Kābul), described (without name) 214–5; fish-catching in 226, Bābur at 320–1, 406–7.
Gūmāl valley and river (N.W.F.P. India), Bābur and 235–6.
Gumbazak pass (Khurāsān); *see* Fr. map Maimène), Bābur at 294.
Gumhaz-i-chaman (Farghāna), Bābur at 176.
Gūra-khattrī (Panj-āb), Bābur and 230, 294.
Gurgān-sū (s.e. of the Caspian), Husain *Bāī-qarā* swims 259, 260 n. 6.
Guzar var. (Qandahār?), Bābur at 332.

Hā-darwesh waste (Farghāna), described 9, 9, 151; *birthplace of Bābur's legendary son 358 n. 2.
Haft-bacha pass (Hindū-kush), described 205.
Hājī-ghāt pass (Hindū-kush), turns Hindū-kush 205 n. 2.
Hājīpūr (Bihar, India), Bābur and 674; a governor of 663 n. 6.
Hājī-tarkhān = Astrakhān (on the Caspian), a chief of 258.
Haldī-guzr (U.P. India), location of 668 n. 2, 669 n. 1, 671 n. 1; Bābur's men cross 668–9, 675.
Halwā-chashma (Khurāsān), a victory at 260.
Hamadān (Persia), a saint of 211; *a soldier of 700.
Hamtātū pass (Panj-āb), Bābur crosses 381.
Hangū (N.W.F.P. India), Bābur at 231–2.
Harmand-, Halmand-river (Afghānistān), source of 216; a drowning in 307.
Hārū, Kacha-kot water (Panj-āb), Bābur crosses 379, 452; an Indus-ford near 206 n. 5.
Hash(t)-nagar (N.W.F.P. India), a limit of Kābul 200; desolate 207; rhinoceros in 490; birds of 497, 500; locates a place 376; Bābur advised to raid 410–1.
Hasht-yak (W. Turkistān), Bābur near 151.
Hātya (Panj-āb), limit of a clan 452 n. 5.
Hazāra-sp (Khwārizm), a holder of 50.
Herī, Herāt (Khurāsān), description of 304 to 306; Husain *Bāī-qarā's* birthplace 256, conquest of 134, splendid rule in 273, ease in 261, feast in 264, delay of a

[1] Bābur's itinerary gives Gharjistan a greater eastward extent than the Fr. map Maïmène allows, thus agreeing with Erskine's surmise (*Memoirs* p. 152 n. 1).—The first syllable of the name may be "Ghur".

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

pilgrim in 284, reception of fugitives 243, burial in 293;—joint-rule in 293, 326; weakness before Aūzbeg attack on 296–9, 326;—Shaibānī's capture of 207, 326–8–9;—Ismā'īl *Safawī's* capture of *350–5;—'Ubaidu'l-lāh *Aūzbeg* and *434:—'Alī-sher *Nawā'ī* in 4, 271, 286–7; Banā'ī and 286–7; *Shāh Beg and 365, 429, 430; Khwānd-amīr and *432, 605; fugitives from 331; governors of 24, 37, 274 (Koh-dāman), 275, *633; envoys to Bābur from *436; a Begim comes from 267: Maṣ'ūma brought from 330; Bābur at 300–1–2, 302 to 307; his marriage with Māhīm in *704;—locates a place 25; fixes a date 258.

Himār or Khimār (? Khurāsān), a passer through 260.

Hind, Hindūstān, Hindustānāt—a northern limit of Kābul 200; routes between it and Kābul 206; a journey to Makka made from Kābul through 26; trade and traders 202, 331, 416; Jats and Gujūrs in 454; a saint honoured in 238; a rāja of 219; comings and goings to and from 250, 265, 267, 368; Khwānd-amīr in *432, 605 and n. 6;—Astronomical Tables in 79; names for outside places used in 202; gold from 446; titles in 537; building style in 609; greetings in 640; mentioned by Bābur in a verse 584; Hind-āl named from 385; of Biānā in 529; of the Betwa 597;—a seemingly limited use of the name Hindūstān 386; of its three names used by Bābur, Hind 26, 219, 385, 525, 532, 577, 577 n. 6, 578, Hindūstānāt 485, Hindūstān usually;—Hindūstān the Less (?) 46 and 46 n. 4;—Lūdī rise in 383; Lūdī possessions in 463, 480; Ibrāhīm's accession in 385; *torn by faction 439; envoys to Bābur from *426, *436; Bābur's comments on its chiefs 219, 385, 459; Farmūlī ascendancy in 220; begs in 387; armies in 547;—Timūr's conquest of 382; his employment in Samarkand of workmen from 77; pictures of his victories in 78; tradition of a soldier in his army of 150;—Bābur's persistent wish to regain Turk possessions in 340, 377, 380–1–2, 478–9; working-out of his desire for *426: varied opposition to his aims 478; *his five expeditions to:—

910 AH.—39, 229, 382;
925 AH.—378 *et seq.*, 478, 480;
926 AH.—*428, *429; its frustration *429, *430, *441;
930 AH.—575, *442; its frustration 442;
932 AH.—*444, 445, 479;—

one start frustrated in Kābul 913, AH. 341–3; 'Ālam Khān asks and obtains help in *439, *441, 455; Daulat Khān proffers allegiance *440; *Bābur's prayer for a sign of victory *440; his fifth expedition fixes dates 269, 545; indications that only the fifth aimed at Dihlī *429, *444, 480; his decisive victories, at Pānīpat 475, at Kanwā 574; references to his conquest 220, 561; some of his Begs wish to leave 524–5, 579, 584; his Hindūstān poems 642, App. Q; his case in and hints at leaving 617, 645, 686; his family brought to 646, 686;—the **Akbar-nāma* chronicles no public events of 936–937 AH. in 682; *Bābur's journey to Lāhor (936 AH.) may point to his leaving Hindūstān 707; *Humāyūn's arrival in 696, 707; *on Bābur's intended disposal of Hindūstān 702 to 708; *burial of his body in 709 and later removal from 709–710;—Bābur's description of Hindūstān 478 to 531, *viz.*:—Introduction, on earlier Tramontane expeditions into 478 to 480, boundaries and capital of 480, rulers in 932 AH. 481, varied climate, character of and northern mountains 484; rivers and Arāvallī range 485; irrigation 486, other particulars 487,—mammals 488, birds 493, aquatic animals 501, fruits 503, flowers 513;—seasons of the year 515, days of the week 516, division of time 516, weights and measures 517, modes of reckoning 518;—Hindūs in 518;—defects and advantages of 518–9, 531, 532, revennes 520–1.

Hindū-kush mountains, n. boundary of Kābul 200–4; connected ranges 210, 380; called Hindū-kush in Kābul 485; account of their prolongation in Hind (*i.e.* Himālayas), 485; roads and passes of 204–5; the clouds a hindrance to bird-migration 224; limits of territory fixed by 47–9, 194; an episode on 270 *Bābur's crossing 930 AH. 442.

Hiṣār-firūza (Panj-āb), revenue of 521; given to Humāyūn 465, 466, 528; opposition near 540.

Hiṣār (-shādmān; Transoxiana), mountains of 222; clans from 228; Kābul trade with 202;—Abā-bikr and 51; Mahmūd and 47–9; Mas'ūd and 52, 64, 71, 93–5, 261; Bāī-sunghar and 52, 61, 96, 110–2; Husain and 48, 57–8–9, 61, 130, 191, 260–3, 275; Bābur traverses 128, 130, 187–8, moves for *352, takes 37, 262, *352–3, defends *358, 471, attacked in 345, *361–2, leaves 362–3;—Mughūls leave 58 and rebel 105; goers to 104, 141; Shaibānī and 192, 244, *362; abandoned by the Aūzbegs 622–4; Khusrau Shāh and *see s.n.*; *threefold catastrophe in 362; Humāyūn ordered to attack 625; Qāsim *qūchīn* and 66; a governor in 46–7; occupied for Bābur 640.

Hormuz (Persia), Farghāna almonds imported to 9.

Hūnī (Kābul), Bābur at 405.

Ūpiān pass, Ūplān (Kābul), Bābur crosses 195 ; locates a place 647 n. 3.
Urur (Panj-āb), taken from Bābur 464.
Ushtār (Farghāna), a subdivision of Asfara 7 ; Bābur a refugee in 7, *181 ; his gifts to envoys from 633.

Ilyāk-sū, Kāfirnighān (Hisār-shādmān), locates a place 48 n. 5.
Indri (U.P. India), an arrival at 456.
Indus, *see* Sind-daryā.
'Irāq (Persia), Kābul trade with 202 ; various captures of 49, 51, 280, 336 ; envoys to and from 540, 583, 666 ; other comings and goings from and to 20, 46, 260–2–8 ; 275, 282–7, 291–4 n. 3, 622 ; Bābur's gifts to kinsfolk in 522.
'Iraqain, *i.e.* 'Irāq-i-'ajam and 'Irāq-i-'arabī, places noted for cold in 219.
'Irāq-pass (n.w. of Kābul), a presumed crossing of 294 n. 3.
Irij or Irich (C. India), Bābur at 590.
Ishkimish (Qūndūz ?), not in Badakhshān 288 ; on a named route 321 ; military action at 60, 192, 243.
Ispahān (Persia), a governor of 635 n. 6.
Istālif (Kābul), described 216 ; a garden at 246 ; fishing at 226 ; Bābur at 246, 406, 416–8.

Jagdālik pass (Kābul), Bābur crosses 229, 341, 414.
Jahān-namā fort (Bhīra, Panj-āb), Bābur in 384 (where for "nūma" *read* namā).
Jahān-namā hill (Dihlī district), 485.
Jahān-namā'ī (Kābul), Bābur at 421 ; *see* Jūī-shāhī.
Jajmāū or Jajmāwa (U.P. India), rebels in 533 ; a submission near 534.
Jakin *pargana* (U.P. India), Bābur in 644.
Jālandhar (Panj-āb), an appointment to 442.
Jalīsar, Jalesar (on the Jumna, U.P. India), Humāyūn at 531 ; Bābur at 589, 640 (in both places *read* Jalīsar).
Jalīsar, Jalesar (on the Ghogrā, U.P. India), Bābur at 681 ; perhaps Chaksar 681 n. 4.
Jālmish (w. frontier, Kābul), 205 n. 2.
Jāl-tū var. Chā-tū (Kābul), Bābur at 228.
Jām, mod. Jām-rūd (N.W.F.P. India), Bābur at 229, 230, 412.
Jām (Khurāsān), Hātifī's birthplace 288 ; how marked in maps 623 n. 8, *714 ; Jāmī the cognomen of Maulānā 'Abdu'r-rahman *q.v.* ; Aūzbeg defeat near 622 n. 1, 625 n. 4, 635, 636 n. 2, details as to location of the battle 623 n. 8, 635 n. 4.
Janāra or Chanāra (U.P. India), rebels take refuge in 682 ; not identified 682 n. 1.
Janglīk (Kābul), Bābur at 251–3, 311–4 n. 1.
Jaswān-dūn (Panj-āb), described 462 ; Bābur in 461–3.
Jaunpūr (U.P. India), *see* Jūnpūr.
Jauz-wilāyat (Khurāsān), 46 n. 3.
Jihlam, Jilam, Jhelum (Panj-āb), Bābur near 453 ; *see* Bahat for Jhelum river.
Jūd mountains (Panj-āb), *see* Koh-i-jud.
Jūduk (Samarkand), Bābur at 147.
Jūī-shāhī (Kābul), Bābur at 229, 394, 410, 422 ; (*see* Jahān-namā'ī).
Jumandnā, mod. "Jumoheen" ? (U.P. India), Bābur at 649.
Jūn-river, Jumna (India), course of 485 ; locates a place 532 ; a drowning in 532 ; Bābur on or crossing 467, 475, 531, 605, 616, 638–9, 640, 650–5, 684–6 ; he bathes in 644 ; orders his officers to cross 684 ; in flood 685.
Jūnahpūr, Jūnapūr (U.P. India), an old form of Jūnpūr or Jaunpūr 676 n. 4 ; used by Bābur 276 (where read it for "Jaunpur"), 544, 636, 676, 682 ; *see infra* Jūnpūr.
Jūnpūr, Jaunpūr (U.P. India), water of 658 ; formerly a Sharqī possession 481 ; revenue of 521 ; taken by Humāyūn 544 ; an assignment on 527 ; appointments to 276, 538, 544, 676, 682 ; arrivals from 636, 667.
Jūrgha-tū (Kābul), *see* Qūrgha-tū.
Jūsa or Chausa (C.P. India), Bābur at 581.

Kābul town and country, description of 199 to 227,—position and boundaries 199, 481, town and environs 200, fort 201, 344, bridges 198, 314, 417, trade 202, climate 77, 201–3, 223, 314, 584, snow in 208–9, 223, 314, dividing line between hot and cold climates 208, 220, 229, fruits 202, 510, cultivated lands 243, meadows 204, Hindū-kush roads 204, Lamghānāt roads 201, Khurāsān road 205, Hindūstān roads 205, 206 n. 3, 231, 308, 629; highwaymen 205, 341, peoples 207, 221, subdivisions 207 to 221, dependencies 214–5, revenue 221, mountain-tracts 221, firewood 223, fauna 223, 496–8, bird-catching 224, fishing 225 ;—rivers of, Bārān *q.v.*—Kābul, Luhūgur (Logar) ; *garm-sīl* 208, 484 ; unfitness for nomads 228, 402 ; use "Hindū-kush" in 485 ; use of "Kābul" in Agra 532 ; a mullā of 284 ; — given to 'Umar Shaikh 14 ; Aūlūgh Beg *Kābulī* and 95 and n. 2 (where "2" should follow "Mīrzā" and not "son") ; *185 ; Abābikr and 260 ; 'Abdu-r-razzāq and 195 ; Muqīm *Arghūn* and 195, 198–9, 227 ; Khusrau Shāh and 192 ;—Bābur's move to win it 7, 189, 191–7 ; his capture of 198–9 ; dates fixed, by the capture of, 19 n. 1, 21, 26, 39, 48, 227, 251, 274, 282, 377, 383, 394, and by his possession of 27, 529 ; a sequel of its capture 243 ; reserved by him for himself 227, 227 n. 3, 627, 645–6 ;—his comings and goings to and from 27, 229, 241, 248–9, 294, 323, 325, 330, 339, *350, *363–4–5, 389, 395,

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · MINISTRY OF CULTURE · सत्यमेव जयते

403–4, 5–7–8, 415–18–19, 441–2–3; other comings and goings 51, 196, 228, 321, 349, 364–5, 385, 399, 531, 539, 544, *696, 687, 699; men sent to 343, 413, 466, 476; various Begims arrive in or leave 36, 306, 339—265, 397—21—264—267—269—606, 616; family journey from 646–7, 650–5–7–8, 686–7–9 n. 5; followers delay to go to 307; *landless men in 706; excess levy of grain on 228; its *sir* (weight) 632; officers in 250, 270, 273, 382, 646 n. 3; newly-made begs of 458, 524;—anxiety for 300, 307; disloyalty in 313–320, 331, 345; *tranquil 349; *Mughūls of 357; of its troops 375, 550, 579, 625;—Bābur in it the last ruling Timūrid 340, *427; envoys to him in *439–440, *441, 529; his poverty in 525; learns the word *sangūr* in 232; family affairs in *603–4;—letters of victory sent to 371, 466, 580; other letters to and from 374, 541, 618, 639, 644–5, 6; gifts 463, 523, 642; Bābur's seeming intention of return to 698 n. 5, *705–6–7; his chosen centre *705; the taking of his body to *709–10; his burial-garden and grave *710–11.

Kābul-water, Nil-āb a name of 206 n. 3; fords of 206, 345, 411; App. E xvii, xix, xx; Bābur on 451.

Kābud (Soghd, Samarkand), 73; 98.

Kacha-kot (Panj-āb), a holder of 250; Bābur crosses water of (Hārū) 379, 403, 452.

Kachwa (C. India), described 590; Bābur at 590–2.

Kāfiristān, mountains connecting with its own 480; former extent of 212 n. 3; borderlands of 210–1–2; wines of 211–2, 372; highwaymen of 205, 214; a *ghāzī* raid into 46.

Kahadstān (Herī), Bābur at 305; Shaibānī at 329.

Kāhān (Sind, India), Shāh Beg's capture of 398, *430–3.

Kahlūr (Simla Hill-state, India), taken for Bābur 464; *its Rāja visits him, 692–9.

Kāhmard or Kalmard (Kābul-Balkh route, Fr. map Maimènè), a plan for defence of 191; a governor in 409, 546 n. 2; exposed to Aūzbeg attack 409; various occurrences in it 239, 250, 295; Bābur in 48, 189; households left in 189, 194–7; Bābur loyal to Jahāngīr in 190, 239; he sends gifts to peasants of 633; (*see* Ajar).

Kahrāj (N.W.F.P. India), Bābur at 373–4.

Kakar river (N. India), *see* Gagar, Ghaggar.

Kālābāgh (Panj-āb), locates Dinkot 206, n. 5.

Kalānjar (Panj-āb), perverted allegiance of 387 (where in n. 3 *delete* the second sentence).

Kalānjar (U.P. India), revenue of 521; Mahuba a dependency of 685 n. 3.

Kalānūr (Panj-āb), a governor of 442; Bābur and 451–8.

Kalda-kahār (Panj-āb), described 381; Bābur at 381–9, 391.

Kalpī (U.P. India), revenue of 521; elephants in 488; dependencies of 649, 686; locates places 544, 590, 659; hostile to Bābur 523; Bābur in 590; boats from 598, 684.

Kālpūsh (Khurāsān), 622 n. 3.

Kāma *bulūk* (Kābul), described 213; water of 211.

Kamarī (Kābul), meadow of 204; Bābur at 244; (on the Indus), Bābur at 230.

Kām-rūd valley (Hisār-shādmān), a flight through 58; Bābur in 129–30.

Kanār ferry (Jumna U.P. India), Bābur at 589, 590–8.

Kān-bāī (Samarkand), locates places 52, 64; Mahmūd (Khān) at 53, 111.

Kandār, Kuhandār (Rājpūtāna), besieged by Sangā, surrenders 530–9.

Kand-i-badām (Farghāna), described 8, locates a place 20; a governor of 115; passers through 44, 172; Bābur at 92, *358 n. 2 (a legendary visit).

Kandla or Kūndla (U.P. India), revenue of 521; an assignment on 679.

Kāngra (Panj-āb), a "Bajaur" north of 511 n. 3.

Kānhpūr, "Cawnpore" (U.P. India), 649 n. 7.

Kanigūram (Dasht-Kābul route), 235 n. 2.

Kanwā, Kanwāha (Rājpūtāna), Bābur's victory of 549, 557 to 574, 523 n. 3.

Kanwāhīn (Panj-āb), Bābur at 458.

Karal (Panj-āb), Bābur at 464.

Karā-sū, Qarā-sū ? (Kābul), a tribe on 413.

Karg-khāna, *see* Sawād.

Kark ? (Kābul), Bābur at 395.

Karmān ('Irāq), surrenders 51; an intruder in 260.

Karmā-nāśā river (Bihār, India), ill-repute of 659; Bābur on 659–60.

Kar-māsh mountain (Kābul), located 403; Bābur near 403–5.

Karmina (Samarkand), mentioned as a *wilāyat* 84.

Karnāl (U.P. India), *Bābur at 701.

Karnān (Farghāna), a village of 161; locates place 162, 168 (where in section heading for "Kāsān" *read* Karnān); a *dārogha* of 179–80; Bābur and 179,* 182.

Karrah (U.P.I.), a dependency of 651; Bābur at 652.

Karrah-Mānikpūr (U.P. India), revenue of 521; elephants in 488; Humāyūn near 544.

Kāsān (Farghāna), described 10; fixes a date 28; a raid near 26; a departure to 32; a holder of hostile to Bābur 170; Bābur at 104, 116.

Kāshghar (E. Turkistān), an e. limit of Farghāna 1, of Samarkand 76; a border tribe of 55; *Kāshghar–Farghāna road 183; trade with Kābul 202, Andijānī captives in 20 n. 3; rulers in 21, 29 n. 5, 32–7, 318, 415, 427, 695–6; Mughūls in *184, 351, 364; arrivals from 399, 415–6;

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

GSL

Bābur's kinsfolk in 21–4, 318, 409, 522; a devious journey through 399; a return from 408, and to 590.
Kashmīr, mountains of 380–7, 481; a bird of 494; lost dependencies of 484; Bābur on name of 484, *sends an expedition to 692–3–8 n. 5, 701. Additional Note p. 693.
Kātlāng (N.W.F.P. India), Bābur at 377.
Kattawāz-plain (Ghaznī ?), torrent of 240; Bābur in 323–5.
Kawārī-water (C. India), Bābur crosses 607, 614.
Kechef-dara (Khurāsān), leads down to Mashhad 622 n. 3.
Kesh = Shahr-i-sabz (Samarkand), described 3, 83; a blinded refugee in 95; Banā'ī dismissed to 136; an arrival from 137; Bābur and 123–8, 138.
Keshtūd (Hiṣār-shādmān tract), Bābur at 130.
Khaibar-mountains (Kābul), route through 206; crossings of 250, 260, 492; Bābur's crossings of 229, 382, 411–3.
Khairābād (U.P. India), revenue of 521; Bābur's army at 583.
Khākān-ʿāriq (Farghāna), Bābur on 165–7.
Khalīla (Soghd, Samarkand), Bābur at 148.
Khalishak (Qandahār), a water-head 332; Bābur at 333.
Khamalangān (Badakhshān), a holder of 242.
Khamchān (Badakhshān), military move to 321.
Khān-yūrtī (Samarkand), described 82; Bābur at 67–8, 82, 124, 131.
Kharābūk (Farghāna), Bābur near 163–8.
Kharbīn (s.e. of Ghaznī), 323 n. 3.
Kharī (U.P. India), Bābur at 580.
Kharīd *pargana* (on the Sarū = Ghogrā), formerly on both banks of the river 561 n. 2, 664 n. 8, 674 n. 6; present limits 637, n. 1; position of town of 679 and n. 1; a (now) Bihār pargana of 674; Humāyūn plunders 544; capture of mentioned 561; Bābur's man in 637; position of its army opposing Bābur 664, 676 n. 5.
Khartank (Samarkand), a celebrity of 76.
Khasbān plain (Farghāna), Bābur crosses 124.
Khaṣlar (W. Turkistān), Bābur at 151.
Kawāk road (Hindū-kush), 205; height of its pass 204, n. 4.
Khawāl-i-qūtī (*see* Zirrīn pass), Bābur in 309.
Khinjan (n. of Hindū-kush), roads to 205.
Khirgird or Khirjard (Khurāsān), Jāmī's birthplace 623, n. 8; battle of Jām fought near 623, 635.
Khirs-khāna (Kābul), Bābur passes 417.
Khitāī = N. China, a caravan from 15; porcelain, etc. from 80, 157–9, 160; trade profits in 202. [N B.—For all instances Bābur's word is Khitāī and not "China".]
Khozār or Khūzār (Samarkand), mentioned as a *wilāyat* 84; lost by Aūzbegs, 135, 359.
Khūbān or Khūnān (Farghāna), approx. site of Bābur's first ranged battle 113.
Khujand var. (Farghāna), described 7; not counted by all as in Farghāna 17; locates a place 55; holders of 35, 115; Aḥmad *Mīrān-shāhī*, takes 30; surrender to Bābur of 53; Bābur's first marriage made in it 35, 120; he in it 89, 90–1–2; a "poor place" 97–8; he halts in a village of 100; his legendary transit of 358 n. 2; a follower's compulsory journey to 124.
Khujand-water, Saihūn, Sir-daryā, *see* Saihūn.
Khūlm (Kābul-Balkh road, Fr. map Bokhara), vine-culture in 210 n. 6; places on its river 546 n. 2.
Khūqān (Farghāna), an arrival at 44; Bābur at 161.
Khurāsān, Khurāsānāt (219), Hindustānī use of the name 202; Kābul roads from 205, 300; Kābul trade with 202, 225; melons and oranges of 203, 510, compared with Kābul Koh-dāman 216; *hammāms* in 79; medical practice in 246; refined manners of Khurāsānīs 303; nomads of 221; *enforced migration of Mughūls to 351; — Maḥmūd *Ghaznawī* and 479; Abū-saʿīd's Cadet Corps of 28, 50, App. H, xxvi, xxvii; Yūnas Khān in 20; Abā-bikr defeated in 260; Maḥmūd expelled from 46; Masʿūd "did not stay in" 95 (where add the quoted words, l. 12, after "service"); Badīʿu'z-zamān returns to 70; Ḥusain *Bāi-qarā* and 57, 94, 259–60–80–3; Bābur and 185–7–8, 255, 285–6, 295, 300, 330–2; Maʿsūma in 36, 339; — troops of 61, 296; dismissals to 98, 128, 194–7, 319, 320; comings and goings from and to 15, 194, 197, *243, 264, 270, 331, 363; distinguished men of 280–2–4, 291; Bābur's kinsfolk in 246, 253, 522, 617; a verse well known in 328.
Khūrd (Khwurd)-Kābul (Kābul), wild asses in 224; river-dam of 647; Bābur in 341.
Khurram (Kābul-Balkh route), traitors to Bābur near 546 (Fr. map Maimènè, Khouram).
Khūsh-āb (Panj-āb), Abā-bikr in 260; Bābur regards it as his own 380–2; Balūchīs in 383; an enemy to 383–4, 388; a governor of 388; a fugitive through 399.
Khutan, Khotin (E. Turkistān), Ailchī the capital of 50 n. 2; Gūrkhān a title of rulers in 84 n. 2; a ruler in 32.
Khutlān (Hiṣār-shādmān territory), river and alps of 60, 222; a saint's burial in 211; a ruler and holders of 47, 58, 93, 191–6; Bābur's victory in 18.
Khwāja ʿAbdu's-ṣamad (Kābul), 201.
Khwāja Basta (Kābul), a water-course near 647.
Khwāja Bikargān (Farghāna), water of 99 n. 4.
Khwāja Changal (Tāhqān), 61; located 60 n. 4.
Khwāja Chār-tāq (Qūndūz) 244.
Khwāja Didār (Samarkand), Bābur's winters in 73–4; Shaibānī near 130–1–5; Bābur passes 147.
Khwāja Ḥasan (Kābul), Bābur passes 398, 418.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · GSL

Khwāja 'Imād (Hisār-shādmān), Bābur at 188.
Khwāja Ismā'īl *Sīrtī* (s.e. of the Kābul territory), mountains of 223; Bābur at 323–4.
Khwāja Kafshīr (Samarkand), escapes by 62, 144.
Khwāja Kārdzan var. Kardzīn (Samarkand), 65, 128; Shaibānī at 138.
Khwāja Khāwand Sa'īd (Kābul), wines of 203, 215.
Khwāja Kitta (Farghāna), Babur at 165.
Khwāja Khizr (N.W.F.P. India), Bābur at 372–6.
Khwāja Khizr's Qadam-gāh (Kābul), 201, 407?.
Khwāja Khizr's Mosque (Samarkand), 142.
Khwāja-rabāt (Samarkand), 73, 97, 127–8, 130–1.
Khwāja Raushānā'ī's *Chashma* (Kabul), 201.
Khwāja Reg-i-rawān (Kohistān, Kābul), described 215; Bābur at 420.
Khwāja Riwāj (Kābul), rebels go to 245, 345.
Khwāja Rustam (Kābul), Bābur near 447.
Khwāja Shahāb (Kābul), Babur at 418.
Khwāja Shamū's tomb (Kābul), 201.
Khwāja Sih-yārān (Kābul), described 216; names of the "Three friends" 216, n. 4; Bābur at 398, 405–6–20.
Khwāja Zaid (n. of Hindū-kūsh), Bābur at 195.
Khwās (Samarkand border?), 'Umar Shaikh defeated at 17, 34; located 17 and n. 1.
Khwārizm = Khiva, w. limit of Samarkand 76; and northern of Khurāsān 261; cold in 219; Mahmūd *Ghaznawī's* over-rule in 479; Chīn *Sufī* defends 242, 255–6; Khusrau Shāh's head sent to 244; a Bāiqarā refugee in 397; governors of 256, 274; Muhammad *Sālih* of it 289 n. 4.
Khwāst, "Khost" (n. of Hindū-kush), mountains of 221; name and character of 221 n. 4; a mullā of 368; Mīr-zādas of 412; comers and goers from and to 399, 403, 196 n. 5; piety of Khwāstīs 523 n. 1; *Māhīm Begīm's connection with 714; Bābur at *363, 408.
Kilā-gāhī (n. of Hindū-kush), a fugitive through 321.
Kilirah ? (U.P. India), Bābur at 680.
Kilīf ferry (Oxus), Husain *Bāi-qarā* and 57, 191.
Kindīr-tau, Kurāma (Farghāna's n.w. border-mountains), 8 n. 5, 11 n. 6; — Kindīrlīk pass, when open 2 n. 4, *183; distinguished 116 n. 2; The Khāns and 90, 161, 172; Bābur crosses 54, 90, 161.
Kind-kir (Kābul), described 424; (*see* Masson, iii, 193).
Kintit (U.P. India), identified 657 n. 2; Bābur at 657.
Kirkī ferry (Oxus), 191.
Kishm (Badakhshān), Āūzbeg defeat at 295; Humāyūn near 621, 624 n. 1; ? *Bābur winters in (919 AH.), 362.
Kisrī-tāq (below Bāghdād), height of 83.
Kitib or Kib (Panj-āb), an appointment to 393.
Koel, Kūl, Kūil (U.P. India), *see* Kūl.
Kohat (Panj-āb), Bābur in 218–31–33–50, 382–94.
Koh-bacha (var. ?a common noun; Kābul), tooth-picks gathered on 407.
Koh-dāman (Herāt), an appointment to 274.
Koh-dāman (Kābul), described 215 to 217; Bābur on 320, 405, 416, 420.
Koh-i-jūd, Salt-range (Panj-āb), described 379; places connecting with 381, 452; a note of Erskine's on 380 n. 2.
Koh-khūrāj (U.P. India), Bābur at 653.
Kohik, Chūpān-ātā *q.v.* (Samarkand), described 76 n. 4; gardens on 78, 80; bounds a meadow 82; Bābur near 72.
Kohik-sū = Zar-afshān (Samarkand), course and name 76, 76 n. 4; bounds a meadow 82, and a *tūmān* 84; suggested drowning in 128 n. 2; Bābur and 64, 130–1; swims it in flood 140.
Koh-i-nūr, Rocky-mountain (Kābul), *see* Kūnār.
Koh-i-safed, Spīn-ghūr (Kābul), described 209; Pushtū name of 209 n. 2; App. E, xvii, xix, xx.
Kohistan (Badakhshān), begs of 296; — (Kābul), villages of described 214 and n. 7; a *tūmān* of 213; *rara awis* of 213 n. 7.
Kohtin mountains (s. of Samarkand), limits possessions of territory 47.
Kūfīn (Samarkand), 65.
Kūkcha-sū (Badakhshān), 321.
Kūl, Kūil, Koel (U.P. India), a governor of 176; Bābur's building-work in 520 (here Kūil), his envoy to 526, loss of 557, 576, visit to 586–7.
Kūl-āb (Badakhshān), a chief of 627 n. 2, *696.
Kula-grām (Kūnār, Kābul), Bābur at 423.
Kuldja (E. Turkistān), Almaligh the former capital of 2 n. 1; *The Khāns escape after defeat by its road 183 (where *read* Kuldja).
Kul-kina or Gul-kīnā (Kābul), a place of revel 200–1, 395.
Kūl-i-malik (Bukhārā), Bābur defeated at 40, *357.
Kūnār with Nūr-gal (Kābul), described 211; is Koh-i-nūr (Rocky-mountain), the true name of, App. F, xxiii, xxiv; torrent of 212; beer made in 423; peacocks in 493; a test of woman's virtue in 212, governors in 227, 344; Bābur in 343, 376, 423.
Kundī (Lamghānāt, Kābul), *see* Multa-kundī.
Kūndih or Kūndbah (Bihār, India), Bābur at 674–7, 687 n. 5 (where read the name as above).
Kūra pass (Kābul), divides the hot and cold climates 220; Bābur at 421.
Kūrarah (U.P. India), Bābur at 651.

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · MINISTRY OF CULTURE · सत्यमेव जयते

Index II. Geographical

Kardān-dabān (Farghāna), 5 n. 3.
Kūfa (U.P. India), Bābur at 651.
Kurrat-taziyān (Kābul), *see* Dasht-i-shaikh.
Kusār (U.P. India), Bābur at 652.
Kushan (Persia), locates Rādagān 622 n. 4.
Kūtila (Panj-āb), Bābur gains 462 ; strength of 463.
Kūtila-lake, mod. Kotila-jhil (Gurgaon, Panj-āb), Bābur at 580 and n. 1.
Küy-pāyān, Low-lane (Samarkand), 146.

Lāhūr, Lahor (Panj-āb), revenues of 446, 521 ; snows seen from 485 ; water-wheels of 486, 532 ; locates Siālkot 429 ; Daulat Khān and 382–3, *428, *441–2–3, 451 ; Bābur's envoy detained in 385 ; 'Alam Khān and 444, 455–8 ; Bābur's begs in 443, 453–4 ; sedition in 688 ; *Bābur's visit to (936 AH.) 604 n. 1, *692–3–7–8–9, 707 ; Māhīm and 650–9 ; * taken by Kāmrān (where for "935" *read* 938).
Lak-lakān (s. of Tāshkint), a hostile meeting at 145.
Laknau, Lakhnau, Luknau, "Lucknow" (U.P. India), a bird of 495 ; abandoned by Bābur's men 594 ; Bābur at 601 ; ? Biban and Bāyazid approach it 677 ; ? news of capture of 679 and n. 2, 681 ; variants in name of 677 n. 3, 678 n. 1, 682 n. 6, App. T ; *see* Luknūr.
Lamghānāt *tūmān* (Kābul), described 207–13 ; true use of the name 210 ; classification of 200 ; a tūmān of 318 ; mountains of 222 ; tribes in 229, 242 ; fruits of 203, 424, 510–1 ; birds of 494–5, 500 ; fishing in 226 ; routes into 206–9 ; locates 208, 211 ; Bābur in 414–19–21–*29 ; (*see* Lamghān).
Lamghān *tūmān* (Kābul), the name of 200 n. 1, 210 ; a fruit and tree of 508 ; limits a tribe 341 ; Bābur's retreat to 21, 340 ; Bābur in 407–14–19–21–*29.
Lār (Persia) a native of 284.
Laswaree, Battle of (1803 AD.) 578 n. 1.
Lāt-kint (Farghāna), Bābur at 108.
Lawāin (U.P. India), Bābur at 656.
Lombardy (Italy), wine culture in 210 n. 5.
Luhūgur, mod. Logar (Kābul), described 217 ; Chirkh its one village 217 ; a celebrity of 184, 217 ; vine culture in 210 n. 6.
Luknūr (Rāmpūr, U.P. India), revenue of 521 ; besieged by Biban 582 ; ? approached by Biban and Bāyazid 677 ; ? news of its capture 679 and n. 2, 681.

Macha (Upper Zar-afshān), located 149, 152 ; 'Alī *Mīrān-shāhī* takes refuge in 55 ; Bābur in 27, 67, 152–3.
Macham (Farghāna), a foot-hill 118, 125 n. 2.
Madan-Banāras, Zamania (U.P. India), Bābur at 658.
Madīna (Arābia), Bābur sends gifts to 523.
Mādu, Māzū (Farghāna), Bābur takes 109.
Madhākūr (U.P. India), Bābur at 548, 616 (where read as here).
Maghāk-pul (Samarkand), Bābur at 68, 132.
Mahan (Farghāna), Bābur at 123.
Mahāwīn (Muttra ; U.P. India), not submissive to Bābur 523.
Mahūba (U.P. India), rebels take flight to 685, 682 n. 1.
Māhūrā-sangur (N.W.F.P. India), locates a tribe 376.
Mahyar (N.W.F.P. India), 373 n. 6.
Maidān (Kābul), the road to 228 ; earthquake action near 247 ; white marble of 710.
Maidan-i-Rustam (Kābul), Bābur at 405.
Māing (U.P. India), Bābur near 683.
Makka (Arabia), Bābur sends money gifts to 522, and a Qorān in his script 228 n. 3 ; pilgrims to 26, 267 n. 2, *etc.*
Malabar, a succession-custom in 482 n. 5.
Malarna (Rājpūtāna), revenue of 521.
Malot, *see* Milwat.
Mālwa (C. India), an observatory at 79 ; known in Bābur's day as Mandāū *q.v.* 79.
Māmā Khātūn (Kābul), 405.
Mānas-ni (nai ; Rājpūtāna), other names of 578 n. 1 ; reputed outfall of 580 ; Bābur on 578–9.
Mandaghān (Khurāsān), Bābur at 295.
Mandāū, Mandū (C. India), capital of Mālwa 482 n. 2 ; Mālwa known as 79, 482 ; hills of 486 ; a ruler of 482 ; a holder of 593, 688 n. 2, downfall of sultāns of 483 ; [Elphinstone Codex *passim* and Haidarabad Codex, except on p. 79 where "Mandu" occurs, write Mandāū].
Mandīsh, Mandesh (N.W.F.P. India), Bābur at 375.
Mandrāwar *tūmān* (Kābul), described 210 ; one of the three constituents of the true Lamghānāt 210 ; a village of 424 ; holders of 229, 344 ; Bābur in 321, 421.
Mānikpūr (U.P. India), revenue of 521 ; elephants in 489.
Maqām (N.W.F.P. India), perhaps mod. Mardān 377 n. 2 ; Bābur near 377–8.
Marāghā (Azar-bāyigān, Caspian Sea), astronomical Tables constructed at 79.
Marghīnān (Farghāna), described 6 ; bullies of 7[1] ; a celebrity of 7, 76 ; locates a place 7 ; comings and goings from and to 30, 97 n. 2, 173 ; lost to Bābur 30 ; recovered by him 99–100 ; rebel attack on 101–2 ; Bābur in 103, 123, 162–9, 172.
Marūchāq (on the Murgh-āb, Khurāsān), Āūzbeg raiders defeated at 296.
Marwār (Rājpūtāna), Sangā's approach from 544 n. 5.
Mashhad (Khurāsān), a celebrity of 285 ; a Bāī-qarā holder of 263, 296, 329–30 ; held by Aūzbegs 534, 623 ; Tahmāsp's route to 622 n. 3.

[1] On p. 7, l. 1, after "turbulent", *add*, "They are notorious in Māwarā'u'n-nahr for their bullying."

Māhī (Ghaznī ?), a tribe in 323.
Masjid-i-jauza (Farghāna), described 5.
Masjid-i-laqlaqa (Samarkand), described 80.
Masjid-i-maquṭa' (Samarkand), described 79.
Mastūng, Quetta (Balūchistān), Shāh Beg and 337, *427 (where read Mastūng).
Mātarīd (Samarkand), a celebrity of 75.
Māwarā'u'n-nahr, Transoxiana, name of the country of Samarkand 74; name includes Farghāna 76; melons and wines of 82–3; bullies in 7 (*see s.n.* Marghīnān for an omission); Leaders of Islām born in 7, 75–6; three strong forts in 3; an appointment in its interests 61, 85; in Aūzbeg hands 427, 480, 618; *Bābur's desire to regain 697 n. 1 (and *s.n.* Bābur).
Mehtar-Sulaimān range (Afghān border), a shrine on 238; Bābur and 236–8.
Merv, Marv (Khurāsān), comings and goings from and to 135–7, 296, 301, *337, 623; chiefs of 261, 244; 'Alī-sher winters in 287; Bābur's sister in 18, *352; Shaibānī defeated and killed near 318, *350; 'Ubaid and 534, 618, 622.
Mewāt, Miwāt (Rājpūtāna), revenue of 521; hills of 486; account of 577–8–9; holders of 523, 551; Bābur orders a raid on 551; Kānwa casualties on the road to 577; Bābur at 578.
Miān-dū-āb, "Doab" (between Ganges and Jumna), revenue of 521; archers of 526–8, 551–7; a *pargana* bestowed in 539; 'Ālam Khān goes to 457; Ibrāhīm advances into 467; Bābur puts down a rebel in 576.
Miān-kāl, Miyān-kāl (Samarkand), returns to Bābur 135; Aūzbegs in 622.
Miān-kalā (N.W.F.P. India), Bābur in 373; ? a dū-āb 373 n. 6.
Miān-wilāyat, Miyān-wilāyat (U.P. India), revenue of 521.
Mich-grām (Kābul), a tribe in 413; Bābur at 414.
Mīl (Kāfiristān), position of 210.
Milwat, Malot (Panj-āb), prisoners sent to 461.
Milwat, Malot (U.P. India), Bābur's capture of 457–8, 461.
Minār-hill (Kābul), Bābur crosses 314.
Mīr Ghiyas-langar (Khurāsān), Bābur at 307–8.
Mīrzā-rabāt (Farghāna), w. wind over 9 n. 2, *183.
Misr, Egypt, compared with a Samarkand *tūmān* 84; *Napoleon's task in 356.
Mīta-kacha (Kohistān, Kābul), described 214.
Mughūlistān, mountains of 222; game in 325; Aspara in 20; Yūnas Khān in 12; a Mughūl *tūmān* enters 20; *Mughūls forced to go far from 351; a dweller in 114; Bābur thinks of going to 158, *184.
Muhammad Āghā's village (Kābul), Bābur at 405.
Muhammad Chap's Bridge (Samarkand), 72.
Muhammad-fajj (N.W.F.P. India), meaning of the name 229 n. 5; Bābur at 231.
Multā-kundī (Kābul), defined 211.
Multān (Panj-āb), the Five-rivers meet near 485; a dependency of 237; fowlers migrated from 225; Abā-bikr at 260; Daulat Khān and 441–2; 'Askarī recalled from *603, 605; Kāmrān and 645, 699.
Mungīr (Bengal), Bābur's envoy to 676.
Munīr (Bihār, India), Bābur at 666–7, 670.
Munnūghul-tāgh (Farghāna), variants in name of 8 n. 5; mines and malarial influence of 8; surmised action on wind of (here Mogol-tau) 9 n. 2; (*see* Abū'l-ghāzī, Desmaisons p. 12).
Muqur (Afghānistān), Bābur at 345.
Mūra-pass (Hisār-shādmān), 58 n. 1; Bābur crosses 129 (not named).
Murgh-āb river and fort (Khurāsān), Ḥusain *Bāi-qarā* and 191, 260; Bābur on 285, 297–9, 300; Shaibānī at 327.
Murghān-koh (Qandahār), position of 332 n. 4; Bābur at 336.
Mūrī and Adūsa, Bāburpūr (U.P. India), Bābur at 644.
Muttra (U.P. India), *see* Mahāwīn.

Naghr or Naghz (Kābul), a s. limit of Kābul 200; position of 206, 231–3.
Nagūr, Nagor (Rājpūtāna), revenue of 521.
Nakhshab (Samarkand), *see* Qarshī.
Namangān (Farghāna), new canal of App. A, ii, n. 1; Bābur near 117.
Nānāpūr (U.P. India), Bābur at 657.
Nānī (Ghaznī), Bābur at 240; old Nānī plundered 254.
Napoleon's* task in Egypt compared 356.
Nardak* (U.P. India), a hunting-ground 701.
Nārīn (n. of Hindū-kush), a fugitive through 321.
Nārin-river (n. arm of Saihūn), 88 n. 2, App. A, ii.
Nārnūl (U.P. India), an assignment on 677.
Nasūkh (Farghāna), Bābur at 92.
Nathpūr or Fathpūr (U.P. India), Bābur near 680–1.
Naugrām (U.P. India), Bābur meets his sister at 689 n. 3.
Nijr-añ *tūmān* (Kābul), described 213; mountains of 222; products of 203, 213; boiled wine in 213; a dependency of 220; locates Alā-sāī 220; Bābur in 253, 420–1, his frontier-post of 213 n. 2.
Nīl-āb (Indus), various instances of the name 206 n. 3; a tribal limit 378, 387; routes to Kābul from 206; old Nīl-āb located 392; comings and goings from and to 250, 265, 399, 419, 422, 647, 659; given to Humāyūn 391; Bābur at 392, counts his army at 451.
Nile (The),* used as an illustration 9 n. 2; Alexander takes the Indus for 206 n. 3.
Ning-nahār *tūmān* (Kābul) described 207–9;

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

GSL

its book-name Nagarahār 207 ; meaning of the name 208, App. E ; not included in the Lamghānāt 210 ; a dependency of 213 ; waters of 209, App. E ; wintering tribes 242 ; a bird of 493 ; division of hot and cold climates n 229 ; Bāgh-i-wafā laid out in 208 ; holders of 227, 317, 344, 421 ; an arrival from 345 ; Bābur at 342.
Nīrah-tū or Tīrah-tū, Kaliūn (Herī), Shaibānī's family in 343.
Nirhun (Bihār, India), Bābur at 674.
Nirkh-pass, Takht-pass (Kābul), Bābur crosses 228.
Nishāpūr (Khurāsān), mentioned as on a route 622 n. 3.
Nishīn-meadow (Herī), Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* and 95, 261.
Nū-kīnt (Farghāna), locates an enemy 116 ; threatened 170.
Nulibā (U.P. India), Bābur at 657.
Nūndāk, H.S. Nawāndāk (Chaghānīān *q.v.*), located 471 ; Barlās family of 51 (where "Badakhshān" is wrong) ; Bābur near 129 ; Aūzbegs retire to 471.
Nūr-gal (Kābul), described 211 ; meaning of its name, App. F, xxiii ; holders of 227, 334 ; Bābur at 343, 423.
Nūr-lām (Kābul), *see* App. F, xxiii.
Nūr-valley (Kābul), *see* Dara-i-nūr.
Nūsh-āb (Farghāna), Bābur near 114.

Otrār (W. Turkistān), *see* Aūtrār.
Oude, Oudh, Aūd, Adjodhya (U.P. India), revenue of 521 ; river-crossings to 669 ; locates places 601–2, 679 n. 2 ; army of 684–5 ; a bird of 495 ; appointment to 544 ; ? Bābur at 680 and n. 2 ; his Mosque in App. U.

Paklī, Pakhlī (Panj-āb), formerly part of Kashmīr 484.
Palghar (Samarkand), limit of Samarkand on upper Zar-afshān 152.
Pamghān range and village, Paghmān (Kābul), described 215–6 ; village destroyed by earthquake 247 ; Shāh Begīm's 318 ; *snows seen from Bābur's burial-garden 710.
Pāmīr routes, *spring re-opening of 695.
Pānī-mālī or -mānī (N.W.F.P. India), the road to 376.
Pānīpat (Panj-āb), battles at 472 n. 1 ; Bābur's victory at 457, 469, 470–1–2, 534.
Panj-āb (India), of the name App. E, xx ; *Bābur's power in 426, 430 ; *Daulat Khān's strength in 412, 443 ; Bābur's journey to (937 AH.), 604 n. 1, *698.
Panj-dih, Pand-dih (Khurāsān), Aūzbeg raiders beaten at 296.
Panjhīr, Panj-sher *tūmān* (Kābul), described 214 ; pass-roads of 195–6, 205 ; highwaymen of 214 ; river of 407 ; a *dārogha* in 250.
Panj-kūra (N.W.F.P. India), Bābur at 373–4.
Pāp (Farghāna), holds fast for Bābur 91, 101 ; affairs in 171–4–6 n. 3.
Pārandī-pass (Hindū-kush), described 205 ; height of 204 n. 4.
Parashāwar, Peshāwar (N.W.F.P. India), a limit of Kābul 200 ; beauty of flowers near 393 ; rhinoceros of 490 ; partridges in 496 ; Bigrām near 230 n. 2 ; Bābur and 382, 393, 410–2.
Parhāla (Panj-āb), a Kakar stronghold 387–9 ; described and taken by Bābur 396–7.
Parsarū-river (U.P. India), Bābur on 682–3.
Parsrūr, Parsarūr (Panj-āb), an assignment on 684 ; Bābur at 458 ; G. of India form of name Pasrūr 684 n. 1.
Pārwān (Kohistān, Kābul), described 214–5 ; wind of 201, 224 ; road and pass of 205 ; fishing in 226, 406 ; wines and flowers of 215.
Pashāghar (Samarkand), described 97 ; a native of 188 ; Bābur at 97–8, 148.
Pātakh-i-āb-i-shakna (Kābul), meaning of the name 403 n. 2 ; Bābur at 403.
Pawat-pass (Mehtar Sulaimān range), Bābur crosses 238.
Pehlūr, Phillaur (Panj-āb), Bābur at 458.
Pesh-grām (N.W.F.P. India), Bābur at 373.
Pīāg, Allāhābād (U.P. India), Bābur at 654–5 ; incident of his march from 657.
Pīchghān (Kābul), bird-catching in 220 ; punitive attack on 253.
Pīch-i-Kāfiristān (n. of Kābul country), wines of 212 ; hostile to Bābur 212.
Pīr Kānū, *see* Sakhī-sarwār.
Pul-i-chirāgh, Bīl-i-chirāgh (Balkh-Herāt road), located 69 ; a victory at 69, 260.
Pul-i-sālār (Herāt), 329–30.
Pul-i-sangīn (Ḥiṣār-shadmān), *Tīmūr's and Bābur's victories at 353–4.
Pushta-i-'aīsh (Farghāna), forces near 106, 165.

Qabā (Farghāna), swamp of 31 ; invaded 30 ; Bābur at 123, 162.
Qabādīān (Ḥiṣār-shādmān), Bābur at 188 ; taken for him 640.
Qabīl's tomb, *v.s.* Cain's (Kābul), Bābur at 415.
Qāīn (Khurāsān), held by a Bāī-qarā 296, 301.
Qaiṣār (s.w. of Maimènè, *see* Fr. map), Bābur at 296.
Qalāt-i-ghilzāī (Qandahār), Bābur takes 248–9, 339 ; road south from 333 ; a governor of 340 ; fugitives join Bābur near 331 ; Hindūstān traders at 331.
Qalāt-i-nādirī (n. of Mashhad, Khurāsān), birthplace of Nādir Shāh 263 n. 4, 329 n. 4 ; Bāī-qarā holders of 263, 329.
Qanauj (U.P. India), revenue of 521 ; appointments in 265, 582 ; hostile both to Ibrāhīm and to Bābur 523–9 ; military occurrences at 530, 557, 582–9, 594–8.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

Qandahār (Afghānistān), sometimes reckoned as part of Ghaznī 217; a s. limit of Khurāsān 261; irrigation-waters of 332-6; heat of compared 520; Kābul trade with 202; routes to 206, 308; — governors in 264, 274; Arghūns in 71, 227, 326, 336, 429; Husain *Bāī-qarā's* failure at 94; — Bābur's campaigns against 220, 246-8, 330-9, *365, *426-28-36-39; unremunerative to him 480; his rock-residence (Chihil-zīna) near 333-5, App. J; Shaibānī's siege of 21, 331-9, 340-3; Nāṣir in 338; Kāmrān in 583, *694-9, *706; — Khwānd-amīr leaves 605; a rapid journey to 621; *705; Lord Roberts on his first view of 333 n. 1; ruins of in 1879 AD. 430.

Qarā-bāgh (Kābul), Bābur at 196 ? a rebel of 687.

Qarā-bāgh-meadow (Qandahār), flood-waters of 240; spoils shared out at 339; ? a rebel of 687.

Qarā-būgh (Samarkand), Bābur at 147.

Qarā-būlāq (Samarkand), Bābur at 66-7; a punishment at 66, 153.

Qarā-daryā (s. arm of Saihūn), now supplies Andijān 3 n. 6; 88 n. 2; App. A, ii.

Qara-kūl (Samarkand), mentioned 84; irrigation of 76-7; a governor of 40; lost and regained by Aūzbegs 135-7.

Qarā-kūpa pass, ? Malakand (N.W.F.P. India), Bābur on 376.

Qara-nakariq ? (Kābul), a route through 209.

Qārlūq *wilāyat* (Panj-āb), a governor of 403.

Qarshī, Nashaf, Nakhshāb (Samarkand), described 84; Tarkhāns in 62, 88, 135 (here ? Kesh, p. 138); Aūzbegs and 135, *353-4; Bābur's wish to spare and Najm Ṣānī's massacre 359-60, 361.

Qarā-rabāṭ (n. of Herāt), Bāī-qarā defeat at 327.

Qarā-sū, Siyāh-āb (Kābul), Bābur fords 396; (N.W.F.P. India), he crosses 450; (s. arm of Zar-afshān, Samarkand) 78; course of 82; a meadow on 81; known as Āb-i-raḥmat 78.

Qarā-tīgīn (n. of Hiṣār-shādmān), passers through 58, 112, *349; Bābur plans to go through to Kāshghar 129; his Mughūl assailants retire to 362.

Qarā-tū (Kābul), located 208-9; Bābur at 395, 409, 425.

Qargha-yīlāq (Kābul), low hills of 320.

Qiāq-tū (Ghaznī ?), Bābur at 323.

Qibchāq road and pass (Hindū-kush), described 205; Bābur on 197.

Qilaghū (Kābul), Bābur at 413.

Qīrq-arīq (Kābul), Bābur at 410, 448.

Qila'-i-Ikhtiyāru'd-dīn, Alā-qūrghān (Herāt), Bābur rumoured captive in 313; Bāī-qarā families abandoned in 327.

Qila'-i-ẓafar, Shāf-tiwār (Badakhshān), former name Shāf-tiwār 242; sends an envoy to Bābur 618; a rapid journey from 621; offered to Mīrzā Khān 21, *349; a Chaghatāī fugitive through 349; opposes the Aūzbegs 242; — Humāyūn's departures from (932 AH.) 545, *(935 AH.) 694-5; *Hind-āl in charge 696-7; *beleaguered by Sa'īd 697; *made over to Sulaimān 699.

Qizil-sū, Surkh-āb, *q.v.* (n. of Hindū-kush), locates a road 205 a fugitive on 321; Bābur near 192-3.

Quhlugha, Quhqa (Hiṣār-shādmān), *see* Darband-i-ahanīn.

Qulba meadow (Samarkand), described 82; 80; a murder in 128; Bābur in 72, 141.

Qūndūz (Badakhshān), n. limit of Kābul 200; pass-roads 204-5; head-waters of 216; tribes of 228, 402; Mughūls of 345, 361; a ruler in 47; Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* and 48, 50-7, 61, 94, 191, 260, 275; Khusrau Shāh and 57, 60, 70-4, 93, 110, 141, 196, 244; Shaibānī and 192, 242-4; goings to 270, 546; Bābur and 51, 318, *352-3, *362-3, *427-80; letters of victory sent to 371; his sister sent to 18, *352.

Qurgha-tū (Kābul), a route through 376.

Qurūq-sāī (Kābul), located by context 208-9, 341, 395; Bābur at 341, 395, 414.

Qūsh-khāna (Hiṣār-shādmān), an encounter at 71.

Qūsh-khāna meadow (Qandahār), Bābur in 338.

Qūsh-gumbaz (Kābul), Bābur at 229, 241, 447.

Qūsh-nādir or -nāwar (Kābul), Bābur at 247, 417.

Qūṭlūq-qadam's tomb and bridge (Kābul), position of 208; Bābur at 198, 395.

Rabāṭ-i-duzd or -dūdur (n. of Herāt), a Bāī-qarā defeat at 263.

Rabāṭ-i-khwāja (Samarkand), head-quarters of Shavdār 97; Bābur's men in 73; Bābur in 97, 130-1; 127-8.

Rabāṭ-i-sarhang (Farghāna), Tambal in 108, 110.

Rabāṭ-i-Soghd (Samarkand), a battle near 111.

Rabāṭ-i-surkh (Kābul), Bābur at 341.

Rabāṭ-i-zauraq or -rūzaq (Farghāna), Bābur at 165, 396.

Rabāṭik-aūrchīn (Farghāna), *see* Āīkī-sū-ārā.

Rādagān (n.w. of Mashhad), Ṭahmāsp at at 622; name and location of 622 nn. 4, 5, 623 nn. 4, 7.

Rāgh (Badakhshān), uprisings in 242, 321.

Rahap river, ? Raptī (India), course of 485.

Rāisīng (C. India), Bābur's intention against 598.

Rānt(h)ambūr (Rājpūtāna), revenue of 521; hills of 486; Sangā's 483.

Rāpri (U.P. India), a *pargana* of 644; a dependency of 686; military vicissitudes at 523-30-37-81-82-98; Bābur at 643.

Rashdān (Farghāna), birthplace of the author of the Hidāyat 7, 76.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

Index II. Geographical

GSL

Rāvī river (Panj-āb) 458; source of 485.
Rechna dū-āb (Panj-āb), *Bābur in 429.
Rivers of Hindūstān 485.
Rohtās (Panj-āb), a tribal limit 452 n. 5.
Rūm (Turkey-in-Asia), Kābul trade with 202; a medical remedy of 657; Rūmī defence of connected carts 469, 550, 564, 635.
Rūpar (Panj-āb), Bābur at 464.
Rūstā-hazāra, ? a tribe name (Badakhshān), men of join Bābur 196; (Elph. and Hai. MSS. Rūstā, Ilminskī, p. 153, Rūstākh; is it Rūstāq *infra*?).
Rustam-maidān (Kābul), described 405; Bābur at 405.
Rūstāq (Badakhshān), revolts against Aūzbegs 242; *see* Rustā-hazāra *supra*.

Sabzawār (Khurāsān), a return from 261; on a route 622 n. 3.
Sāf-koh (Kābul-Herāt route), Bābur on 295-6.
Safed-koh (Kābul), *see* Koh-i-safed.
Saighān (Khurāsān; *see* Fr. map Maïmènè), on the summer-road by Shibr-tū 205; Bābur in 294.
Saihūn-daryā, Sīr-darya, Khujand-water (Transoxiana), course of 2, 84 n. 5, App. A, ii; the Khāns and 13, 31, 156, 172; various crossings of 101-16; a proposed limit of lands 118-62; Bābur's crossings of 151 (on ice), 161, 170-9, *183; his men's success on 102; his father's defeat on 16; *see* Nārīn and Qarā-daryā for constituents of.
Sāī-kal (Kābul), Bābur at 342.
Sairām (n. of Tāshkīnt), locates Vagha 159; holders of 17, 35; name of used as a password 164; *withstands the Aūzbegs 358.
Sajāwand (Kābul), celebrities of 217; Bābur at 241.
Sakān (Farghāna), a ferry near 161.
Sakhan (Ghaznī), ruined dam of 219.
Sakhī-sawār (Dara-i-Ghāzī Khān, India), Pīr Kānū's tomb at 238; Bābur at 238.
Salt-range (Panj-āb), *see* Koh-i-jūd.
Sāmāna (Panj-āb), river of 465; fixes a limit 638; an appointment to 528; *a surmised source of historic information 693; *a complaint from to Bābur and punitive results 700.
Samarkand (mod. Asiatic Russia), description of 74-86; names of 74, 75 and n. 4; subdivisions, *see* Bukhārā, Karmina, Kesh, Khozār, Qarā-kūl, Qarshī=Nashaf and Nakhshab, Shāvdār or Shādwār, Soghd; meadows of 67-8, 70-77, 81-2, 128, 131; buildings and constructions in:—(1) Tīmūr's 77-8 and *s.n.* Gardens, (2) Aūlūgh Beg's 78-9, 80, 133, 142-4, (3) others 75-7 nn. 6-8; — Alps of 222; cold in 202-4; a comparison of 216; fruits 8, 510; bullies 7; Aimāqs 221; trade with Kābul 202; name locates places or fixes dates 1, 2, 25, 44-9, 136, 150-1-2, 244, 284, 289; Corps of Braves 28, App. II, xxvii; *tūghchīs* 28; rulers of 13, 35, 41-6, 52, 63, 74, 90, 111, 121-7, 147, 152, 479, 622; governors of 37, 131; comings and goings to and from 15, 20-2-4, 64, 88, 136-7, 148-9, 256, 300, 402-3; refugees to 46, 51, 58, 95 (plan for), 271; an execution in 51, 196; a raid near 16; 'Umar Shaikh and 12, 15; Tarkhān revolt in 61-3; besieged for a bride 64; Abū-sa'īd takes 20-8; Mahmūd *Chaghatāī* and 23, 88, 122; — Bābur *æt.* 5, taken to 35-7; his desire for 97-8, *706; desired by others 64, 111-2; his attempts on 64-6-8, 72-4, 92-3-7, 112-5-9, 131-2, *354; invited to 122-3-4; captures of 18, 33-9, 40, 74, 88, 132-4, 266, 277-9; *355, 471; his surprise capture compared 134-5[1]; rule in 86-7, 135, 147; leaves it to help Andijan 88-9, 190; defeated at 133-141; besieged in and surrenders 141-7, 168, 24; leaves it 147, 358, 471; — Shaibānī receives it in gift 125; loss and gain of 74, 147, 168; occupation of 125-8, *183, 256, 300, 325-8, 360; —*Haidar *Dūghlāt* in 357; Merv Mughūls near 357; Humāyūn attempts to recover 625, 639; — envoys from to Bābur 438, 630-1, 642; gifts to 522; Bābur's 1st *Dīwān* and the *Mubīn* sent to 402, App. Q, viii, *438.
Samnān (Persia), a fruit of 6.
Sambhal (U.P. India), revenue of 521; snows seen from 485; hostile to Bābur 523; Bābur's 528, 547; abandoned by his men 557; Bābur at 586-7; deaths of officers in 675, 683 n. 4, 687; Humāyūn's fief 697, *700-2.
Sām-sīrak (s. of Tāshkīnt), The Khān's army counted near 154; hunting near 156; Bābur at 152.
Sān (Balkh territory ?), plundered 94, 295 (p. 94 for "Sān-chīrīk", *read* Sān and Chār-yak).
Sanām (C. India), river of 465.
Sang (Farghāna), Bābur at 176; *183.
Sang-i-āīna (Farghāna), described 7.
Sang-i-barīda (Kābul), Bābur passes 407.
Sang-i-lakhshak (Qandahār), Bābur at 333.
Sang-i-sūrākh (Kābul), Bābur passes 228; and (Dasht-Farmūl road) *do.* 235.
Sangdakī pass (Panj-āb), Bābur crosses 379, 392.
Sangzār (Samarkand), Bābur and 92, 124, 131; (p. 92, l. 9, *read* "to Sangzār by way of Yār-yīlāq").
Sanjī-tāq (Kābul), a pleasure resort 200 n. 6.
Sanjīd-dara (Kābul), Bābur at 196, 406.
Sanūr (C. India), torrent of 464.
Sapān (Farghāna), a hostile force at 101.
Saqā (Farghāna), Bābur's victory near 113.
Sarāī Munda (U.P. India), Bābur at 651.

[1] On p. 134 for "(I was) 19" *read* in my 19th (lunar) year.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · सत्यमेव जयते · GSL

Sarāī Bābarpūr (U.P. India), *see* Mūrī and Adusī.
Sarakhs (on the Herī-rūd), Aūzbeg capture of 534.
Saran (Bihār, India), revenue of 521; held by a Farmulī *602, 675, an assignment on 679; locates troops 672 n. 4.
Sarangpūr (C. India), Sangā's 483; Bābur's intention against it 598.
Sara-tāq pass (Hiṣār-shādmān), described 129; mentioned on routes 40 n. 4, 58, 129; Bābur crosses 129.
Sār-bāgh (Kābul-Balkh route), traitors to Bābur near 546; (*see* Fr. map Maïmènè).
Sar-i-dih (Ghaznī), dam of 218; Bābur at 240, 323.
Sārīgh-chūpām (Badakhshan), *annexed to Kāshghar 695;* Haidar *Dughlāt* at 697.
Sar-i-pul, Bridge-head (Kābul), Bābur at 314; (Samarkand), an army at 65; Bābur defeated at 18, 137–8 to 141, 188.
Sarjū affluent of the Gogrā, *q.v.* 602 n. 1.
Sarsāwa spring (U.P. India), Bābur at 467.
Sarū-daryā, Gagar, Gogra, Ghogrā (India), two constituent rivers Sīrd (Sarda) and Gagar (or Kakar) 602, 1677 n. 2; course of (Gagar) 485; confluence and *āb* with Gang (Ganges) 665–6–7, 677 n. 2; narrowed below and above the confluence 668 n. 1, 674 nn. 1, 2; rhinoceros and water-hogs of 490, 502; — various crossings of 544, 668, 671–4–5–7, 685; Bābur crosses after his victory on 674–7–9; leaves it 682; Battle of the Gogrā 671–7.
Sārū-qamsh (Khurāsān), an ascribed site of the battle of Jām 635 n. 4.
Sarwār (U.P. India), revenue of 521; Bihān and Bāyazīd sent towards 642; an assignment on 679; 682 n. 1; Bābur at ease about 679.
Sawād (N.W.F.P. India), a limit fixed 400; trees of 222; various products of 492–4, 510–11; brewing in 422; desolate 207; a test of women's virtue in 211; chiefs of 372–4; Yūsuf-zāī in 410, App. K, xxxvii, an arrival from 399; Bābur and 373–6–7, 411–2.
Sawā-sang (Qandahār), Bābur over-runs 249.
Sawātī, ? an adjective = of Sawād, *q.v.*, *kargkhāna* and Bābur's rhino-hunting in 378, 450.
Sayyidpūr ? or Sidhpūr (Panj-āb), Bābur takes 429.
Sehonda, Seondhā (C. India), revenue of 521.
Shāf-tiwār (Badakhshān), *see* Qila'-i-ẓafar.
Shāhābād (Panj-āb), Bābur at 466.
Shāh-i-Kābul mountain, Sher-darwāza (Kābul), located 200 1; *Bābur buried on 710.
Shahmang ? (Panj-āb), once part of Kashmīr 484.
Shahr-i-sabz (Samarkand), *see* Kesh.
Shahr-i-ṣafā (Hiṣār-shādmān), a holder of 188; (Qandahār), Bābur at 332–3.
Shāhrukhiya = Fanākat *q.v.* (Tāshkint), a limit of Samarkand 76; names of 2 n. 5, 7 n. 5, 13, 76; holders of 13, 17; various military occurrences at 21–4, 16, 54, 7, 23, 151; Champion's-portion taken at 53.
Shakdān (Badakhshān), a force at 295.
Shāl = Quetta (Balūchistān), Shāh Beg goes to 337; *427.
Shām, Syria, a Samarkand *tūmān* compared with 84.
Shamsābād (U.P. India), exchanges of 477, 594–8, 613; an assignment on 677.
Sham-tū (n. of Hindū-kush), on a route 192.
Shāsh (W. Turkistān), *see* Tāshkint.
Shatlut river, ? Sutlej (Panj-āb), Bābur crosses 457.
Shāvdār or Shādwār *tūmān* (Samarkand), described 84; a fort of 68; head-quarters in 97; a Tarkhān in 122; joins Bābur 125.
Sherkot (Bhīra, Panj-āb), a holder of 382.
Sherūkān ? (Ghaznī?), a fight near 397.
Sherwān (n.e. of Mashhad, Persia), a native of 284; (*see* Fr. map Maïmènè).
Shibarghān (Khurāsān), besieged 94; defence planned 191; battle near 260.
Shibr-tū pass (Hindū-kush), described 205; height of 204 n. 4; meaning of name 205 n. 2; crossed 242, 321; Bābur crosses 294, 311; (for an omission on p. 205, *see* Add. Note p. 205).
Shīrāz (Persia), Yūnas Khān in 20; (Samarkand), a Commandant of 130; Bābur near 64–6, 73; raided by Shaibānī 92; 98.
Shīwa (Kābul-river), Bābur at 343.
Sniz (Kābul-Ghaznī road), Bābur near 248.
Shorkach (Ghaznī ?), locates a place 323 n. 3.
Shulut (Kābul), App. F, xxiv.
Shunqār-khāna mountains (n.w. rampart of Zar-afshān valley), Bābur crosses 130.
Shutur-gardan (Samarkand), described 142 n. 1, 143.
Siālkot (Panj-āb), revenue of 521; officers of 98, *442–3; *attacked 443; Bābur and *429–52–54–58.
Sidhpūr (Panj-āb), *see* Sayyidpūr.
Sihkāna (Afghānistān), a tribe in 323.
Sihrind, Sahrind, Sirhind (Panj-āb), revenue of 521; names of 383 n. 1; rivers rising n. of 485; fixes a limit 638; fixes a date 457; snows seen from 485; a holder of 383; an assignment on 582 Bābur and *441–64, *693–9, *700–1.
Sikandar's dam (C.P. India), described 606; Bābur at 585.
Sikandara (U.P. India), Bābur at 587.
Sikandarābād (U.P. India), Bābur passes 588.
Sikandarpūr (U.P. India), a ferry station of 677; an official of 668; Bābur at 679.
Sikrī (U.P. India), hills of 485; *Bābur keeps Rāmẓān at 351, changes name of 548 n. 2; selects it for his camp (933 AH.) 548; Bābur at 549, 581–5–8, 600, 615–6; revenues of support his tomb *709.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · भारत सरकार

GSL

Sind (India), *Shāh Beg and 427–9.
Sind-daryā, Indus, of "Nīl-āb" as a name of 206 n. 3; fords and ferries of 206; tributaries of 216, 485; rhinoceros of 490; limits lands 206 n. 6, 231–3, 380, 392, 484, 525; — *Shāh Beg and 431; — *Bābur's compulsion to seek territory across 706; Bābur on 230–7–8, 378–92, *452–3; mentions it in verse 525–6.
Singar-water, Sengar (U.P. India), Bābur bathes in 649.
Sinjid-dara (Kābul), Bābur in 196, 406.
Sir-āb or Sar-i-āb (n. of Hindū-kush), a pass-route to 205; a defeat near 51, 196.
Sīr-auliya (U.P. India), Bābur at 654.
Sird, Sirda, Sarda (U.P. India), a constituent of the Gagar, Gogrā, Ghogrā 602.
Sirhind (Panj-āb), *see* Sihrind.
Sīrkāī, ? Sirakhs (Khurāsān), Shaibānī near 327.
Sistān (Khurāsān), a s. limit of Khurāsān 261; plan of defence for 326.
Siwālik-hills, or Sawālak (N. India), Bābur on the name 485.
Siwi, Sībi (Balūchistān), an official in 238; an incursion into 260; Sīwīstān, *427.
Siyāh-āb, *see* Qarā-sū.
Siyāh-koh (Kābul), located (unnamed) 209; various names of 209 n. 3.
Siyāh-sang (Kābul), meadow of 201; *scene of an Afghān massacre, App. K, xxvi.
Soghd *tāmān* (Samarkand), described 84, 147; Bābur and 64, 135, 147.
Son-water (Bihār, India), an enemy near 658; crossed for Bābur 662; Bābur on 666.
Spīn-ghur (Afghānistān), *see* Safed-koh.
Sūf-valley (Khurāsān), *see* Dara-i-sūf.
Sūgandpūr (U.P. India), Bābur at 686.
Sūhān-nūrī, or Sūhār-nūrī (Kābul), App. G, xxv.
Sūhān-sū (Panj-āb), a tribe on 380; Bābur on 379, 391.
Sūkh (Farghāna), Bābur's refuge in 7, 130 n. 1, 176 n. 1, *184–5; gifts to envoys from 633.
Sukhjāna (C.P. India), Babur near 614.
Sulaimān-range (Afghān border), *see* Mehtar Sulaimān.
Sultānīa (Persia), cold of 219.
Sultānpūr (Kābul), Bābur at 409–13–47.
Sultānpūr (Panj-āb), founder of 442–61; a return to 457; *taken from Bābur 443.
Sūnkār (Rājpūtāna), Bābur at 581.
Sūrkh-āb (n. of Hindū-kush), *see* Qīzil-sū.
Surkh-āb, Qizil-sū (Hisār-shādmān), Bābur's victory on 352–3.
Surkh-āb and rūd, Qizil-sū (Kābul), 207 n. 5; Bāgh-i-wafā on 208, Adinapūr-fort on 209; wild-ass near 224; Bābur crosses 395; ruins near App. E, xvii.
Surkh-rabāt (Kābul), *see* Rabāt-i-surkh.
Sūsān-village (Kābul), Bābur at 422.
Sutluj and Shutlūt (*sic* Hai. MS.), Sutlej-river (Panj-āb), limits lands 383; course of 485; crossed 457; Trans-Sutluj revenues 521.
Syria, *see* Shām.

Tabrīz (Persia), cold of 204–19; Yūnas Khān in 20.
Tag-aū (Kābul), *see* Badr-aū.
Tahangar (Rājpūtāna), hostile to Bābur 538.
Takāna (? Khurāsān), a fight at 260.
"Takhta Qarachi" (Samarkand), 83 n. 2; *see* Aitmāk-dābān.
Takht-i-sulaimān (Farghāna) 5 n. 2.
Ṭāliqān, Ṭāikhān (Oxus), a Bāī-qarā at 60; Mughūls from 192.
Tal Ratoi (Nathpūr, U.P. India), 681 n. 1.
Tang-āb (Farghāna), Bābur at 100; located 99 n. 4.
Tang-i-wāghchān pass (Kābul), *see* Girdīz.
Tank, Tāq (N.W.F. Province), *see* Dasht.
Ṭarāz or Ṭarar (E. Turkistān), *see* Yāngī.
Tarnak river (Qandahār), *see* Turnūk.
Tarshīz (Khurāsān), Husain *Bāī-qarā's* victory at 259 and n. 5 (where *read* p. 524).
Tāshkīnt, Tāshkend (Russia-in-Asia), of its names 2 n. 5, 7 and n. 5, *184; its book-names Shāsh and Chāch 13, 76; ravines of App. A, ii; holders of 32–5, 115, 154, 161; a rebel at 36; Khalīfa sent to 90; name of used as a pass-word 164; Shaibānī's capture of (908 AH.) 23–4, *184; holds out for Bābur (918 AH.) 356–8, 396; its Auzbeg Sultāns at Jām 622.
Tāsh-rabāt (n. of Herī), Bābur at 301.
Tatta (Sind, India), course of the Indus through 485; playing cards sent to 584.
Tāzī var. Yārī (Ghaznī-Qalāt road), Bābur at 248.
Tibet, Bābur locates 485.
Tijāra (Rājpūtāna), a chief town in Mīwāt 578; given to Chīn-tīmūr 578–9, 688.
Tīka-sīkrītkū, Goat-leap (Farghāna), 'Umar Shaikh defeated at 16.
Tīl, Thāl (Kohāt, N.W.F.P. India), Bābur at 232.
Timūr Beg's Langar (Kābul), Bābur at 313.
Tipa (Kābul), assigned for a camp 199; earthquake damage in 247; an exit from 254.
Tīrāk-pass (Farghāna), 15 n. 5.
Tirhut (Bihār, India), revenue of 521.
Tirmīz (Hisār-shādmān territory), a s. limit of Samarkand 76, Begīms of 37, 47–8; Husain *Bāī-qarā* and 5, 191; a governor of 74; Bāqī *Chaghānīānī's* 188, 249; a sayyid of *704–5; Najm *Ṣānī* at 359; entered for Bābur 640.
Tīr-mūhānī (Bihār, India), mentioned 679, 675 n. 1, 687 and n. 2; the *Ḥabību's-siyar* finished at 687 n. 2.
Tīzīn-dara (Kābul), 208 n. 4.
Tochī-valley (N.W.F.P. India), ? to be traversed by Bābur 231.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Toda-bhīm (Rājpūtāna), Bābur at 581; Sangā at 548 (where "Āgra district" is wrong).
Tons-river, Tūs-sū (U.P. India), Bābur on 656, 683.
Tramontana (between the Oxus and Hindū-kush), army of 447; *706.
Tūghlūqābād (Dihlī), Bābur at 476.
Ṭūl-pass and road (Hindū-kush), account of 205; height of 204 n. 4.
Tūn (Khurāsān), a Bāī-qarā holder of 296, 301.
Tūp (Kābul-Herāt road), Bābur at 295.
Tūqūz-aūlūm (Oxus), a defence question 191.
Turfān (Chinese Turkistān), Bābur plans going to 158.
Turkistān, course of the Saihūn in 2-3; trade with Kābul 202; gold-cloth of 641 n. 5; Shaibānī and 65 n. 3, 73-4, 135; his vow in Hazrat Turkistān 356; *'Ubaid in 354.
Turnūk, Tarnak (Qandahār), 332 n. 3; a holder of 340.
Tūs-sū (U.P. India), *see* Tons.
Ṭūs ('Irāq), an astronomer of 79; Shaibānī attacks 534.
Tūta (U.P. India), Begims from Kābul pass 616.
Tūtlūq-yūl, Mulberry-road (Farghāna), Bābur on 165.
Tūtūn-dara (Kābul), water taken from 647.

Udyānapūra (Kābul), App. E, xxi; *see* Adinapūr.
Ujjain (Mālwa, C. India), an observatory in 79.
'Umān-sea, receives the Indus 485.
'Umarābād (Khurāsān), an ascribed site of the battle of Jām 635 n. 4.
Ūnjū-tūpā (Farghāna), *see* Aūnjū-tūpā.
'Uqābain (Kābul), site of the Bālā-ḥiṣār 201.
Ūrgenj (Khwārizm), *see* Aūrgān).
Ūrghūn (Kābul), *see* Aūrghūn.
Urūs-sū (W. Turkistān), *see* Arūs.
Ūsh (Farghāna), *see* Aūsh.
Ushtur-shahr (Kābul), Bābur in 195, 294, 314.
'Uṭrār, Otrār, Aūṭrār (W. Turkistān), *see* Vāngī.

Varsak (Badakhshān), position of 523 n. 1, Bābur's gifts to 523.
Vierney, Vernoe (E. Turkistān), position on site of old Almātū 2 n. 1.

Wakhsh (Ḥiṣār-shādmān), Aūzbegs at 352, 362.
Wallān pass (Hindū-kush), account of 205; height of 204 n. 4.
Warūkh (Farghāna), account of 7.
Wasmand fort (Samarkand), Bābur at 132.
Wazr-āb (Ḥiṣār-shādmān), 58 n. 1.

Yada-bīr (Kābul), Bābūr at 394, 411, 448.
Yaftal (Badakhshān), a force at 321.
Yagha or Yaghma (n. of Tāshkint), tombs at 139; Bābur at 139.
Yāī (Khurāsān), tribes in 255.
Yaka-aulang (w. of Bāmiān, *see* Fr. map Maimènè), Jahāngīr goes to 294; passes from Herī-rūd valley to 310 n. 2; Bābur in 311.
Yak-langa (Kābul), Bābur crosses 445.
Yām (Samarkand), Bābur at 67; 84 n. 3.
Yān-bulāgh (Kābul), Bābur on road of 425.
Yāngī-ḥiṣār (Kāshghar), *a death-bed repentance at 362.
Yāngī = Tarāz (E. Turkistān), depopulated 2; book-name of 2 and n. 1; an army at 20.
Yāngī = Ūṭrar, Otrar (W. Turkistān), a mistaken entry of in some MSS. 2 n. 1.
Yangī-yūl pass (Hindū-kush), described 205.
Yārī (Ghaznī-Qalāt road), *see* Tazī.
Yārī (Zar-afshān), Bābur crosses the bridge to 130.
Yārkand (E. Turkistān), *696.
Yār-yīlāq (Samarkand), Timūr's "head" of Soghd 84; fights near 35, 122; villages of 97-8; submits to Bābur 98; Bābur in 64, 92, 125, 130-1.
Yasān (Farghāna), *see* Khasbān.
Yāsī-kijit (Farghāna), Bābur's men defeated at 27, 105.
Yīlān-aūtī or Yīlān-aūt (Samarkand), Bābur at 147.
Yīlān-chaq (n. of Hindū-kush), a tribe of 196.
Yītī-kīnt (Farghāna), mandrake in 11; of its position 11 n. 6; Yūnas Khān's headquarters 20 n. 5.

Zābul, Zābulistān, a name of Ghaznī *q.v.*
Zahāq fort, "Zohak" (s. of Bāmiān), Bābur at 294; (*see* Fr. map Maimènè).
Zamānia (U.P. India), *see* Madan-Banaras.
Zamīn (Samarkand), locates places 34, 64; Bābur at 97.
Zamīn-dāwar (Qandahār), Arghūn chiefs in 71, 337-9; Zū'n-nūn's 274; taken by Bābur 27; plan to defend 326.
Zar-afshān river, Kohik-sū *q.v.* (Samarkand), described 76 and nn. 4, 5; Macha village on 149 n. 4; Bābur crosses 67, 130; *Najm *Ṣānī* crosses 360.
Zardak-chūl (w. of Balkh), over-run 94.
Zarqān or Zabarqān (Farghāna), Bābur at 161.
Zindān valley (Kabul-Balkh road), *see* Dara-i-zindān.
Zirrīn-pass (between Herī-rūd valley and Yaka-aūlāng), Bābur misses it 309-10.
Zurmut *tūmān* (Kābul), described 220; floods in 240; Gīrdīz head-quarters in 220.

Index III. General

Abbreviated names 29.

Abdu'l-wahhāb *Ghaẓ-dāvānī* see *Wāqi'-nāma-i-pādshāhī*.

Ablution—before death 188; reservoirs 208, 217, 580, 639, 683.

Abū-tālib *Husainī* or Abū'l-ḥusain *Turbatī see Malfūzāt-i-tīmūri*.

Abūshqa, a Turki—Turkish Dict.—quotes verses as Bābur's 438; quotes Khw. Kalān 526; the Bāburī-script App. Q, lxiii.

Account-rolls of palm leaves 510.

Adoption—of a son 170; præ-natal 374, App. L.

Afghanistan and the Afghans, H. W. Bellew—vine-culture 210; decoy-ducks 225 (*where, in n. 5, read title as above*).

Afghan Poets of the XVII Century, C. E. Biddulph—Khūsh-āb *Khattak* mentions Bābur 439.

Afẓal Khān *Khattak*—(*Raverty's Notes q.v.*)—Nīl-āb (*ferry-station*) 206.

Agriculture—seed-corn and money advances 86; young millet grazed 215; methods of vine culture 210; water-raising appliances 388, 486–7; irrigation, "running waters": —Farghāna 4, 5, 7, Samarkand 76–7, 147; Hindūstān 486–7, 519–31–81, Qandahār 332–6, Chandīrī 596;—canals:—Farghāna 67, Samarkand 76, 147;—grain, corn:—Farghāna 2, 3, 55, 114–46, Kābul 203, 228, 373–4, [green corn] 394, Qandahār 333, Hash-nagar 410, Barā 414, Bhīra 381;—raft of corn seized on the Sind 392; horse-corn fails on a march 238–9; (rice) 342–74–94, 410.

Akbar-nāma, Shaikh Abū'l-faẓl *'Allāmīy*, (*trs. H. Beveridge*)—(*see notes on pp. given*) **meanings**:—*bāt-qāq* 31; *nihilam* and *tasqāwal* 45; Tardīka 568; Tarkhān 34; *fīl-i-daryā'i* App. M. xlvii;—**persons**:—13, 22, 263–4, 346, 552, 562, 641, 657;—**various places**:—191, 206, 441, 523, App. J, xxxv;—winter access to Farghāna 2; Niẓāmī quoted 44; an inscription of Bābur's 343; Rūmī defences 469; the (Koh-i-nūr) diamond 477; a cognomen 566; risks to MSS. App. D, x; Akbar-nāma material *441–5, *691–3; Bābur supplemented 639; length of work on it *692 n.; Mubīn passage translated in the "Fragments" (*q.v.*) *437–8; Bābur's self-devotion *701; his choice of a successor *702 to 705, mentioned Preface xxxiii; translated from by Jahāngīr (?) xlv.

'Alī-sher *Nawā'ī's* comforts 287.

Allgemeine Erdkunde, Carl Ritter—Barā-koh 5; Bābur's *farsī-gūī* useful 7; Akhsī distances App. A, v.

'Amal-i-ṣāliḥ, Muḥ. Ṣāliḥ—Shāh-jahān's destruction of wine 298; *tūlgūn* (bird) 418.

Amanitates exoticae, Engelbertus Kæmpfer—*Ijtihād* 284.

Amusements *see* Games.

Ancient Geography of India, Major-Gen. Sir Alex. Cunningham—(*see nn. on pp. named*) Shibr-tu 205; Nīl-āb 206; Kohistān villages 214; Gūrkhattri 230; Bigrām 230; Udyānapūra App. E, xxi.

Annals and Antiquities of Rajastan Col. James Tod—Sangā's force 547; negociations with Bābur 550; appearance 558; Salāḥu'd-dīn (Silhādi) 562.

Antidotes—lime-juice 511, Lemnian earth 543.

Anwar-i-suhailī, Ḥusain Wā'iẓu 'l-kāshifī—quoted 22; Firdausī quoted 557, Add. N, P. 557.

Apostates 577–8, 590–1.

Arabic Sciences 283–5.

'araq see fermented drinks, *s.n.* Wine.

Archery[1]—[*see nn. on pp. named*], *good bowmen* 16, 22, 26, 34 (2), cross-bowman 53; 263, remarkable feats 276, 279;—*archer's marks*:—*ilbāsūn* (duck), *qabāq* (gourd), *tūqūq* (hen) 34, *takhta* (target); *qabāq-maidān* 276;—*arrows*:—*aūq* 22, 34, 255, *etc.*, *giz* 213, 225, *khadang* (white poplar) 13, *tīr-giz* 11 (*where preface n. 2 by the name*), 34; arrow-barb, *paikān* 22, -notch, *gosha* App. C, -flight 8, 140; flights of arrows 52; rain of, 138; quiver T. *sāghdāq* 160, 166, P. *tarkash* 526; an arrow-borne letter 361;—*bows*:—Chāchī bow (*kamān*) 13; cross-bow *takhsh-andāz*, *kamān-i-guroha* 55, 263; *narmdik yāī*, an easy-bow 420; *qāṭīq yāī*, a stiff-bow 490;—bows ruined by Hindūstān climate 519, *700;—*various*:—*chaprās*, *daur*, *gosha*, *kamānkhāna*, *kardāng* explained App. C; *goshagīr*, a repairing-tool 166, App. C; Turkish bow-making a fine craft App. C, ix; dismounting to shoot 52;—*to bow-string* (T. *kīrīsh sālmāq*) 110.

Architecture Timuriya and Timurid Pr. xxxi.

Archiv für Asiatische Litteratur H. J. Klaproth (*q.v.*)—Kasan gardens 10; his extracts from the Bukhara Compilation MSS. Pr. xxxix, xlvii.

Ariana Antiqua, H. H. Wilson—*Masson's art. Actinapūr Region* 227, Nagarāhāra App. E, xvii.

Army of the Indian Moghuls, W. Irvine—trepanning 109; misled 470; on *mulāzīm* (*q.v.*) 592; "*shātur*" explained 593; *ziringī* (gun) 473, pontoon-bridges 600.

'Arūz-i-saifī, Maulāna Sayyid Maḥmūd *Saifī*

[1] Cf. *Life of Busbecq* (Forster and Daniels) i, 252–7, for feats of Turkish archery.

GSL

of Bukhāra, (*trs. Blochmann and Ranking*) —a note by Rieu 288; Saifī's pupil Bāisunghar 111; his high number of rubā'ī measures App. Q, lxvi.

Asia Portuguesa, Manuel de Faria y Sousa—Habshi succession custom 482.

Astronomy and Astrology—Tables and Observatories 74, 79, Pr. xxx; Canopus (Suhail) 195; forecasts 139, 551; houses of Scorpio 633; Pole-star a guide 323, its altitude at Chandīrī 597; Capricorn 597.

Ayīn-i-akbarī, Abū-faẓl (*trs. Blochmann, Jarrett*)—(*see nn. on pp. named*); Climates 1; *qīlī* (cognomen) 29; observatories 79; guns 473; clepsydra 516; kitchen rules 541; fruits 3, 501–3–4–5, 512; *chalma* 624; hunting deer 630; *bahrī* (falcon) 632; *mīlak* (gold, cloth) 641; *yak-tai* (unlined) 652;—**(weights and measures)** *khar-war* 228, *tānāb* 630, *sang=tāsh* 632;—a title 209; a child traveller 265; Barlās begs 270; **(places)** Kābul 207, 221; Kacha-kot 250; Sidhpūr 429; Nagarāhāra App. E, xxiii; Buhlūlpūr 454; Kanwāhīn 458; Milwat (Malot) 461; Jahān-nāma 485; Chausath 581; Lakhnūr 582; Sikandra Rao 587, Godi, Gūī 601;—**(persons)** 285, 653, 666, App. P, lvi;—Bābur's expedition to Kashmīr 693.

Aẓār-i-sandīd, Sayyid Aḥmad Khān—places Bābur visited 475; Mahdī Khwāja and Amīr Khusrau's tomb 704.

Noticeable words:—P. *āb-duzd* 109 = P. *dū-tahī* 62, 595–6; *ākī-sū-ārā* = P. *miyān-dū-āb* (Mesopotamia) *i.a* 88; *aīmāq* (clan) 51, 196, 207–15–55, Add. Note P. 49; M. *ālāchī* whence *Alacha* 23; *arghamchī* 614; *āsh-kīna* (stew) 4; *aūdālīq* (odalisque) = P. *ghūnchachī q.v.*; *aūghlān* (child, boy, non-regnant chief) 19; *aūghlāqchī* 39; *aūrchīn* 44, 88; *aūng*, *ūng* (Prester John's title) 23; *aūpchīn* 176, 282; Aūz-beg, -khān, -kīnt, *i.a* 162, (*see* A.N. trs. i, 160, 170); *āyīk-aūt*=P. *mihr-giyāh* (mandrake) 11.

The Bābur-nāma, Ẓahīru'd-dīn Muḥ. Bābur (Lion) Mīrzā and (later) Pādshāh *Ghāzī*.

I. Sections of the Book:—(*The record of pre-accession years is lost Pr. xxxvi*); (1) **Farghāna** 1–182, (Trs. N. [*bridging a gap*] 182–185); (2) **Kābul** 187–346, (Trs. N. 347–366), 367–425, (Trs. N. 426–444; (3) **Hindustān** 445–602, (Trs. N. 603–4), 605–690, (Trs. N. 691–716);

Sub-sections:—(*a*) **Descriptions** of Farghāna 1–12, Kābul 199–227, Herāt 304–5, Hindustān 480–521, Chandīrī 592, 596, Gūāliār 605–614; (*b*) **Biographies** of Yūnas Khān 19–24 (*see infra, displacements*), of Mīrān-shāhīs *viz.* 'Umar Shaikh 13–19, 24–28, Aḥmad 33–40, Maḥmūd 45–51, Bāī-sunghar 110–112, of Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* 256–292, of amīrs *etc.* 44, 37, 49, 270;

II. Lacunæ:—(*other than mentioned above*); minor in 935 AH. *see* dating and nn. on pp. 617, 621, 630, 636, 687, and for surmised patching from fragments of 934 AH. 654, 655, 680; (1) **References to events of the gaps** *see* nn. on pp. 105, 364—208, 441, 575—381—408, 422—(of 934 AH.) 603, 617, 618, 621—an Akbar-nāma indication 639; (2) **Varia concerning the gaps**:—Causes of, Pr. xxxiv; misinterpreted xxxv; results in present displacement xxxvi;

III. Varia Concerning the Book:—(1) **Date of composition,** [*see nn. on pp. named*]; 48, 50, 79, 98—102, 105—139, 154, 176, 190 (l. 5 fr. ft.) 198—203–4–6–8—214–18–19–20 (*para. 3*), 269–76–78–85—313 ("now" *para. 2*), 314 ("now" l. 4), 315 (l. 2), 318 (*para. 2*), 337 (l. 16), 373 (l. 8 fr. ft.), 374; (2) **Literary style and idiom**:—plain diction 2, precise wording *e.g.* 5, 79, 475, 485, appreciation of words 67, 265, 288, 627, comments on style *e.g.* 22, 67, and pronunciation 210, 484, early diary differs in wording from the narrative 367; lapses into courtly Persian 445, 537, 539; (3) **Grammatical details**:—relatives not used Add. Note, P. 167; uses of "we" and "I" 104, 118; distinctions of meaning expressed by Ar. and T. plurals *e.g.* 5, 80; uses of the presumptive tense 37, 75, 162, 167, 577 (cf. Shaw's Grammar); examples of idiom 29, 44, 66, 75, Add. Note, P. 167 (*gharīcha*); (4) **Varied information** *see* Preface *passim*; (5) **Bābur's notes**:—Khwāja Maulānā-i-qāẓī 29—Ibrāhīm Sārū 52—Champion's portion 53—Gūk-sarāī 63—Fāẓil Tarkhān 133—Aūz-kīnt 163—Pass-words 169—Multā-kundī 211—Military terms 334—Pīrī Beg 336—Badakhshān 340—Sl. Ma'sūd M. 382—Campaign of 910 AH. 382—Daulat Khān 383—*daqīqa* 516—*pol* 517—Mullā Āpāq 526—*kuroh* (from the *Muḥīt*) 630—*tāsh* weight 632;

IV. Work Done on the Book:—(1) **Turki Codices** *see* Preface, Cap. III, Part II and Table xli;—(*a*) *Haidar Mīrzā's Codex*—its importance Pr. xxxiv, xxxv, xxxviii, xli, xlii (No. iv); (*b*) *Elphinstone Codex*—archetypes 405, Pr. xli, xlii, xliii (No. v); its losses of pages 445; defacement 129, 325, 415, 548; Erskine's use of it Add. Note, P. 287; reliance on it *in loco* 1, 187, 445; preserves Humayun's attested notes 447–52–67, 510–14 and attributed notes 216, 494, 507—also a quatrain on Mughūls 140; "Rescue-passage" not in it App. D; divergency from it in the Kasan Imprint *ib.* xiv; a former owner 706; referred to in nn. on pp. 7, 10, 12, 14, 23–6–8, 31–6, 44–7–8, 60–4, 75, 88, 112–3, 133

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA MINISTRY OF CULTURE

(Shaibāq), 143–8, 154 (*dīm*), 159, 161–4–9; Preface xli, xlii, xliii (No. v), xlvii; *cf.* JRAS *Notes infra*; (*c*) *Haidarabad Codex*, published in Facsimile by the Gibb Trust, ed. A. S. Beveridge—basis of the *B.N. in English* 1, 187, 445, Preface xxvii; appears a direct copy of Bābur's autograph Codex 47, 103, 515; contains (Jahangir's?) Rescue-passage App. D; divergency of Kasan Imprint from it *ib.* xiv; referred to in nn. on pp. 2, 8, 9, 10, 12, 133 (Shaibāq), 14, 18, 23 (careful pointing clears away a doubt), 28, 31, 36, 40 (Bāghdād corrected to Būghdā), 60–4, 75, 88, 132, 140–6–8, 153 (a mistake?), 154 (*dīm*), 159, 164 (*sārī kāshī*), 165, 168, 177 (Pers. *dictum*), App. A, i (Akhsī); Preface xxvii, xxxiii (title), xxxv, xli (Table), xlvi (No. x), xlvii;—[1]

(2) **Persian work**:—(*a*) *Tabaqāt-i-bāburī*, described 445; made known to Erskine 520; its deference to Bābur App. P, lvii; shews a date 496; shews nature of an illness (B.'s) 446; specifies drinking-days 447, 450; gives a useful pen-name 448; Buhlūlpūr 454; of a gun 489; Varsak and Khwāstīs 523; Naukar or Tuka 525; Bābur points "Sikrī" to read *shukrī* 548; styles him "Nawāb" 560 *etc.*; describes a porpoise as *bahrī* App. M, xlvii; helps as to "Luknūr" App. T, lxxiv; (*b*) *Wāqi'āt-i-bāburī* (Acts of Bābur), (*the first Pers. Trs. 1583*), Pāyanda-ḥasan *Mughūl* of Ghaznī and Muḥ-qulī *Mughūl* of Hiṣār—explicit 187, 198; useful variants 267, 624, 645; a puzzling phrase 549, and passage 617; title Pr. xxxiii; described liii (No. vi); (*c*) *Wāqi'āt-i-bāburī* (Acts of Bābur), (*the second Pers. Trs. 1589*), 'Abdu'r-raḥīm M. *Turkmān*—misleading glosses 2 n. 1, 3 n. 1; *tāsh* misread 312 *etc.*; verses doubtfully Babur's 312; a gloss unsupported 337; a difficult passage 617; a fine illustrated copy (B.M. 3714) 155, 298, 325; Erskine's account of its diction (quoted) Pr. xliv (No. vii); on its title xxxiii;

(3) **Persian-English work**:—*The Memoirs of Baber*, Leyden and Erskine (1826)—[*see nn. on pp. named*]; **Varia**:—Leyden's slight collaboration 287, 367, 380, Add. Note, P. 287, Pr. xlviii, Cap. iv, [L. and E. *Memoirs*]; two notes by Leyden 10, 219; not fully representative of Bābur's autobiography 2, Cap. iv; advance in help (MSS. and other) since Erskine worked 347, 620–22, App. T, lxxiii; his own MSS. 680; Indian guidance 632, 661; dating agrees with Bābur's 629; misled by his Persian source [*q.v.* 3 *etc.*] and by a scribe's slip 544; his help to Ilminski 1, 187, 326, Pr. lv; misleads by uniform "Luknow" App. T; omissions 2, 632, 468, 559 (*important*); a prayer reproduced in its words 316; quoted 715;—**questioned readings**:—143, 223–5–9, 324–7, 333–7, 369, 400–16, Add. Note, P. 416, 446–49–57–62–67 (shaving-passage), 478, 523–34–49–55–59–61, 608–9, 617–19–26–38–40–46–47;—[*Numerous verbal explanations and other notes are reproduced as Erskine's and each identified*];

(4) **Turki-English work**:—*The Bābur-nāma in English* (*Memoirs of Bābur*), Annette S. Beveridge—*see* Preface and other contents of these volumes.

Bābar, Stanley Lane Poole—the Eight Stars 139; a misled note 468.

Bābur und Abu'l-faẓl, Teufel [*ZDMG, 1862*]—an opinion negatived 119; useful critique on "Fragments" (*q.v.*) Preface Cap. III, Part III and App. D; Mubin MS. used by Berézine 438; Babur-nama title 653, Pr. xxxiii.

Bahar-i-'ajam (Pers. Dict.) *see* Dictionaries.

Bāz-nāma (Book of Sport), Muḥibb-i-'alī *Barlās*—its author's descent 276; *l* exchanged with *n* (*cf. Luḥānī and Nuḥānī*) *ib.*

Bélin M.—[*Journal Asiatique xvi, xvii*] 257–8, 271–82–92.

Bengali Household Stories, Macculoch—a sign of obedience 275.

Beveridge Annette S.—JRAS. Notes in referred to *in loco*:—MSS. of the B.N. Turki text 1900; Further Notes 1902, Haidarabad Codex and all others 1905, 1906; Elphinstone Codex 1907; Material for a definitive text and account of Kehr's Codex and its Persian alloy 1908; Kehr's Latin Version of part of his source *i.e.* the *Wāqi'-nāma-i-pādshāhī* (Bukhara Compilation *q.v.*) 1908, Klaproth's *Archiv* 1909, and (expected) on the confused identity of the Bukhārā Compilation with the *Bābur-nāma* 1922;—(2) Grounds for making a new translation Preface Cap. IV; the mistaken identity of Kehr's source (*supra*) Cap. III[2]; of the *Bābur-nāma*, Preface *passim*.

Beveridge Henry—(1) **Notes *in loco***:—*tabalghū* 11; Bābā-i-kābulī 14; Quintets 15, 288; a mistake by Firishta 15; Lotus-eaters 42; Daulat-shāh 46; Ḥāfiz parodied 201; Byron's *tambourgī* 247; Jāmi plagiarized 258; *Khaṣā'iṣu'l-aṣfiyā* quoted 211; Timūr's burial-position 266; syphilis 279; an illegal marriage 329; Bābur's satirical verse and Shaikh Zain 448; *Ẓafar-nāma* (?) quoted 485; "*kaka*" 502; Khw. Khusrau's couplet 503; the name "Cintra" for an orange 512; Timūr on Hindūstān 526; fate of Ibrāhīm *Lūdī's* mother 543; *tamghā* 553; a pun 571; verses traced 571, 625–6;

[1] For the Bukhara (Bābur-nāma) Compilation *see Wāqi'-nāma-i-pādshāhī*; as also for its Codices, descendants and offtakes, *viz.* Ilminski's "*Bābur-nāma*" and de Courteille's *Mémoires de Baber*.

[2] The confusion of identity has become clear to me in 1922 only.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
सत्यमेव जयते · भारत सरकार

Ibn Batūta quoted 591; date of Bābur's visit to Lāhor from Āgra 604; Khwānd-amīr 605; Rahīm-dād 608, 688; Mahdi Khw. 704; Scorpio and Libra 628; Battle of Jām 635; "bulky Oolak" 663; Kashmīr expedition 693; a poor MS. App. P, lv; Shaikh Zain's deference *ib.* lvii; — (2) **Translations**:—(*a*) Akbar-nāma *q.v.* and Tūzūk-i-jahāngīrī *q.v.* — (*b*) revision of Persian *farmān* 553, and the Kānwa Letter-of-victory 559;—(3) **Articles referred to**:— (*a*) A.Q.R. 1899, *Bābur's Diamond, was it the Koh-i-nūr?* 447; 1901, *An Afghan Legend* 375, App. K; 1910, *Paper-mills of Samarkand* 81; 1911, *Oriental Cross-bows* 140, 142; *Bābur's Dīwān* (Rāmpūr MS.) 439; *Some verses by the Emperor Bābur* 439—1915, Silhādī and the *Mirāt-i-sikandari* 614;—(*b*) Calcutta Review 1884, *the Patna Massacre* 672; —JASB. 1898, *Bāyazīd Bīyāt* 691—1905, *The Emperor Bābur's legendary son* 558—1884, *Authorship of the Dabistān*;—1916, *Tārīkh-i-salāṭīn-i-afāghana* 693; — (*c*) JRAS. 1900, *On the word nihilam* 45, 224 —1901, *Pers. MSS. in Indian Libraries* 348—1910, *On the word mutaiyīm* 16, 275 —1913-14, *Coinage of Husain Bāī-qarā* App. H, xxvi—1918, *Rashahāt-i-'ainu'l-hayāt* 620:—(4) **Other related articles**: —(*a*) A.S.Q.—*Emperor Bābur and the Habību's-siyar* 1906; *Emp. B. and Khwānd-amīr* 1909 (*2 parts*); *Emp. B.'s opinion of India* 1917; *Attempt to poison B. ib.*; *Was 'Abdu'r-rahīm the translator of B.'s Mems. into Persian?* 1900 (*2 parts*); (*b*) JRAS.— *The B.N.* "*Fragments*" 1908; *Date of Shāh Hasan Arghūn's death* 1914; *An obscure quatrain by Bandā'i* 1917; *The Mongol title Tarkhān ib.*; *Tarkhān and Tarquinius* 1918[1];—(5) **His help**; *see* Postscript of Thanks, Preface lxi.

The Bible — untrimmed beard 552; moon-stroke 608.

Bibliothèque Orientale, B. d'Herbélot — (*see nn. on pp. named*), 'Umar Skaikh 13; Sātūq-būghrā Khān 29; Mahmūd *Mīrān-shāhi* 46; Māturīdiyah and Ash'ariyah Sects 75–6; Ismā'īl *Khartank* 76; Nasīru'd-dīn *Tūsī* 79; Nīl-āb 206; "Qizil-bāsh" explained 630.

Biographie Universelle, Langlès art. *Babour* xlv.

Biographies of Ladies (*Sprenger's Cat.*)—two women-poets 286.

Birds of India, T. C. Jerdon—partridge-tippets 496; cries *ib.*; bustard 498; *mānak* 499; *likhh* (florican) App. N; *kabg-i-darī* and *chīrtika* (snow-cock) *ib.*

"Blessed Ten" 562.

Blochmann H. (*JASB. 1875*)—Bābur's Mosque in Sambhal 687; *see Āyīn-i-akbari*.

Blood-ransom 461; retaliation 64, 102, 119, 194, 251–53, 424.

Boats—383–5–7–8, 407–10–22–23–54, 589, 652–4–5–6–8–9, 660, 662; Bābur names his Ganges flotilla 663, 669, 670–1–4–9, 681–4; pontoon bridge 599, 633.

Book-names—Akhsīkit = Akhsī 9; Banākat = Shāhrukhiya 76; Chāch and Shāsh = Tāshkint 13, 76; Gālūr or Gālīwar = Gūālīār 605; Nashaf and Nakhshab = Qarshī 84; Nagarahāra = Nīng-nahār 207; Tarāz = Yāngī 2.

Book-room—Ghāzī Khān *Lādī's* 460.

Books (*no titles*)—Exposition of the *Nafahāt* 284; On Jurisprudence 285,—prosody 271, —rhyme 285,—riddles 289.

Botany of the Afghan Delimitation Commission, Aitchison—regional grasses 222; *garqand* = *sax-aol* (?) 223.

Brahminical thread 561.

Bridge of boats *see* Boats.

Buddhist Records, S. Beal—Greater Udyāna-pūra App. E, xxi; sugarcane in Lāmghān 203 (*where read Beal*).

Browne, Professor Edward Granville — the Haidarābād Codex Facsimile, Preface xlvi (No. x).

Building-stone — Samarkand 83, Kābul 710, Chandīrī 597, Dūlpūr 606, Gūālīār 608, Biāna 611.

"Bukhārā Compilation," known as "*Bāburnāma*" see *Wāqi'nāma-i-pādshāhī*.

Bullies of Marghīnān (Marghīlān) 7 (*where in line 1, add*, "They are notorious in Māwarā'u'n-nahr for their bullyings").

Burhān-i-qāti' (Pers. Dict.) *see* Dictionaries.

Buried Cities of Khotan, Sir M. Aurel Stein—Aq-būrā-rūd 4.

Bū-stān, Sa'dī—couplets quoted 139, 152, 626.

Noticeable words:—(P.-Ar.-T.) *bāghāt*, *bāghlār*, *bāghchā* and *begāt*, *beglār* 5, 80, 478; *bāghīsh* 59, 69; *bakhshī* (in M. surgeon) 169; *bāshlīqlār* (commanders) 119; *bātmān* (a weight) 261; *bātqāq* (slough of despond) 31; *bāī* (rich man) 127; *bāīrī* (old servant) 30; *bī* = beg 127–8; *bīlārga* 225; *b'd-hindī* = P. *sih-bandī* (Byde Horse) 470; *bīlāk* 446; *bāghū-marāl* 8, 10; *bāghdā* (cutlass) 40; *bālāk* and *balūq* 196, 17 and 221; *bāsh* (bosh) 507.

Cabool (Kabul), Sir Alex. Burns—(*see nn. on pp. named*); wind and running sands 201, 215; climate 204; *kabg-i-darī* 213; Kohistān 214; millet 215; Bābur's Burial-garden 710.

Cadell, Jessie E.—quoted Preface xxvii.

[1] One of the nine great gods of the Etruscans was called Tūrān. Etr. *Tūr* means strong, a strong place (fortress); with it may connect L. *turma* (troop) and the name of Virgil's Rutulian hero Turmus may root in the Mongol tongue. Professor Jules Marthe writes in *La Langue Etrusque* (Pref. vi), "Il m'a paru qu'il y avait entre l'Etrusque et les langues finns-ougriennes d'étroites affinités" (hence with the Mongol tongue). "Tarkhān" is "Tūrkhān" in Miles trs. p. 71 of the *Shajaratu'l-atrāk* (H.B.).

Cadet-corps formed 28, App. H, xxvii.
Cairn *i.e.* "Bābur Pādshāh's Stone-heap" 446, Preface xxxvii.
Candles and candlesticks—none in Hind 518; offensive substitutes *ib.*
Canopus *see* Suhail.
Capitals of Farghāna—Andijān 3, Akhsi 10, Aūz-kīnt 162.
Caravans—15, 202, 250, 331.
Carruthers, Mr. Douglas—help from App. B, vii.
Carving—Bābur no carver 304.
Caste-names—518.
Catalogues:—(*see nn. on pp. named*);
,, Coins of the Shahs of Persia (B.M.), R. S. Poole—Bābur's surmised vassal coin 355, App. H, xxx, Preface xxxv;
,, Feronia Nursery Calcutta, Seth—Jack-fruit 506; *sang-tarā* orange 511;
,, Library of the King of Oudh, A. Sprenger—Biographies of Ladies 286; *Shāh u Darwesh* 290; Ahlī 290;
,, Library of Tippoo Sultān, C. Stewart—*Ṭabaqāt-i-naṣīrī* 479;
,, *Manuscrits Turcs de l'Institut des langues orientales*, W. D. Smirnov—*Malfūẓāt-i-tīmūrī* 653; Bābur's writings *ib.*
,, Persian MSS. (B.M.), C. Rieu—Shāsh and Fanākat 2, 7; Khw. Kamāl 8; Akhsīkīū 9; 'Abdu'l-lāh *Barlās* 51; Saifī 111, 288; Halwa-spring 260; Niẓāmī 271; Daulat-shah 274; *Bāẓnāma* 276; Suhailī 277; Marwārīd 278; Amīr Ḥamza 280; 'Aṭā'u'l-lāh 282; Taftazānī 283; *Khamsatīn* 288; Husain *Nishapūrī* 288; Yūsuf of Farghāna 289; Hilālī 290; a scribe-poet 291; *Sūlāku'l-mulūk* 348; Nawā'ī's Diwāns arranged 419; Histories of Tahmāsp 622; *Ḥabību's-siyar* finished 687; *Tārīkh-i-ṣalātīn-i-afāghāna* 693, 701;—Kasan Imprint misleads 259; a questioned reading 266;
,, Persian MSS. in the I.O. Library, H. Ethé—Khw. Hijrī 153; Husain *Nishapūrī* 288; *Shāh u Darwesh* 290; a scribe-poet 293[1];
,, Turki MS. in B. M., C. Rieu—the author of the *Sang-lākh* App. A, v; the *Shaibānī-nāma* 289.
Catamites 26, 42–5–9, 278, 396 (*cf.* 174 n.).
Cathay and the way thither, ed. Sir H. Yule (Hakluyt Society vol. i, p. 20)—running-sands 215.
Caubul (Kabul), Hon. Mountstewart Elphinstone—millet 215; Judas-tree 216; Indus ford (*Nīl-āb*) 378; "Nangrahaur" App. E, xix.
"Chaghatāī Castles" 208.
Chaghatai families—'Alī-sher *Nawā'ī* a member of one, Preface xxxi.
Chaghatāī-Osmanisches Wörterbüch *see* Dictionaries.
Chaghatāische Sprach-studien, H. Vambéry—(*mil.*) pass-words (*aūrān*) 219; meaning of *gepanzert* 221, *bīldurga* 225, *sīghnāq* App. Q, lxiv.
Champion's portion won and explained 53.
Charihar, T. C. Haughton—Kohistan of Kabul 214–5.
Charles XII's sobriquet Iron-head 14.
Chār-ūlūs (Four hordes), Aulugh Beg Mirza, Preface xxx.
Childe Harold's Pilgrimage—tambourgi 247.
Chinese Turkistan, P. W. Church—marāl 8.
Chingiz-tūrā (*ordinances*) respected 155, 298.
Chinūt, D. G. Barkley [*JRAS. 1899*]—its position 380.
Chirkas sword 65.
Chishti order 666.
Chrestomathie Turque, Berézine—the *Mubīn* quoted 438, 630.
Chronograms 85, 135, 152, 217, 344, 427, 575, 596.
Cider 83.
Circumcision 14, 69.
Coincidences 71, 123, 261, 686.
Coins—*ashrafī* 446–60; *āsm* 383; *kipkī* 296; *sikka* (coined money?) 277; *shāhrukhī* 379–83, 400, 408, 417–46–78–9, 523; *tang* 641; *tanka* "black" (*i.e. copper*) 521, "white" (*i.e. silver*) 338–9, 344, 446, 521–7, 641, App. P, lvii; "red and white" (money) 522; Bābur's "vassal coins" 354–5–6, App. H, xxx.
Confections—*ma'jūn*:—used in excess 16; gifts of 373; parties on non-drinking-days 447; eating of 377–83–84–88–93, 410–12–15–16–18, 420–2, 448–50, 580–8, 615–50–59–83; *kamālī* 373.
Congregational Prayer—unbroken attendance at 283.
Countermark [*Bih-būd*] on coins 277, App. H, xxv, xxvi, xxix.
Cross-bow, Sir W. F. Payne-Gallwey—archers' marks 34; bow-shot distances 140; what may apply to Bābur's *zarb-zan* and *tūfang* 667.
Cunningham, Maj.-Gen. Sir Alex. *see Indian Eras* and Reports on Arch. Survey.
Customs—Musalmān scruples about burial-places 246; the Champion's-portion 53; circumambulation of tombs 54, 285, 301–5–6, 475, and of the sick 701; amongst combatants' wives 22, 268; dipping 16 times in bathing 151; levirate marriage 23; mourning rites 32, 246, 293; a nativity-feast 344; nine a mystic number *see s.n.* nine; an ordeal of virtue 211; divining from sheep-blade-bones 233; pillars of heads 232, *i.a.* 573–6; rock-inscription 153; signs of submission 53, 232–3, 243; succession in Bengal 482–3 n. 5; unveiling a bride 37; gifts from those marrying 43, 400; gifts by wives *q.v.*
Cyclopædia of Archery *see Kulliyatu'r-rāmī*.

[1] This Cat. contains the Turkī MS. of the Bukhara Compilation, once owned by Leyden.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · सत्यमेव जयते

Index III. General

Noticeable words:—*Chāchī* 13; *chāghīr* 83, 298; *chāpūk*, slash-face 68; P. *chārdara* 80, 629; *chaughān* (polo) 26; P. *chalma* 624; H. *chaukandī* = Ar. *ghurfat* and P. *chār-dara* (?) 629–63; *chāpkūn* 324; *chīqār* (exit) 44; *yinka-chīcha* 616; *chuhra-jirga* 50, 227, App. H, xxvi–vii.

Dabistān, Mir Zū'l-fiqār 'Alī'u'l-ḥusainī (*pen-name Mūbad*)—Nānak founder of the Sikh religion 461; Rādiyān sect 622; [concerning the authorship of the book *see* JRAS. H.B.'s art. *q.v.s.n.*].

Darwesh-life—soldiering abandoned for 262; return to 583.

Dating by events:—Battle of the Goat-leap 16, Dispersion of Airzin 20, Battle of Kānbā'ī 111–2 [*T.R. trs. 119*]; the dating of 935 AH. 605, App. S.

Defrémery C.—[*J. des Savans 1873*], art. *Les Mémoires de Baber* (P. de C.) 562.

De Paris à Samarcande, Madame Ujfalvy—(*see nn. on pp. named*); Barā-koh 5, 6; Samarkand 74–5; *garā yīghāch* (hard-wood elm) 81; paper-pulping mortars 81.

De Saçy, A. L. Silvestre (*Nat. et Ex. 265, 285*)—Ḥusain Shaikh Timūr 273 (*cf. Daulat-shah* (Browne) 538–9); date of Hilālī's death 290.

Dialects of the Hindu-kush, Col. J. Biddulph—Khowār 211; forms of "nine" App. E, xix.

Dictionaries, Lexicons, Vocabularies:—[*see nn. on pp. named*]:

,, of Antiquities, W. W. Smith—clepsydra 516;

,, Arabic-English Lexicon, E. W. Lane—*akhmaīl* 336;

,, *Arabes, Supplément aux Dictionnaires*, R. Dozy—*bahrī* (a falcon) App. M, xlvi;

,, *Bahār-i-'ajam* (Pers. Dict.), Rāi Tikchana Bahār—a sign of fear 232; the Taftazānī Shaikhs of Islām 283;

,, *Burhān-i-qāti'* (Pers. Dict.), Muḥ. Ḥusain b. Khalfa'u't-tabrizī—*iāāra* (dado) 80;

,, *Chaghatāī-osmanisches Wörterbuch*, Shaikh Sulaiman Effendi (ed. Kunos)—*tunqiṭār* 464; *qūṭān* App. N, k; *sīghnāq* App. Q, lxiv;

,, English-Persian, A. N. Wollaston—a rare meaning 648;

,, Hindustanī-English, D. Forbes—changed name of an orange 511; "needle-melting" citron 513; great millet (maize?) 514; names of days 516; gongman *ib.*;

,, Hindustanī-English, J. Taylor [ed. W. Hunter]—"sang-tara" and "Cintra" App. O lii;

Dictionaries, Lexicons, Vocabularies (*continued*):

,, of Islām, J. P. Hughes—turbans 15; eating of food 44; *maghab* 463; the Eight Paradises 646; legal endowment 701;

,, Oriental Biographical, T. W. Beale [*ed. Keene*]—Khw. Naṣīr *Tūsī* 79;

,, of Oriental Quotations, C. Field—a common couplet 22;

,, Persian-English, F. Steingass—176, 202, 286, (*metres*) 514, 527, 630, *qizil-bāsh* 643;

,, Persico-Latinum Lexicon, I. A. Vullers—*shash-par* 160; *kaka* 502; *gharau* 514; *rād* (*whence Rādagān*) 622;

,, Pushtū-English, H. J. Raverty—Multakund 211;

,, *Sang-lākh* (Turki-Persian), Muḥ. Mahdi Khān—described App. B, v; *kharpala* (the "Qarshi birdie") *ib.*; contains verses entered as by Bābur 439;

,, Sanscrit-Bengali-English, Haughton—a stork 499; gula-prawn 502;

,, of Towns (*Majama'u'l-buldān*), Yāqūt—"Akhsīkis" 9, 10;

,, *Turc Oriental*, A. Pavet de Courteille—Bābur's verses quoted 439, 526; a wag-tail 501; a meaning 628; Bābur's script App. Q, lxiii;

,, Turkī Vocabulary, R. B. Shaw—*kūkbūrā* (a game) 39; *gūrūgh*, reserved land 81; *aūpchinlīk*, 4 horse-shoes and their nails 176; *chārūq*, brogues, and *chāpān*, long coat 187; *qālpāq*, felt wide-awake 258; *qūsh-begī*, a Court official 278; *shaghāwal* ib. 463; *jīrān*, a deer 491; *qīn*, scabbard 503; *akhtabegī*, master-gelder 538; *būlghār*, a rendezvous *etc.* 592;—Part II J. Scully—*qodān*, water-hen 224; *kīklīk* (*caccabis, chikūr*) 496; *'aqqa*, magpie 501; *qīrīch*, swift 501; *būtā*, a plant 505; *amān-qarā* (perhaps maize) 504; *aīrkāk-qūmūsh*, male-reed 514.

Diseases and accidents:—(*a*) **Babur's** saddle turns 147; sciatica 253–4; boils 254, 657–60; dislocated wrist 409–13–20; tooth breaks 424; ear-ache 310, 601–8–15; fall of river bank 655; fall of tent 678; wounds of head 150-167, —leg 167–9, —arm-pit 176; **his illnesses:** —unspecified (928) 365; catarrhal discharge (*rezāndaīgh*) 446–49–51; fever (903 AH.) 88–9, (911) 247, (925) 399 to 401; (934) 585–6–8, 603–4, (935) 619–20, (937) 702–3–5; (*b*) **Of others:**—childbirth 36; small-pox 48; "violent illness" 45; frost-bite 116, 311; cold 151; ulcerated hand 125; siphylis 279; pestilence 524; paralysis 620; malarial fever 4, 8; fever 33, 246.

Diversity of place-names through trs. *see* (*e.g.*) Qīzīl = Surkh, Safed = Spin.

Dividing line of the Afghāns and Khurāsān 200.

Divorces 267–8, 329.
Dīwān-i Bābur Pādshāh, [*ed. Sir E. D. Ross*] —not Bābur's earliest collection 438–9, 447; appears referred to 642; verses suiting his moods and deeds 604, 626–44, 705; verses of the Dīwān in the B.N. 526–75–84–89; the *Wālidiyyah-risāla* and B.'s new ruler 643; Elizabethan conceits 645; concerning the Rāmpūr MS. App. Q, (illustration); 585; 635.
Dīwān-i Khwāja Ḥāfiẓ [*ed. H. Brockhaus, trs. W. Clarke*]—a couplet 411.
Dīwān-i Nūru'd-dīn 'Abdu'r-raḥmān Jāmī—a quatrain plagiarized 257.
Dīwān writers mentioned by Bābur—Āhī 289; Ahlī 290; 'Alī-sher *Nawā'ī* (Pers.) 272; Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* (*Turkī*) 259; Kāmī 290; Saifī 288; Suhailī 277; Muḥmūd *Barlās* 51; Muḥmūd *Mīrān-shāhī* 46.
Domestic animals—ass 144; buffalo 231, 393, 454, 490; camel :—*khachar* 74, 249, *tīwa* 232–5, 240, 376–91; camels counted 391; flesh eaten 251; cost of keep 489; gift of 382;—cattle 150, 231–4–5–8, 333–96, 454; symbol of submission 232;—dog 144, 224; elephant *s.n.* Nat. Hist.; horse *see s.n.*; mule 194, 338; sheep 50–5, 71, 228, 234–5–8–9, 249–50, 394; swine 211; yāk 55, 490 (here *baḥrī-qūtās*) App. M;—fowls 82, 213; goose 82; pigeon 13, 259, 401.
Domestic appliances — china 80, 195, 407; festal ornament 304, App. I; drinking cups 489, 298 and 552; fuel 223, 311; goat-skins 371, 421; gong 515; knife 44; lamp 518; litter 254 and 401, 331 n. 3, 268; rope 509; spoon 44, 73 n. 1, 407, 509; table-cloth 44, 132; tooth-pick 407; torch 213–34, 387–8, 518.
Dreams—Bābur's 132, (attributed) 132 n. 2, App. D, xi; another's App. D, xii.
Dress, articles of—*bāsh-āyāq* = *sar-u-pā* (head to foot) *i.a.* 159, 393; bathing-cloth (*fūṭa*) 275, 527; brogues (*chārūq*) 187; caps :—black lambskin (*qarā-qūzī būrk*) 258, ermine (*as būrk*) 150, *Mughūl būrk* 15, 179; *mufṭūl* or *mufṭūlīāg Mughūl būrk* 159; helm-cap (*dūwulgha būrk*) 167;—*chār-qab* 304, 527; clasp (*gulāb*) 156; girdle (*tak-bund*) 156, (*bīl-bāgh* lit. waist-band) 298, (*kamr-bund*) 642; cymar (*khimār*) 561; coats and tunics: —*jāma* 652, surtout (*jība*) 303, 632, long coat (*chāpān*) 187, sheep-skin coat (*postīn*) 181; short tunic (*nīmcha*) 652; tunic and coat (*tān*) 14, 51, 159, 166, 371, 400; clothes-in-wear (*artmāq, artmāq*) 339; torque (*tauq*) 561; head-wear (*bāshlīq*) 632; *lung* (*dhoti*) 519; rain-cloak (*kīpīng*) 389; feather tippet 496; turban 14, 33, 101, 258; turban-aigrette 225, 325; wide-awake (*qālpāq*); vest (*kūnglāk*) 171.
Drums—nagaret 144, 155, 250, 337, 369, 628; of departure 235, morning 392, saddle 163–4; drumming sound [at the Running Sands] 315; dismissal of 595; tambour-player 247.
Durch Asien's Wüsten, Sven Hedin—Farghāna wind 9.
Dynasties—Bāhmani 482; Qīlich 29; Tughluq 451; Shaibānī's destruction of 39; "Mughul Dynasty" a misnomer in Hind 158 (*see s.nn. Turk and Mughūl*).

Noticeable words :—*dāhān*, a difficult defile; *dādā* 157 (*see taghāī*); Ar. *daur*, warp of a bow, App. C; *dīm* [*T. root de, telling*] = P. *san*, numbering 154[1], 161, 468, Add. Note, P. 54.

Ear-rings 510 (*where add (in l. 5) an omitted passage entered in App. O, liv*).
Economic Products of India, Watts—date-plum 210; fish-drugs 226; oranges var. 512.
Editors mentioned *in loco*—A. S. Beveridge, G. B.'s *Humāyūn-nāma*, and Fac-simile of the Ḥaidarābād Codex; H. Brockhaus, *Die Lieder des Ḥafis*; E. G. Browne, *Tazkirātu'sh-shu'arā* (Memoirs of Poets), *Tārīkh-i-guzīda* (Select History); C. M. Fræhn, *Shajarat-i Turk* (Genealogical Tree of the Turk); N. I. Ilminskī, *Bāber-nāma* (Kasan Imprint); I. Kūnos, Shaikh Sulaimān *Effendī's* Vocabulary; D. C. Phillott, *Tazkirāt-i Ṭahmāsp*; E. D. Ross, *Bābur's Dīwān* (Rāmpūr MS.), and Three Turkī MSS. from Kashghar; C. Schafer, *Siyāsat-nāma*; R. C. Temple, *Peter Munday's Travels*; F. Veliaminof-Zernov, *Abūshqa*; H. Yule, Wood's *Journey*.
Einblikke in den Farghana Thal—A. I. v. Middendorf—winds 9.
Elphinstone, Hon. M. — his Codex *see s.n. Bābur-nāma*.
Embassy from Bābur to Moscow App. Q, lxiii.
Embassy to Timur, Ruy Gonsalves di Clavigo (*trs. Sir C. Markham*) — Hindustan the Less 46; kneeling in greeting 54; Samarkand 74–5–8; Kesh 83.
Encyclopædia Britannica—range of temperature 204; Farīdu'd-dīn '*Aṭṭār* 271; rhinoceros 408; maize when first in Asia 509.
Encyclopædia of Islām — Réné Basset's art. Al-busīrī 620.
Erskine William—Preface xxxiii, xliii–iv–viii–ix, Cap. IV, [*see Memoirs of Baber and History of India*].
Essays, Lord Bacon—Ismā'īl *Ṣafawī's* personal beauty 441.
Etiquette and decorum — well-mannered 45, 271–3–6, 303; knees not crossed 33; feet hidden 34; deference to elders 303; epistolary 332; farewell 330;—**Interviews** :—kneeling 61–9, 301, 408; looking one another in the eyes (*i.a.*) 54, 64; embrace 160;—**Meetings** :—The Khāns with Bābur 54, 159, 169; the two Khāns 160; Timūriya

[1] where, in n. 3, for f. 183*b* and f. 264*b read* f. 103*b* and f. 264.

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · MINISTRY OF CULTURE · सत्यमेव जयते · GSL

reception 59; Bābur and the Bāī-qarā Mirzās 297–8–9, and elder Begims 301–97; his reception of Khusrau Shāh 193, Daulat Khān 459, Naṣrat Shāh's envoy 640–1.
Exemplars of Bābur—Preface, Cap. I.
Expédition scientifique Française, C. E. Uj[alvy —*yīghāch* (*measure*) 4; Aūsh (Ush) 5; Barā-koh 5; Bābur's serviceable "Farsi-gū" 7; miśreading (?) App. A, ii; distances near old Akhsī *ib.* v; Samarkand 74; Āb-burdan 152.
Explorations in Turkistan, R. Pumpelly—Āq-būrā-rūd (*Huntingdon's art.*) 5; Akhsī App. A, i, v.

Fair at Sakhī-sarwār, Michael Macauliffe— 238.
Famous Monuments of Central India, Sir Lepel H. Griffin—Gūāliār 605.
Fān-valley, W. R. Rickmers—[*JRGS. 1907*], Sara-tāq-dābān 129; Āb-burdan 152.
Farhang-i-asfarī [*Turki-Pers. Dict.*] *nihilam* explained 45.
Fauna of British India, Oates and Blanford—flying-squirrel and snow-cock 213 nn. 3, 6, 7; various birds 495, 497, 501.
Festivals—Bābur's Ramzān rule 584; Īd-i-fiṭr 66, 235, 311, 351, 410, 584, 683, 689; Id-i-qurb-ān 154; Nū-roz 236; approximation of Nū-roz and Īd-i-fiṭr 236.
Fifth-share (*Khams*) 324.
Five-days' World 50, 128, 328.
Flora Indica, W. Roxburgh—spikenard 392; *mahuwā* 505; *gūlar* 508; *chirūnjī ib.*; *kūrā* 514.
"Florio Beg *Beneveni*", Secretary to a Russian Mission, Preface xliv.
Folk-lore—test of a dead woman's virtue 212; blizzard-raising spring 219; "commerce with the Spheres" 275; eye-bewitchment 664; omen as to sex of an unborn babe App. L; succession customs 482.
Food (*ex. birds and fruits*)—bread 148 (*cf. A.N. trs. i, 421 for spiced bread, also Memoirs p. 144 n.*); brochettes (*kabāb*) 148, 415; betel 440; camel-flesh 493; carrots 542; cheese 394; meat cold 411; date-palm cheese 508; dried meat 542; fritters 541; haggis 506; hare 542; honey 203, 409, 440; lotus seed 660; mango preserve 440; millet porridge 181; pistachio nūts 508 (cf. *s.n.* Nat. Hist.).
A Frontier Campaign, Lord Fincastle—*khabr* = *shahr* 367; Katgola and Panj-kūra 374.
Frontier-posts 213.

Games and amusements—acrobats 635; cards 584; chess 38, 275–84–87; dancing 276–99, 303; dancing-girls 522, 634; dice 16, 275–8; draughts 16, 278; feats of archery *q.v.*; fights of cocks 259, rams 259, elephants 631, camels 631; improvisation and recitation of verse 16, 26, Preface xxx; *kūk-būrā* 39; leap-frog 26; pigeon-flying 13, 259; polo (*chaughān*) 26; wrestling 292, 660–83, Index I. *s. nn.* Dost-i-Yāsīn, Ṣādiq; hawking and fowling *see* k.v.
Gardens—**Andijan**:—Chār-bāgh 29, Ḥāfiẓ Beg's 108, Birds' 168, Aūsh 5, Asfara 7, Kāsān 10; **Tāshkint**:—Haidar Kūkūldāsh's 54, Poplar 145, 146; **Samarkand**:—Heart-expanding 78, 82, New 62, 138, North, Paradise, Plane-tree 78, Plain's 92, Porcelain, World-picture 78, Darwesh Tarkhān's 80, 81; **Kābul**:—Almshouse 315, Avenue 647, Bābur's Burial-garden 709 *see* illustrations, Chār-bāgh 249–51–54 346–97–98, 416–7–8, Haidar *Tāqī's* 198, 401, Khalīfa's 315, Little 198, Paradise 315–6–7, Plane-tree 401, 418, Private 346–97, Rendezvous (?) 346, Violet 395, 415–7; **Koh-dāman**:—Istālif 216–7, 398, 416, New Year's 246, Royal 418; **Ning-nahār**:—447, Adīnapūr 207 and n. 5, Chār-bāgh, Fidelity 207 n. 5, 208, 394, 409, 414–21–22, 443–7; Qarā-tu 395; **Herāt**:—'Alī-sher's 305, Marigold, Town, White 306, Raven's 134, 306; **Hindustan**:—*Ṣafā* (purity) 381, 665, (Agra), Chār-bāgh, Eight-paradises 531–3–7, 543–4, 548, 616–34–86, Gold-scattering 640–41, 689 n. 3, *708, Garden of Rest 709, **(Dūlpūr)** Chār-bāgh 603–6–15, Lotus 639, (on the Gagar) 465, (Sikrī 581–4, **(Gūāliar)** 607–10–12–13–14.
Gardening *see* "Indian" and "Manual".
The Gate—Lordship in 24; Bābur's 26, 32; the place of judgment 24, 197, 259; Gate-house 43; between-the-doors 24, 100, 133; waiting in 277; gate-ward post 166.
Gates of India, Sir T. H. Holdich—a Central Asian claim to Greek descent 22; head-waters in Koh-i-baba 216; a route 310.
Gazetteers:—[*see nn. on pp. named*];
,, of India [ed. 1908–9]—Observatories 79; Nīl-āb 206; Gūr-khattri 230; Pīr Kānū 238; Sawāti 378; Parhāla 387; Nagarahāra App. E, xvii, xx (Bellew); the Gagar (Kakar, Ghagghar) 465; Bāgar 573; Chandawār, Chandwār 581–9, 643; Lukhnūr 582; Sarwān 587; Sikandra Rao *ib.*; Gūāliār 605, 610, 611; Parsarūr 684;—Gujūr 250; Kakar 386; Luḥānī (var.) 455; Mundāhīr 700;—brackish streams 384; a ruined range 486; a hunting-ground (Bārī) 509; Jūna(h)pūr = Junpūr 676;—tree squirrel 492; frogs 503; *yāk* App. M, xlvii.
,, District Gs. of India:—Allahabad, (H.G. Neville), 653; 'Azamgarh, (,,), 680; Ballia, (,,), 664, 667; Etawa, (Drake-Brockmann), 644 nn. 2, 6; Fathpur, (H. G. Neville), 651; Fyzabad, (,,) 656, App. U; Ghazipur, (Drake-Brockmann), 658; Gualiar, C. E. Luard, 590–4–7, 605–9, 610–12–13–14; Gurgaon, (F. Cunningham), 578–80; Jihlam, (,,), 452, 461; Mainpuri,

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · सत्यमेव जयते · GCL

(E. R. Neave), 643–4; Rawalpindi, (F. A. Robertson), 452; Saran, (L. L. S. O'Malley), 664; Shahabad (D. B. Allen), 664; Sultanpur, (H. G. Neville), 683; Ulwar, Alwar (P. W. Powlett), 557–8.

Gazetteers of the Province of Oude, App. T, lxxv, lxxvi.

,, of the Turkistan Region, Col. L. F. Kostenko — **Farghāna**: — passes 2; fruits 3; cooking recipe 4; fever 4; running-waters 5; Aq-būrā-rūd 5; Khujand 7, 8; Mogol-tau 8; Sang-ferry 176; —**Samarkand**:—74; extent of town 75, 145; Kohik-sū 76; paper-making 81; Āb-burdan 15; three passes 83, 90, 129; Lake Iskandar 129; —distances 4, 6, 75, 84; ravines App. A, ii; various *ib.* v; rapid riding 25; *kūh-būrā* 37; Sārts and their tongues 6, 7; Central Asian claim to Greek descent 22.

Géographie, Abū'l-feda [*trs. Reinaud*]—land cultivated by the Zar-afshān (Kohik) 76; Naṣīr *Tūsī* 79; names of Qarshi 84.

Geography and History of Bengal, H. Blochmann—Habshi succession-customs 452.

,, *of the Qandahār Inscription*, T. Beames [JRAS. 1898]—revision incomplete App. T. xxxiv.

,, *Oriental* [*Ashkālu'l-bilād*] Ibn Hauqāl, [*trs. Ouseley*]—absorption of the Sīr 3; "Banakaṣ" 9; Akhsī App. A, ii, iii; Kohik irrigation 76; Samarkand Gates 77; Qarshi names 84.

Geographical unit, [*village and its cultivated land*] 3.

Geschichte von schönen Redekünste Persiens, Freiherr v. Hammer-Purgstall—Hilālī 290; *Shāh u Darwesh* 290; Sām Mīrzā's jeer 648.

Ghiyāsu'l-lughāt (Pers. Dict.), Muh. Ghiyāsu'd-dīn *Rāmpūrī*—*kardī*-peach 504.

Ghulām-i-muḥammad (*collaborator with Raverty*—Nijr-au 213; Nīl-āb 206; Bābur's frontier-posts 213; a route 208.

Gibb, E. J. Wilkinson, Memorial Trust—Preface xlvii.

Glossary of Terms, H. H. Wilson—*ser* (*sīr*)-measure 517; *tanāb*-measure 630.

The Golden Bough, T. G. Frazer—a succession custom 482.

Goswara Inscription, Kittoe and Kielhorn [*J.A. 1888*]—App. E, xviii–ix, xxii.

Grant, Mr. Ogilvie—his help App. B, vii.

Great Diamonds of the World, E. W. Streeter—its Koh-i-nūr account incomplete 477.

Greek descent, 22, 341.

Guest-begs 141, 227.

Gul-badan Begim (*Lady Rosebody*) *see* H. N.

Gulistān, Sa'dī [*trs. Eastwick*]—quoted 42, 152–8, 190, 313.

Gulzār-i-Bihār, Ajodhya Prasad—rulers in Tirhut and Darbanga App. P, lvii; varied by Sir G. A. Grierson (*J. A.* 1885) *ib.* n. 1.

Noticeable words:—P. *gosha*, bow-tip and notch App. C; P. *gosha-gīr*, an archer's repairing-tool 160–6, App. C, = *chaprās* and *kardāng*; P. *ghūnchachī* 17.

Habību's-siyar, Khwānd-amīr—[*see nn. on pp. named*]; relations with the *Bābur-nāma* 37, 127, 256, 328; value as a source 70, 348, 426; not used for *The Memoirs* 347; used by Bābur 11, 256–91; completion of 687; —Kinsmen of Bābur 13,[1] 18, 34–5, 46–8, 50, 61, 90, 111, 127;—Bābur 29, 147, 184, 297, 354–7, 432–7, 704;—various persons 25, 38, 47, 50–4–8, 72, 98, 111, 128, 249, 396; [Bih-būd] 227 and App. H, xxvi, 579, 621; *varia* 133, 244–96, 327–8–9, 463 (*n. where read Tamarisk*), 469, 617–22;—Herāt 305; Chār-shamba 71; *khīsāk* 66; Nizāmī 85 (*where in n. read l. 2*), H.S. iii, 44, 167.

Hafṭ Iqlīm, Amīn Aḥmad *Rāzī*—celebrities of Chīrkh 217.

Hand-book to Dihlī, H. J. Keene—places visited by Bābur 475.

,, to Bengal, Murray's—observatories 79; Dihlī 475, 704.

,, to the Panj-āb, Murray's—Qandahār Inscription App. J, xxxiii.

Hawking and fowling—experts in 31–8, 40–5, 67, 270–3–6; birds with dogs 224; a story 254; lost hawk 394; Bābur's gift of a goshawk (*qāz chīgha*) 385; Aḥmad *Mīrān-shāhī* and goshawks 34, Add. Note, P. 34.

Herāt's high standard of proficiency 283, Preface xxx; *see* Index II.

Herat, On the city of, Col. C. E. Yule [*JASB. 1887*]—280, 305–6.

,, B. de Meynard (J. A. xvi)—257, 305–6–7, 326.

Hidāyat, Burhānu'd-dīn 'Alī *Qilīch* (*trs. C. Hamilton*)—its author's birth-place 7, 76; held in honour 76; his descendant 29; *Khams*, the Fifth 324.

Hidāyatu'r-rāmī (The Archer's Guide), Amīnu'd-dīn (T. O. MS. 2768)—*nāwak* 142; *gosha-gīr* App. C, viii; (*cf. AQR. 1911, H.B.'s art. Oriental Cross-bows*).

High Tartary, R. Shaw—*tanga*, (*coin*) App. P, lvii.

Hindū-shāhī rulers in Kābul 200.

Hindustani uses of "Khurāsān" 202 and other words 455–88–91–92–99 (*where for yak-rang read bak-ding*); pronunciation 380, 484.

Hinks, Mr. A. E. (*R.G.S.*), estimate of distance from Kishm to Qandahār 621.

Histoire de Chingiz Khan, F. Pétis de la Croix, the elder—Gūk-sarāī 63, Ascension Stone 77.

[1] For "H.S. ii" read H.S. iii—also on p. 244.

Histoire du Khanat de Khokand, L. Cahun—Farghāna winds 9.
,, *du Khanat de Khokand*, Gen. V. R. Nalivkine—Sarts 6; Akhsī App. A, i, iv, v; tradition of Bābur's abandoned child 358.
,, *de Timur Beg*, F. Pétis de la Croix, the younger—Samarkand Gates and walls 77 (*see Zafar-nāma*).
Historical Sketches, Col. Mark Wilks—*wulsa* (flight *en masse*) 486 7 (*where for "ūlwash" read ūlwan*); Add. Notes, P. 487.
Histories:—(*see nn. on pp. named*).
,, of Bukhara, A. Vambéry—descent of chiefs 244.
,, of Gujrāt, E. C. Bayley trs. *see Mirāt*.
,, of India, Elliott and Dowson—Tarkhāns 31 (*where add (n. 4) references vol. i, 300, 320-1, 498*); Farmūlis 456, 675; Bugiāls 452; *varia* 274, 440-77, 652-9, 693; places 191, 219, 457, 582, 699; earthquake 247; Mīān = Shaikh 457; a B. N. source 348, 428-39, 621; *The Malfūzāt-i-Timūrī* 653; supersession of B.'s sons proposed 703.
,, of India, Baber, W. Erskine—148-94, 247, 332-8, 343-6, 361, 440-78, 520-2, 562, 651, 702; gunpowder 369; coins and Revenue List 446-78, 520-22, 627, App. P, lv; value of the book 428.
,, of Musical Sounds, C. Carus-Wilson—215.
,, of Ottoman Poetry, E. J. Gibbs—double meaning in composition App. Q, lxiv.
Hobson-Jobson, Sir H. Yule (*ed. Crookes*)—(*see nn. on pp. named*), Byde (*var.*) Horse 470; the Koh-i-nūr 477; black-buck 491; gynee-cow 492; partridge cries 496; rock-pigeon (bāghrī-qarā ?) 498; coucal 500; *koel* 501; mango 503; plantain 504; "mohwa" 505; *kishmīsh* 505; *jambū* 506; jack-fruit 506; toddy 509; an orange 511; shoe-flower 513; ghurry (clepsydra) 516; *ser* (measure) 517; "bowly" (*baolī*) 533; "talookdār" 621; "cuscuss"-grass 631; "moonaul" (monal) App. N, xlix; "choki" App. V, lxxxi.
Holy War—against Kāfiristān 46; Bābur's against Sangā 547 *et seq.* and Chandīrī 589; references to 579-83, 637.
Horse-accoutrement—Mughūl 160; mail 140-67, 380; saddle-bags 338.
Horses—*tīpuchāqs*;—a breeder of 38; mentioned 235, 303 and 336 (grey), 383 (almond-coloured), 401, captured at Qandahār 338;—Kābul horse-trade 202; horses bred for sale 235; how fed in a siege 145; eaten on a journey 148; swim the Zar-afshān in mail 140; in snow 253, 308-11; single-file in snow 314; women's use of during a battle 268; murrians 31; abandoned 239, 379; invalided to Kābul 376-8; trodden down by elephants 457; restorative treatment 666;—tribute in 228, *etc.*; raided by Bābur 313; galloping-ground for 222; steps counted to estimate a distance 666—*qūsh-āt*, a change-horse led by a rider 453; corn and grass for 186, 221-2-3, 238; 311, 394; unfit grass 222; anatomical similarity with the rhinoceros 490.
Hot-bath, *hammām*—Samarkand 78, Akhsī 173, Kābul 346, Bābur finds none in Hindūstān 518, constructs in Agra, 532, 634, in Dūlpūr 614, 639.
Households and families—various 32, 123, 125-9, 141; Bābur's sent to him 71-2, 151-3; (B.'s) 184, 306; marching for Kābul 189, 191-7; Mughūls' come to B.'s army 192-4; B. safeguards 199, 460-1; driven like sheep 242 (2); Bāi-qarās desert 327; Shaibānī anxious about 135, 343; B.'s come to Hind 645-6, 650-7-8, 665-75-89; his wives and children 711-4.
Houses—high 221, windowed 201; in Chandīrī 597; in Gūālīār 608.
Huma, a fabulous bird 26.
Hunting:—circle (*jīrga*) 114, 325, 424-50, 657; Bābur's hunting 296, 602, 707.
Humāyūn-nāma, Bāyazīd Biyāt—a commanded book 691.
Humāyūn-nāma, Gul-badan Begīm—(*trs. and ed. A. S. Beveridge*)—[*see nn. on pp. named*]; Adik Sl. 23; a betrothal 48; Khān-zāda 147; Māh-chūchūk 199, 342; Apāq B. 301; Mahdī Khw. 381, 688, 703-4, 579; 'Asas (1) 387, (2) 552; Māmā Atūn 148, 407; various men 408 and 640, 526; a begīm's manly pursuits 263; Māhim B. 344, 686; Mīrzā Khān 433 (*where, l. 2 fr. ft. read grand-"mother"*); Bābur's sons 436, App. J, xxxv, 619, App. L, xliii, 545; B.'s daughters 441, 522, 708, 713; Bābur's wounds 167, 524, 616, 630; his self-devotion 701, (illustration 702, Preface xxxii; his death 708-9; removal of body to Kābul 709;—references to the H.N. 347, 689, 691-4, Pref. xxviii; its Biographical App. 13, 705, 711.
Ibn Batuta *see* Travels.
,, Haugāl *see* Geography.
Illustrated London News—fortress gun and stone ammunition 595; rafts 673.
Indian Eras, Sir Alex. Cunningham—intercalary months 515; discrepant dates App. S, lxxi.
Indian Forest Trees, D. Brandis—[*see nn. on pp. named*], date-plum 210; cypress 222; weeping-willow App. I, xxxii; "mohwa" 505; bullace-plum 507; orange-like fruits 510; ebony-tree 585.
Indian Hand-book of Gardening, G. T. F. Speede—*sinjid* (jujube) 203; *amlūk* (date-plum) 210; *sambal* (spikenard) 392; "keeras" (cherry) 501; *kamrak* (*averrhoa carambola*) 506; *sang-tāra* (orange) 511; under-ground jack-fruit App. O, lii.

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · MINISTRY OF CULTURE · सत्यमेव जयते

Inscriptions—Bābur's at Āb-burdan 152, Bād-i-pich pass 343, Qandahār App. T;—on Ajodhya Mosque App. U; on B.'s tomb 710.
Inscriptions de Caboul, J. Darmesteter [*J. A. 1888*]—in Bābur's Burial-garden 710.
Intercession—Bābur's, through Ahrārī 620, through Imām 'Alī, 702.
"Islam"'s foes killed 370; its army 564.
Ivory 489.

Jogis—at Gūr-khattrī 230.
Journal of Travel, W. Griffiths—red apple 507; *cicada* s. of Ghaznī App. N, l.
Journey from Bengal to England, G. Forster—division of climates 229 (*where for* "*Travels*" *read Journey*).
Journey to the Sources of the Oxus, J. Wood (*ed. Yule*)—Kābul 199; Running-sands 201, 215; Hindu-kush passes (*Yule's Introduction*) 204; dun sheep 224; Nagarahāra regions App. E, xxiii.
Journeys in Biluchistan, Afghanistan and the Panj-ab, E. Masson—(*see nn. on pp. named*), Kābul 199, 200, 201, (fruits) 203–4; Shibr 215; Panjhīr 205; Nīl-āb (in Ghūr-bund) 216; Adīnapūr 207; Chaghatāī castles 208; a meaning of "Lām" 210; Running-sands 215; Judas-tree 216;—places 405, 412–17–45, 647; routes 231, 417; sign of submission 232; Nagarahāra App. E, xvii; "Babur Padshah's stone-heap-" (cairn) 416; Preface p. xxxviii.
Journey to India overland, A. Conolly—Kābul 199; *rawāj* (rhubarb) 203.

Kabul *see* "Cābool" and "Caubul".
"Kāfir"—uses of the word 481–3; 518, 577.
Kafirs of the Hindu-kush, Robertson—their wines 212.
Kaiser Akbar, Count F. v. Noer (*trs. A. S. Beveridge*)—finance reform 282.
Kehr, Dr. G. J. [*scribe of the Pet. F. O. School Codex of the* "*Bukhārā Bābur-nāma*"] see *Wāqi'-nāma-i-pādshāhī*.
The *Khamsatīn* (Two Quintets)—a reader of 15; imitated 288.
Khazīnatu'l-asfiyā [Treasury of Saints], Ghulām-i-sarwār—Khwājakī Khw. 67; Mīr Sayyid 'Alī *Hamadānī's* grave 211; Pīr Kānū 238; Jālalu'd-dīn *Pūrānī* 306; Sharafu'd-dīn *Munīrī* 666.
Khuṭba—read disloyally 52, 328; Bābur's compact 354–6; read in Dihlī for him 476.
The (Koh-i-nūr) diamond 477, 702.
Klaproth Jules—Preface xxxix, xlvii; [*see Archiv* and *Mémoires relatifs etc.*].
Kulliyatu'r-rāmī (Cyclopædia of Archery), Muh. Budhā'ī—*nāwak* 142; *gosha-gīr* App. C, viii; (*cf. Oriental Cross-bows, H.B. AQR. 1911*).

Noticeable words:—*khachar* 74, 249; *khāk-bīla* (leap-frog) 26; *Khān-dāda*; *kisāh* (old person) 66; *khve* (yeast) 423; *khyīk* 6, 8, 10, 224, 491; *khimār* = cymar (scarf) 561; *kūlāk* syn. *kunglāk* (pull-over vest, jersey) 171–5; *kukūrā* see *aughlāqchī*; *kūr-khāna*; Qarshī = Ar. *qasr* 84; *kūrūsh*, looking in the eyes, interviewing *i.a.* 54, 64, 640 (*cf. qūchāsh*, embracing); *kusarū* [?] 369; *kushlūq* 250.

La Grande inscription de Qandahar, J. Darmesteter (*JAS. 1890*), App. J, xxxiii–iv.
Lahor to Yarkand, Hume and Henderson—*yāk* App. M, xlvii.
Laidlaw (*JASB 1848*)—nasal utterance App. E.
Lane's Lexicon *see* Dictionaries.
Langlés art. Babour Preface xlv.
Law (Muhammad's)—on blood-vengeance 194, 251–8; Shaibānī's disregard of 329; Husain *Bāi-qarā's* regard for 258; Bābur's orthodox observance shown *e.g.* 25, 44, 111, 262, 370–7, 483, 547–51–74–89–96, and in the *Mubīn and Wāhdiyyah-risāla q.v.*; his orthodox reputation (*epitaph*) 711; his observance as to intoxicants 302, beyond his 23rd year 299, 302–3–4; his return to obedience (933) in 44th year 551–5; referred to 203 (*verse*) 645–7–8; his breaches of Law:—against types of verse 447, repented 448; against wine, *see s.v.* Wine.
Les Mosquées de Samarcande, Pet. Archeol. S.—74–8–7.
Les six voyages en Turquie, en Perse, et aux Indes, Jean Baptiste le Tavernier—the coin *casbeke, kipkī* 296.
Letters of Lady Mary W. Montagne—lovers' marks 16.
Letters—Nawā'ī's imitation of Jāmī's collection 271; Bābur keeps a letter of 910 to 935 AH. 190; his royal-letters (*farmān*) 463–4, 526, 617 (*with autograph marginal couplet*), others (*khatt*) 331–2; to Khw. Kalān 411 (*with autograph couplet*), 603 n. 3, 627, and (*reproduced*) 645; to Humāyūn (*reproduced*) 624; to Kāmrān 645–6. Preface xxxv, xliii; to Mahīm 374, 541; Letters-of-victory:—Kābul 319, Bajaur 371, Hisar-fīrūza 466, Kānwa 559–74, 580.
Levirate marriage 23, 267.
Levy on stipendiaries 617.
Lexicon Persico-Latinum, I. A. Vullers *see* Dictionaries.
Leyden John—tentative trs. of the Bukhara Compilation, Preface xlvii–viii–ix, lviii.
Life and Letters of Ogier G. de Busbecq [*trs. Forster & Daniel*]—explains "Sultanim" 29.
L'Inde des Rajas, L. Rousselet—Ghālīār 605.
Linguistic Survey of India, Sir G. A. Grierson—forms of "nine" App. E, xviii.
Loess 3, 30, App. A, ii.
Looting of assigned individuals 328.
Lord [JASB 1838]—Ghūrbund 205; Running-sands 215.

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GSL

Index III. General

"Lords of the Elephant" 563–73.
Lordship in the Gate *see* Gate.
Lotophagi, a fruit they ate 210; quoted 42.
Lover's-marks 16, Add. Note, P. 16.
Lubbu't-tawārīkh, Yaḥya *Kaswīnī*—an early (brief) source 349; dates the battle of Ghaj-dāvān 361.

Noticeable words:—*lām* (fort) 210; *likh*, *lūja*, *lūkha* (a bird) 498, App. N, xlvii.

Ma'āṣir-i-raḥīmī (a Life of 'Abdu'r-raḥīm Mīrza *q.v.*), 'Abdu'l-bāqī *Nahavandī*—Bābur's wife Ṣalḥa 713.
Ma'āṣiru'l-'umrā, Shāh-navāz-Khān—Mu'aẓẓam-nagar = Dīn-kot 206.
McGregor, Col. H. G.—meaning of "*ningrahar*" and "*nungnithar*" = 9 streams, App. E, xix.
Magic—rain making with the jade-stone (*yaḍa-tāsh*) 27, 67, 654; the stone used to ensure victory 623; Bābur's talisman to stop rain 423.
Majālis-i-nafā'is, 'Alī-sher *Nawā'ī*—mentions 'Abdu'l-lāh *Barlās* 51.
Making of a Frontier, A. G. A. Durand—Greek descent 22.
Malfūẓāt-i-tīmūrī (Tīmūr's Turki Annals)—not discredited by no-mention in the mutilated B.N. 653; Yūnas Khān and the book Preface xxix; an incentive to Bābur xxx, perhaps also at xxxii; their acceptance in a Persian translation by Shāh-jahān xlvi.[1]
Mammals of India, T. E. Jerdon—hog-deer 491.
Manners and customs of the modern Egyptians, E. W. Lane—drinkables 298.
Manual of Gardening, Firminger—cherries 203, *kamrak* fruit 506; an orange 511; *sadā-fal* 512.
Manufactures of Samarkand, cramoisy and paper 81, 305.
Marmion (*Scott's Notes to*), wild geese checked in flight 214.
Marriage, compelled 386, levirate 23, 267, legitimate 269; illegal 329.
The *Maṣnawī* of Jalālu'd-dīn *Rūmī* (*trs. E. H. Whinfield*)—read by 'Umar Shaikh 15, Preface xxx.
Materials for the History of India, Nassau Lees—amongst the sources for filling out Bābur-nāma gaps 428.
Maṭla'u's-sa'dain, 'Abdu'r-razzāk (*N. et Ex. xiv*)—Timurid suzerainty acknowledged in Dihlī [in 814–1411] 459.
Meal-hours—big breakfast 389; nooning 614–861.
Measures—**Linear**:—*aīlik* (finger-breadth) 489, 630; *arghamchī* (rope) 614; arrow's-flight (*i.a.* bow-shot), *i.a.* 8, 640; from gate-ward to Gate 316; *gaz* 611 n. 3; *kuroh i.a.* 76; *qadam* (step, pace) 75, 630, (of a horse) 666; *qārī* 7, 208–9, 489, 550, 611–29–30–31; *qārīsh* (inch) 489; *qūlāch* 406–93; *shar'ī* 76, 200; spear's length 196, 377, 474; *tanāb* (rope) 630; *tūtām* (hand-breadth) 630; *yīghāch* (Prs. trs. *farsang*) 4, 7, 9, 10, 25, 55, 76, 82–3–4, 99, 138, 208–17–18, 323, App. A, v n. 1;—**Time**:—Hindūstān divisions of the year 515 to 517; boiling of milk 175, 237;—**Weight**:—*bāṭmān* 263, 276; *mān* 699; misqāl 421–77, 632; *yatī* 477 n. 6, 517; *tāsh* (stone, silver & gold) 632; Kābul *sīr* (*ser*) 632, 546; Table of weights of Hind 517–8; *tūla* 517–41;—ass-load (*kharwar*) 228, 338–9, 374;—**Numeration** (Indian) 518;—**Capacity**:—*x* mills water-power *i.a.* 208, 216, 462–5, 581; (coins by the) quiverful 632.
Medical and surgical remedies:—dried plums (*prunes*) 82; water dropped from cotton 89; trepanning 106–9; seton, bandage (*yīldīz*) 169; powder for bone-growing 169; water-melon and narcissus 246, 399, 401; rose-water (*jūl-āb*) 400; antidotes to poison 511, 543; tonic powders 606; opium 608, 661; quicksilver 618; pepper-steaming 657, 660.
Mediæval geography and history of Central and Western Asia, E. Bretschneider—Almāligh and other old towns 2; Simīz-kint [*Fat-village*], a name of Samarkand 75; *Nāyān* explained 131.
Mémoires relatifs à l'Asie (*ii*, *134*), J. Klaproth—its valuable extracts from the Bukhara Compilation, Preface, Cap. III, Part III; Bābur's letter to Kāmrān, App, J, xxxv, (*see Archives*).
Memory, retentive, 290.
Merv Oasis, O'Donovan—Rādagān 622.
Metamorphoses, Ovid—Scorpio and Libra 623.
Migration enforced—of Mughūls of the Horde 20, 350–1; of Tramontane tribes 202–70, 322; of villagers to Bajaur 375, and planned to Sīālkot.
Military:—**Armies, size of**:—Maḥmūd (Ghazni) 479; Shihābu'd-dīn *Ghurī* 480; Aūz-beg 480; Daulat Khān *Lūdī* 451; Bābur, Qandahār 334, Bhīra 480, Pānipat 452–80; Ibrahīm *Lūdī* 463–80; Sanga 547; Ṭahmāsp at Jām 635;—Bābur's force in

[1] On this peg may be hung the following note:—The *Pādshāh-nāma* (*q.v.*) calls the author and presenter of the above translation "Abū ṭ-ṭālib" *Ḥusainī* (Bib. Ind. ed. vol. i, part 2, p. 288), but its index contains many references seemingly to the same man as Khwāja Abū'l-ḥusain *Turbatī*. The P. N. says the book which it entitles *Waqi'āt-i-ṣāḥib-qirān* (The Acts of Tīmūr), was in Turkī, was brought forth from the Library of the (Turk) Governor of Yemen and translated by Mīr Abū-ṭālib *Ḥusainī*; that what Tīmūr had done with this book of counsel (*dastūr-i-nasā'iḥ*) when he sent it to his son Pīr-i-muḥammad, then succeeding (his brother) Jahāngīr [in Kābul, the Ghaznis, Qandahār, *etc.*] Shāhjahān also did by sending it, out of love, to his son Aurangzīb who had been ordered to the Deccan.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · CSL

vous encounters (200 to 300) 91 ; (240) 100 ; (1000) 87 ; (240) 334–7 ; (10 to 15) 140 ; (100) 147 ; (10 to 15) 166, (3) *ib.*, (1) 167 ; (100) 173 ; (20 to 25) 177, (1) 178 ; — **Commands :** — Mingliqh (1000) 52 ; Nūyān (*Mughūl*) 151 ; Tūmān-begi (10,000) 17 ; Yūz-atlik (*Centurion of horse*) 143 ; Qūchīn 32 ; — **Army array :** — 108–13–55–98 ; 234–381 ; 468–71, 557–8 ; Bābur's organization and terms 334 ; flanking-movement (*tūlghuma*) 139, described 140, 473, 568 ; rallying-point 547 ; rendezvous (*bulghār*) 122–3, 592, 638 ; at the Sind-ferry 461–2 ; postings 113–39, 372, 595, 662–68 ; — **Various :** — A.S. Corps 674 ; army-list 451–2 ; camp-bāzār 67–8 ; Corps of Braves 28, App. H, xxvii ; discipline 66–7 ; necessaries for holding a fort 145 ; numbering (*dūm*) 154–61, 468, (*sau*) 451–2 ; pass-words 164 ; pillars of heads 232, 324–71, 404 ; war-cries 138–44–55–63–66 ; ways and means 228, 617 ; — Rājpūt fighting customs 595 ; massacres of "Pagans" 370, 484, 596 ; — **Appliances and constructions :** — axe (tool) 108, 379 ; catapult 59 ; camp defence :— ditch and branch 60–1, 110–17, 138, (908 AH.) 162, Rūmī defence of linked carts *infra* (932 AH.) 469–70, 550–58 ; draw-bridge (*pul-i-rawān*) 171–76 ; flaming-fire 595 ; guns *see* fire-arms ; ladders (*shātū*) 130–31–43–71, 368–70, 593 ; mantelet (*tūrā*) 108–13–55, 368, 469, 593 ; mines 53–9, 343–70 ; moat 10 ; pit 198 ; head-strike (*sar-kob*) 53–9 ; spade or shovel (*kūtmān*) 108 ; smoke 59 ; wheeled-tripod 550–7 ; — **Armour :** — helm 166–7, 396 ; cuirass (mail or wadded) *t.a.* 195, 315–96 ; the word *jība* 195 ; Qalmāq *jība* 175 ; coat of mail (*joshan*) 195 ; horse-mail (*kichīm*) *see* horse ; arm-protector, the 4 plates of mail, attachment (*gharjūla*) 167, 315, 396 ; — **Arms :** — battle-axe (*bāltū*) 160, 370 ; broad dagger (*jamdar*) 528 ; hanger (*khanjar*) 528 ; Hindū knife-(*kārd*) 528 ; lance (*neza*) 370 ; six-flanged mace (*shash-par*) 160 ; rugged mace (*piyāzī, Sanglākh Dict. f. 312b, kisgin*) 160 ; *casse-tête* mace (*kistīn*) 160 ; scabbard (*qīn*) 167 ; sword (*qīlīch*) 160–61–67, 315–70–96, 453 ; broad sword (*yāsi qīlīch*) 150 ; (*see Archery*) ; — **Carts** (*arāba*) for Rūmī defence :— (Pānīpat) ordered collected 468 ; 700 brought and used as described 468–9 ; — misleading omission from (E.'s) *Memoirs* 468 n. 3 ; — progress of the defences 469–70 ; mantelets used 469 ; (position of guns 473–74) ; — (Kānwa) carts supplemented by wheeled tripods 550 ; place of carts in the march out 550–57–58 ; carts the frontal protection 550–58 ; well-made in Rūmī fashion 550 ; [posts of matchlockmen and canoneers along the line of carts 569] ; carts in the battle 564–697, 471 ; centre troops move from behind them 570–71 ; carts advanced in front of Bābur 571 ; — (Jām) Tahmāsp's Rūmī defence 623, 635–36 ; — **Fire-arms :** — *firingī* (swivel-gun, *pierrier*) 472, 667 ; mortars (*qāzān*) 59 — the Ghāzī cast 536, tested 547 — used 570–99 — ineffective at Chandīrī 592–5 — its elephant-traction 489 ; mortars and (*adā*) carts landed 651 — used in the Gogra battle (*where "tope"*) 669–70–71 ; a larger mortar made, bursts 588 ; — *zarb-zan* (culverin) 473 — used at Pānīpat 474, Kānwa 564–9, 71, the Ganges-bridge 599, Eastern campaign 651–6 ; — *tūfang, tūfak* (matchlock) used 368–9, 466–9, 558–64–70–71–73, 599, 628–67–8–9 ; Tahmāsp's 622–35 ; — gunners and matchlockmen 368, their pay 617 and wellbeing 647 ; "fire-working" Bengalis 672 ; — *muljār* (gun emplacement) 593, 628 (*for bālqār?*), 668 ; — **Stone-missles :** — hurled by hand 109, 370, 595 ; legendary dropping of by birds 563 ; discharged from catapults 59, from mortars and matchlocks 109, 369, 431–73, 571–88–93–95–99, 617–67–70–79 ; — **Transport :** — pack animals 235 ; camels 232–5, 578, (*counted*) 391, 601–56 (*see Domestic animals*) ; elephants 489 ; carts (*baggage*) 237, 376–77, 468, 636, 700, (*gun*) 592–99, (*unspecified*) 601–51–56.

Minerals :— ribbon-jaspér 6 ; turquoise 8, 12 ; iron 12 ; jade 27, 67 ; ruby 194 ; silver and lapis-lazuli 214 ; lead and copper 485.

Mirāt-i-jahān-numā, Shaikh Muh. Baqā— Khwānd-amīr's journey to Hind 505.

Mirāt-i-sikandarī, 'Alī Muh. Khān (*trs. E. Clive Bayley*)—Gujrāt affairs 535 ; persons 562 and 614, 612 ; Gūāliār jewels 613.

Mirror-stone, (*Farghāna*) 7.

Miscellaneous Works, Greaves—Observatories 79.

Mohl, Jules—date of revision of *Tārīkh-i-firishta* 694 (*E. and D.'s Hist. of India iv, 209*).

Mongolia, N. Prejevalsky (*trs. E. Delmar-Morgan*)—*aimāq* 49, explained Add. Notes P. 49.

Moon-stroke 608.

Mountain-passes leading into the valley of Bamian, Lt.-Gen. E. Kaye, C.B. [PRGS. 1879)—birds 213.

Mubīn (Exposition), Bābur—date of composition (928 AH.) 426, 437 ; described 437–8 ; Bābur's choice of its title 630, 653 ; thought during its composition 449 ; quoted 630 ; sent to Samarkand 653.

Mughūls and Bābur :—a faithful Mughūl 87–8 ; Mughūls enter his service 58–9, 189, 190–2–4 ; 245 ; support Jahāngīr against him *see t.a. sun.* Tambal, 'Alī-dost ; offer to supplant him by Sa'īd *Chaghatāī* 351 ; sent to help him 101–4, oppose him 115 ; desert him 86–7, 104–5 ; Five Rebellions against him 105, 208, 313–4, 345–9, 361–2–3, 397 ; his following purged of them 427 ; his comments on them 66, 104–5,

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · सत्यमेव जयते · भारत

GSL

115-40, 172; a Mughūl chief's dying comment on them 363; "Mughūl dynasty" a misnomer 158.

Muhammadan Dynasties, Stanley Lane-Poole —Table of Timurids 262; various 479-82; certain Aūzbeg deaths 636.

Mu'inu'd-dīn al Zamji (*J.A. xvi, 476, de Meynard's art.*)—Kichīk Mīrzā's Egyptian information 257.

Muntakhabu'l-lubāb, Muḥ. Hāshim *Kh(aw)āfī* Khān—[*see nn. on pp. named*], a source for filling Bābur-nāma gaps 208; Sihrind, Sar-i-hind 383; siege of Chandīrī 596; varies Bābur's chronogram of the victory 596.

Muntakhabu't-tawārīkh, 'Abdu'l-qādir *Badāyūnī* (*trs. Ranking, Lowe*) Hasan *Hijri* 153; Bābur's Script 228, App. Q, lxii, arrowsped couplet 361; *Mubīn* 437-8; Chronogram of Sikandar *Ludī's* death 427; the haunted field of Pānīpat 472; Hasan *Mewāti* 523; Shaikh Gūran 526; Fārighī 621; Muḥ. *Ghaus* 690; quotes Bābur's Funeral Ode 709.

"Musalmān" as used by Bābur 99, 104, 268, 481, and by Shaikh Zain 553-5.

Musalman Numismatics, O. Codrington — various coins 632 [*see JRAS, 1913-4*].

Music—**instruments**:—*'ūd* (lute) 292, 395; *chang* (jews'-harp) 303; drum *see s.n.*; *ghachak* (guitar) 291; *nāī* (flute) 291, 303; *qānūn* (dulcimer) 278; *qūbūz* (guitar) 39; —**modes**:—76 n. 5, 136, 287, 422;—**performers**:—39, 278, 286-7, 291, 292, 422 (Bābur); at entertainments *passim*;—Banā'ī's rapid progress as a musician 287.

Noticeable words:—*āīnāq* 51 *etc.* Add. Note P. 51; *mīng* = P. *hazāra* 52; *mīng-begī* see *qūchīn*; *mihman-beg* 227.

Nadir Shāh Pref. xlvii.

Nagarahāra, Simpson [JASB. xiii?)—App. E. xxiii.

Narrative of the Journey of the Embassy to Kashghar (*Yarkand*), H. W. Bellew — Satūq-būghrā Khān 29.

Nasal utterance—its seeming products "*nīng*" (var.) = nine, App. E, xviii, xix, and "Tānk" = Tāq 233.

Natural History—**Beasts**:—those common to Kābul and Hind 222; wild ass 224, 325; wild buffalo 490, 657; *būghū-marāl* 8, 10, 114, 378, 491, 500;—elephant described 488, encounters with rhino and camel 451, 631, 657, in battle 463-70, 457-66-68, 529, 668, in hunting 657, killed by a fleeing foe 662, killed in Makka 563, statues of, at Gūāliār 609, various 590, 628-58;—ermine-weasel 492; yellow fox 114; flying-fox (bat) 500 (*and n. 6 where read f. 135*); *gainī* cattle 492; goat 16, 83; hare 10, 114;—*kiyīk*:—black buck, hog-deer and a smaller deer 222, 491, *āq kiyīk* (white) 6, 8, 10, 491, *qīzil kiyīk*, *arqārghalcha* (dun sheep) 224, 491;—tree-mouse 492; monkey, ape 211, 222, 492; musk-rat 214; *nīl-gau* 222, 490; pig 114; *qūchqār* (ram) 492; *karg* (rhinoceros) 378, 450-1-89, 557; squirrel 492; flying squirrel 213[7]; tiger 393, 664; *yāk* (*qūtās*) 55, 155, *bahrī qūtās* 485, 490, App. M.—**Birds**:—migration 220-4; catching 220-4-5; common to Hind and Kābul 220; decoy-birds 225; impeded flight 214, 496; special notes on App. B and N; combined sex-name 500; *dīng* (adjutant) 898, 498; *bak-dīng*[2] (adjutant) 499; *bāghrī-qarā see* sand-grouse and App. N.; Indian bustard and Great bustard 498; Large *buzak* (black ibis) 499; white *buzak* 499, 500 l. 2; buzzard (T. *sār*) 499, 500[3]; chameleon-bird *see lūkha*; cranes var. 224, 499; crow var. 500; ducks var. 224, 500; egret (*qarqara*) 224; golden eagle (*būrgūt*) 373, 500; florican 498[4]; goshawk (T. *qārchīghā* and *qīrghīcha*) 34, Add. Note, P. 34, 385; grey heron (*aūqār*) 224, 499; jungle-fowl var. 497; *kabg-i-darī* 214, 496-7, App. N, xlix (*see lūkha*); kūll, koel 501; Indian loriquet 494 n. 5; *lūkha* var. 213, 222, 496, Add. Note, P. 496 (*see kabg-i-darī*); magpie 500; green magpie 501; *mānek* (beef-steak bird) 499; *monal* 496, 497, App. N, *phūl-paikar* 497; *bulbul* (nightingale) 420, 501; northern-swallow 495; parrot var. 493-4; partridge var. 421-93-96-97; peacock 493; pelican (*qūqān*) 224, App. N, 1; pheasant (*qīr-ghāwal*) 3, 8, 10, 34, 114, 493-97 (*chīr*); *qīl-qūyirūgh* (*Qarshī-birdie*) 84, App. B; quail var. 34, 497-8; sand-grouse (*bāghrī-qarā*) 84, 498,[5] App. B; *sārīgh-āūsh*[6] 373; *shasak*;—Himālayan starling? 495 n. 3; *pindāwati* 495; house-*mīna* 495 (*add n. ref. 5*); pied-*mīna ib.*—sparrow (*chūchāq*) 8; snow-cock 213, 421, App. N, 1, (*see lūkha* and *chīrūrīka ib.*); white stork 499; *karcha* (swift) 501; wag-tail 498, 501; wild fowl 497; little green wood-pecker 501; *zummaj* 500 ("eagle," *add* Its colour is black);—**Fish and amphibia**:—migration 225; catching 225-7, 406, 682; of Hindustan

1 In n. 5 for "*parvāu*" read *parrāu*, and *read* Blanford.

2 which *read* (l. 17) for *yak rang*. The name *bak-dīng* appears due to the clapping of the bird's mandibles and its pompous strut; (cf. Ross' *Polyglot List*, No. 336).

3 Following the *zammaj* insert "Another is the buzzard (T. *Sār*); its back and tail are red". (*Cf.* Omission List under p. 500.)

4 *See* Omission List under p. 498.

5 After "Tramontane", *add* Its breast is less deeply black.

6 The bird being black, its name cannot be translated "yellow-bird"; as noted on p. 373 *sārīgh* = thief; [*sārāgh* or *sārīgh* means a bird's soug].

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · GSL

fish 503; cray fish 502; unnamed 663; frog 503; porpoise 502; crocodile var. 501–2, 663;—**Various**:—lizard 501–2; locust (*chūrtīka*) 421, App. N, 1; mosquito 204; snakes, 8, 147, 406; **Flowers**:—Farghāna 5, 10; Kābul 215–7; Peshāwār 393; Hind 513–5;—*arghwān* (red, the Judas-tree) 216–7, 305, (yellow) 217; hibiscus 513; jasmine 515; oleander 514, 580, 610; roses 5, 321 (couplet), 513; screw-pine 516; tulips 5, 215, 321; violets 5;—**Fruits**:—Farghāna 2, 3, 6, 8, 10; Samarkand 77, 82–4; Kābul 202–3–8–9–10–12–16–18–20–21; Hind 503 to 513, App. O;—*'ain-ālū* 506; almond 6, 7, 9, 223, 507–8; *ālū-bālū* 203; apple 2, 8, 77, 202–20, 507; apricot 6, 202; *badrang* 203; plantain (banāna) 208, 504; cherry 203; *chār ūnjī* 508; citron var. 203–8–10, 501–11; clustered-fig 508; coco-nut 509; colocynth-apple (*wild gourd*) 410–11 (*where for khunzal read hunzal*); coriander 211; corinda 507; date-palm 410–24, 506–8; date-plum (T. *qarā-yimīsh*) 203–10; fig 508; grape 3, 77, 202–3–10–12–18–21–507–8, 646–86–87; jack-fruit 506; *jāman* 506, 606; *jilghūza* (pine-seeds) 203–13; jujube (*sinjīd*) 196, 203; *chūhdā* 506; *kamrak* 506 (*where add, It has no stone*); lemon 512, 614; lime var. 512; lote-fruit 507; lotus-seed (*dūdhi*) 666; mango 503; melon var. 10, 82–4, 92, 411, 645–6; 686–7; mimusops 505; myrobalan 508; *nāshpāti* 3; orange var. 203–10–11, 414, 510, 512, Add. N. P. 512, 614, App. O, liii; pear 203; peach 203; pistachio 508; plum 82; monkey-jack 506–7; pomegranate 6, 8, 77, 202–8, 507; quince 202, 507–12; tamarind 505 (*n. ref. to būtā*) walnut 203, 508;—**Trees and plants**:—*amān-qarā*, maize (?) 504, small almond 223, *būtā* 505, *būtā-kuh* 221, clover, trefoil, *sih-barga*, *yūrūnchqā* 6, 209, 346, conifers, *archa*, 221–2, cypress 81, 222, *dhak* 472; ebony-tree 585, 614, hardwood-elm 81, grass (*cuscus*) 631 n. 2, holm-oak 213–16–23, madder 218, *mahuwā* 505–8, male-reed 514, mandrake and its similars 11, mastic 213–23, millet 81, 215, mulberry (*tūt*) 248, 494, olive 222, palmyra palm 509, App. O, liv, Pinus Gerardiana, *jilghūza* 203–13, plane 216, 398, poplar var. 13, 15, (*rūrūk*) 145 and 156, 414 (*where for "purslain" read poplar*), *qarjand* 223, reed 514, rice 210, 342, rhubarb 203, 345, 507, spikenard 392, sugar-cane 208, 388, *tabalghū* 11, tamarisk 14, 463 (*where, wrongly, "Tamarind"*);—willow 217, 306, (weeping) 304, App. I, (*amāl-bīd*) 512;—**Physical various**—**Climate**:—change on the Kindīrlīk-pass (?) 2; meeting places of hot and cold in Kābul 208 and 229, 220; both near the town 202; good climate Aūsh 4–6 Kāsān 10, Soghd 84, Kābul 263;—**Climes**:—Farghāna and Samarkand in the 5th 1, 74; Kābul in the 4th 199;—cold, Akhsī 116, Hasht-yak 151, Ghazni 219, 526, Khwārizm 219, upper Herī-rūd valley 311, Kābul 314;—

Various:—dust-storm 520, 32–6; earthquake 247, 367; solar eclipse 659; ice;—Sīr-daryā crossed on 151; Kābul ice-houses 215; near Parhāla 452; none had in Hind 518;—**malaria**:—Andijān 4, Khujand 8;—**rain**:—384, 425; rain-making *see* magic; rain-talisman 423; rainy season (various) 405, 507, 514–19, 677–8;—**snow**:—208, 215, 252, 314, 373; Himālayan snows 485; perilous journey in snow 309–11; snowfall of Samarkand and Kābul compared 77;—**wind**:—Farghāna 9 and n. 2, 151; Kābul 201; upper Herī-rūd valley 310; Hind 520, pestitential 524, 532, 654–7, does damage to Bābur's writings 658.

Nestorian Church 2.

New account of the East Indies (Edin. 1727), Alex. Hamilton—Malabar succession customs 482.

Nigār-nāma-i-hind, Sayyid Ghulām-i-'alī—a British monument at Pānīpat 472.

Nine a mystic number—9 Tarkhān privileges 250; 9 allowed offences 250; gifts by nines; [Cf. *Shajaratu'l-atrāk*, *Miles trs. p. 530*, for the root of reverence for the number nine].

Notes on Afghanistan and Baluchistan, H. G. Raverty—[*see nn. on pp. named*], Kābul rulers and river 200; river called Nīl-āb 206; 'Aqabain 201; Adīnapūr-region 207; Ghazni magic spring 219; migration of fowlers 225; Timūr's pillars of heads 232; place of Zū'n-nūn's death 327; "Kakar" 386; "Pātakh" (= *bāt-qaq* = quagmire) 403; But-khāk a vahāra-site 409;—**Various places** 206, 220, (Gūm-rahān) 236, 238–47–48 (2), "Chārīākar" (*Chāryak-ar*) 295, 345–73, 403, (Zābul) 405;—**Routes** 206–9, 212, 228–35–54; book needs revision 330–67; a collaborator 213.

Notes on the Chugani and neighbouring tribes of Kafiristan, Col. H. S. Tanner (*JRGS. 1881*)—map mentioned 209; Dara-i-nūr 210, App. F; Ning-nahār App. E, xix. [*Cf. Index II s.n. chūgān.*]

Notes on some monuments in Afghanistan, H. H. Hayden—Bābur's Grave (illustration) 710, App. V, lxxx.

Nouvelle Géographie; L'Asie Antérieure, Réclus—[*see nn. on pp. named*], Farghāna 4, 5, 9; distances (Akhsī) App. A, v, (Tirmiz-Hisār) 57; Samarkand 74, 83, 88; Mīl-i-rādagān 622; Kadgar (*i.a.* Qajar) 666; *sīghnāq* = fort App. Q, lxiv; *dābān* and other pass-names 54.

Noticeable words:—P. *nabīz a* 66, 72; *nihilam* (game-driving) 45; M. *nūyān* 131, 224–73.

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · MINISTRY OF CULTURE · सत्यमेव जयते

GSL

Observatories *see* Astronomy.
Omens—of the sex of an unborn child App. L; of success 466, 558.
Onau, Sir Charles Elliot — Badshāh-nagar named from Bābur's halt 675.
"Oolak" (baggage-boat), perhaps from T. *aūlāgh*, great 663.
Open-table, maintainers of 39, 45–9, 119, 227.
Opium-eater 385.
Oriental Biographical Dictionary, T.W. Beale (*ed. Keene*) *see* Dictionaries.
Oriental Proverbs, T. Roebuck—the "five-days' world" 50.

Noticeable words:—M. Oghlāt = T. Dūghlāt = Qūngūr-āt of Aūzbegs 22.

Pādshāh—uses of the word 1; title assumed by Bābur 344.
Pādshāh-nāma, 'Abdu'l-hamīd—*lacunæ* in an early copy of the *Bābur-nāma* App. D, x.
Pādshāh-nāma, Muhammad Amīn *Kazwīnī*—Bābur's gardens in and near Kābul App. V; [cf. *Malfūzāt-i-timūrī*].
Pagan *see* Kāfir.
Painting and painters—22, 78, 111, 272–91.
Painting and Painters of Persia, Martin—Bih-zād 291.
Pargiter, Mr. F. E.—on "*wulsa*" 487–8, Add. Note, P. 487.
Pass-names 54.
Pass-words *see* Military.
Penmanship and scripts—good writers 28, 111, 278, 291; the Bābur-script 228, 642, App. Q, lxii.
Pen-names—'Adilī 111, Ahī 289, Ahlī 290, 'Arūzī 288, Badakhshī 288, Banā'ī 286, Bayānī 278, Fānī and Nawā'ī 272, Farāqī 137, Gharbatī 261, Hātifī 288, Hilālī 290, Husainī 259, Kāmī 290, Sharaf 448, Suhailī 277, Tufailī 278, Wafā'ī 38, etc.
Persia and the Persian Question, Lord Curzon—its "Radkan" explained 622.
Persian Grammar, J. T. Platts (*ed. Ranking*) lunar months App. L, lxx.
Persian Poets, Sir W. Ouseley — Khwāja Kamāl 8.
"Pharoah" used as an epithet 39.
Poems of Nigāmī (*Meçon and Lahor eds.*)—*Haft Paikar* quoted 6; *Khusrau u Shīrīn*:—parricide 85, Add. Note, P. 85; death inevitable 182 [*here Turkī*], App. D, xi [*here Pers.; Maçon ed. iii, 1589*]; Fate an avenging servitor 251, Add. Note, P. 251 [*f. 281 in MS. of 317 ff.*]; swift action a maker of victory 625; lovers' marks Add. Note, P. 16;—the *Khamsalīn* 15, 288.[1]
Poems of Nūru'd-dīn 'Abdu'r-rahmān Jāmī—an exposition of the *Nafahāt* 284; the metre of the *Subhatu'l-abrār* adopted in the *Shaibānī-nāma* 289, and in the *Wālidiyyah-risāla* 620 (*where read rahmān for "rahīm"*).
Poems of Kipling—"My Lord the Elephant" 208; "The Border-thief" 308; "If——" 320.
Poison—suspected 302, 576; given to Bābur 541; revealed by rhino-horn 489; antidotes, lime-juice 511, Lemnian Earth 543.
Political Mission to Afghanistan and Seistan, H. W. Bellew—birds at Ab-istāda 240; Qandahār 430, App. J, xxxiii.
Polyglot List of Birds, E. Denison Ross, Ph.D. —373, 495–6–7–8, 500; App. M, xlvi.
Popular Religion of Northern India, W. Crooks—Sarsāwa 467.
Prayers, The Five—'Umar Shaikh's observance of 15; voluntary Sunnat-prayer 100; Bābur (*æt.* 12) less neglects the after-midnight prayer 44; Ahmad *Mīrān-shāhī* observes on drinking-days 33; a reverse case 111; Erskine on their "performance" 258; time expressed by their names *passim*.
Prisoners—rebels killed 69, 113; war-captives killed 233, 466–8; set free 37, 237, 313, 371, 413; traitors pardoned 317–9, 320, 345.
Projectile-throwing engines of the ancients, Sir W. F. Payne-Gallwey—stone ammunition 667.
Promotions—to beg's rank from the household-circle 104; household beg to Great Beg 86, 104; *yasāwal* to beg 273; to begship 87, 114, 278; *qūrchī* to *qūr-begī* 252; brave to beg 396;—a beg self-made 118; ('Askarī) to preside in Dīwān 628; (a Mīrzā) to royal insigna 662, 706; to use of the *tūgh* (standard), frequent.
Proverbs and sayings—90, 117, 24–5–8, 145–66–77–82–84–90–93, 223–7–8, 254, 310, 453–94, 542–3, 703.
Punishments—beard shaved off 404; blinding 50, 63, 95, 194, 266; bow-stringing 110, 194; quartering 238, 454, 543; hanging 345; impalement 341; nose-slitting 234, 383; parade mutilated 404, 234; shooting 543; skinning alive 542; for disloyalty 70, 113.
Puns and Quips—44, 115, 136–7, 150, 189, 287, 391, 529, 648.

Noticeable words:—P. *pahr* and *pās* distinguished 634; *postīn* 10.

Qandahār in 1879 AD., Le Mesurier—the old town 431; stone-ammunition *ib*.
Qandahar see *La grande inscription de Q.*
Qasīdatu'l-burda, Al-busīrī—Bābur works from its motive 620; [cf. Réné Basset].
qibla—discrepancy 79.
qizil-bash (red-head) 266, 618–22–30–35.
The Qoran (*trs. G. Sale*)—quoted by Bābur 194, 316, 449; read by or to him, remedially, 401, Add. Note, P. 401, 585; copied by him in his Script 228; obeyed as to the Khams (5th) of booty 324; re-

[1] For references to Nigāmī's text, I am indebted to Mr. Beveridge's knowledge of the poems.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

ferred to by him 517 ;—'Umar Shaikh a reader of 15, Preface xxx ; transcribers of 38, 481 ; recited 246, 301 ; frequent quotations by Shaikh Zain 553 to 6, 559 to –74 ; quoted on a Samarkand arch 77 ; sworn on 179, 557 ; Shaibānī makes exposition of 329 ; a collection of homonymous verses 285 ; Sale's Intro. referred to 562–3.

Quatremère, E.—(*N. et Ex.*) 446–59, (*J. des Savans, 1843*) 605.

Qirānu's-sa'dain, Amīr Khusrau—a couplet quoted 503 (II.B.).

Noticeable words :—*gābāq* 34 ; *qāchār* (punned on) 44 ; *qārī* (a measure) 7 ; *qarātiyāq* 101, 103 ; *qāzāqlar* (guerilla times) 35 ; *qāptāl* (part of a saddle) 253 ; *qūbayūzlūq* (fat-faced) 14 ; *qurchī* (armourer, life-guardsman) 1.a. 188, 288 ; *qūchīn* = *mīng-begī* 26, 40 ; *qūrghān* (walled-town) *i.a.* 3, 5, 8, 10 ; *qūrūq* (reserved land) 81, 168, 197 ; *qūshūq* (improvised dance and song) 24 ; *qumiz* (fermented mare-milk) 155 ; *qūchūsh* (embrace) 160 ; *qūlāch* (a measure) 406.

Races of Afghanistan, H. W. Bellew—Khīlīch 29 (*where read title as above*).

Raft—(Farghāna) 161, 180 ; (Kābul) 410–11–12–21–22–23, 447–8.

Rāmacārita, H. Sastri (*Memoirs, AS Bengal*) Nagarahāra App. E, xxii.

Rāmpūr MS. of Bābur's Diwān, Preface l, App. Q.

Rapid travel—Aūrā-tīpa to Bābā Khākī 25 ; Kishm to Qandahār 621 ; Kābul to Āgra 621.

Rashahāt-i-'ainu'l-hayāt [*Twicklings from the Fount of Life*] 'Alī *Kāshifī*—Khwājakī Khwāja 62 ; Ahrārī 620 ; [*not known to Erskine*].

Rauzatu's-safā, Mīr Khwānd—referred to (?) 11 ; Bābā-i-kābulī 14 ; Hazāraspī 50 ; a chronogram 85 ; the Chaghatāī Khāns (908 AH.) 161.

Récueils d'Itinéraires, Th. Radloff—fruit as food in C. Asia 3, 114 ; position of Yītīkānt 11 ; elevation to Khānship 21 ; Pul-i-mougak 68 (Khorochkine's art.) ; battle-cries 163.

Reports :—
,, *on the Ghilzai country*, J. S. Broadfoot [ed. W. Broadfoot]—birds at Ābistāda 240 ;
,, *of the Indian Archeological Survey*, Cunningham & Ferguson—[*see nn. on pp. named*], places Bābur visited 475–6 ; a Gūāliār dynasty's term of rule 477 ; Chandīrī 592–7, App. R, (plan) ; Gūāliār 605–7 to 13 ; App. R, (plan) ; Sambhal 687 ;—Annual Report 1914—*kos-mīnār* 629 ;
,, *on Karnal*, D. Ibbetson—Mundāhirs 700 ;
Reports :—
,, *of Mission to Kāshghar*, Col. J. Biddulph's art.—*marāl* 8 ;
,, ,, *Persian Boundary Commission*, W. T. Blanford's art.—*Pteroclas arenarius* App. B, vi ;—A. Gérard's art.—irrigation-channels of Aūsh (Ush) 4 ;
,, ,, *Settlement Operations etc.*, Reid—old alluvium on the Gogrā 667 ; narrowing of the river 669 ;
Reports (*I. O. Library*) I, VI, VII, J. Wood—vine-culture 210 ; Ghūr-bund 214 ; *bootr* (a plant) 222 ; climate-shed 229 ;—VI, VII, D. Leach—204–5–6–13–38 ;—IX, X, Alex. Burnes—Kābul 199 ; unchanging trade-habits of Luhānīs 235.
"Rescue-passage" 182, App. D ; Preface xlv (No. viii).
Revenue Accounts (*Bengal*), F. Gladwin—dating of 935 AH. 629, App. S ; *tanāb*-measure 630.
Revenue resources of the Mughal Empire, E. Thomas—coin-values 446 ; *tamghā* 553 ; Sikandarī *tanka* 577.
Revenues various—Farghāna 12, Tātār Khān *Lūdī's* 383, Kābul-town 250, Hindustān 520, App. P.
Rhétorique, Garçin de Tassy—*combinaisons énigmatiques* 202.
Ride from Samarkand to Herat, N. Grodekoff (*trs. Marvin*)—Pul-i-chīrāgh 69 ; Chārshamba 71.
Riyazu's-salātīn, Ghulām-i-husain—a Lūdī alliance 482.
Roads measured—Agra-Kabul 629 ; Munīr to camp by horse-paces 666 ; Chunār eastwards 659.
ruler, *mistār*—a new one for copying the *Wālidiyyah-risāla* 643.
Russian Policy in Central Asia, Grigorief (*Schuyler's Turkistan* App. IV)—Bābur's embassy to Moscow App. Q, lxiii ; Peter the Great's embassy to Bukhara Preface p. liii.

Sachau, C.—on the *Malfūzāt-i-tīmūrī* 653.
Sāhih-i-bukhārī, Ismā'īl *Khartank*—his native land 76.
Sainthood—courage a witness to 90.
Siyaru'l-muta'akhirīn, Ghulām-i-husain Khān—trepanning 105.
Salt, fidelity to 125, 440.
Samarkand begs—action of 52, 62, 86, 124–5.
Samarkandis—displeased with a Mirzā 42 ; overjoyed at his death 52 ; no scarcity in a siege 64 ; move against Bukhārā 65 ; oppose Bābur 72 ; their orthodoxy 75 ; joy at Bābur's return 131–3.
Sanctuary 63.
Sang-lākh see Dictionaries.
Sārt, Sāirt—Bābur's serviceable use of the name 6, 7, 149 ; a "Sāirt"'s blunder 169.
Science of Language, Max Müller—guest-tribes 227.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

Scottish service for the *Bābur-nāma*, Preface xlvii, xlviii.

Second Afghan War (*Official Account*)—its maps 201–6, 229, 314–32 ; Chār-dih 200 ; Qandahār App. J, xxxiii ; 'Alī-masjid 450 ; a valuable book in following Babur's campaigns, 333.

Second Journey through Persia, J. J. Morier (Hājī Bābā)—a bird App. B, vi.

Sects, Muḥammadan—Māturīdiyah, Ash'ariyah, Abū Ḥanīfa's 75–6, Shafi'ī 283 ; Radīyān 625.

Shāhī Kings of Kābul, Sir Aurel Stein—200.

Shāh-nāma, Firdausī [*trs. Warner*] Chāchī bow, *khadang* arrows 13 ; much read 15 ; Bāqī Tarkhān sketched 40 ; a couplet 557 ; a quatrain 571.

Shaibānī-nāma, Muḥ. Ṣāliḥ Mīrzā [*ed. Vambéry*]—[*see nn. on pp. named*], writes "Shaibānī" not Shaibāq 12 ; Sh.'s marriages, with Bābur's sister 17–8, 147, and with Zuhra *Āūzbeg* 126–8 ; his dealings with Zuhra's son 'Alī 126–8, with Bābur 144–6–7, with the Chaghatāī Khāns 182–3–4 ; later action 191–2 ;—Tambal 145, 244 ; others 40, 62, 101, 196 ; Chīn Ṣūfī 242–56 ; Khusrau Shāh's jewels 144 ; Oghlāt (Dūghlāt) 22 ; Chirkas sword 65 ; Khwāst a hell 221, *bāghrī qarā* App. B, v, vii ; the book and its author 64, 120–1–7, [*cf. Tuḥfa-i-Sāmi I.O. 655, f. 342*].

Shajarat-i Turk, Abū'l-ghāzī Mīrzā [*ed. Fraehn, trs. Désmaisons*]—[*see nn. on pp. named*], "Nurim" Sherim *etc.* 29 ; an archer's mark 34 ; *san=dīm* 154 ; *tūghāī, tūgāī* (bend of a river 643 ; a Shabān sulṭān 265 ; of Bābur's descent *see* its Introduction.

Shajarat'ul-atrāk, Aūlugh Beg *Shahrukhī* (trs. Miles)—Bābur's descent *see* its Introduction.

Sharaf-nāma, Sharaf Khān (*trs. F. E. Charmoy*)—Battle of Jām 635.

Sharafu'd-dīn 'Alī *Yazdī*—his book on enigmas 201 ; his *Ẓafar-nāma* (see *s.n.*) Preface xxix.

Shaving—Bābur's first 187 ; Humāyūn notes his in the B.N. 466 ; beard shaved as punishment 404 ; untrimmed by vow 552 ; head shaved 408, 649,

Shī'a heresy—instances 258–62–86, 111 (and return) ; Bābur's fatal Shī'a alliance, 347–54–55–61, Preface xxxv.

Sīkh religion—Nānak's exposition to Bābur 461 ; Nānak and Daulat Khān *ib.*

Siyāsat-nāma [*Traité de gouvernement*], Wazīr Niẓamu'l-mulk, [*ed. C. Schefer*]—use of a whip in making count of an army 154

Slaves—slave-women retaliate on their owner's murderers 63, are captured at the Samarkand ditch 73, taken by crocodiles 502 ; slave-agents in poisoning Bābur 541 ;—Shah Beg's faithful slave *see* Sambhal ; the chief-slave 346 ; slave-trade between Hind and Kābul 202.—Mīnglī Bībī, a slave-woman 269.

Song by Wordsworth recalled—the "undying fish" 305.

Spanish Literature, Ticknor—Montalvan on Lope de Vega 287.

Sport and politics under an Eastern sky, Lord Ronaldshay—*marāl* 8.

,, *and Travel*, F. C. Selous—*marāl* 8.

Square seal—Abū-sa'īd's 28.

Standards (*tūgh, qūtās-tūgh*—acclaimed 155 ; bestowed 372 *etc.* ; Bābur's 140–66 *etc.*

Sūlūku'l-mulūk, Faẓl b. Ruzbahān *Iṣfahānī*—value as a source 348 ; supports the form "Bābur" 356.

Supplément etc., R. Dozy *see* Dictionaries.

Swimming—man and horse in mail 140, 237 ; man and horse bare 237 ; competition 401 ; on bundles of reeds 673 ; Bābur's (in mail) 140, 603–55–660–61.

Noticeable words :—P. *sar-i-sabz*, green-head 66,703 ; P. *sar-kob* 53–9[1] ; *sangar* 232 ; *sighnāq*, a script App. Q, lxiii.

Ṭabaqāt-i-akbarī, Niẓāmu'd-dīn Aḥmad—[*see nn. on pp. named*], Bāburī Script 228, App. Q, lxii ; *Jang-jang* 370 ; date of Shāh Beg's death 437 ; Hazāras serve Bābur 457 ; Gujrāt affairs 535 ; Multan affairs 699 ; Bābur's Kashmīr force 692–8 ; the author's father 691 ; proposed supersession in Hind of Bābur's sons 644–88–92–93, discussed 702 ff. ; the book plagiarized 693 ;

,, *-i-bāburī*, Shaikh Zainu'd-dīn *Khawāfī see* B.N. and Zain ;

,, *-i-nāṣirī*, Minhaj [*trs. Raverty*] Sātūq-būghrā Khān 29 [*where read Ṭabaqāt*] ; Chandwāl 537 ; quoted by Bābur 479 ; described by Erskine 279 ; used in Appendix E, xxiii.

ṭamghā (*lit. stamp*), a transit or customs duty 250 ; forms the revenue of Kābul town *ib.*, Ḥusain *Bai-qarā* marks his stamps *Bik bud* (*valid*) 271 ; remission of 553–95 ; a *ṭamghāchī* clerk 629.

Tārīkh-i-'ālam-arāī, Mīr Sikandar—[*see nn. on pp. named*], its Ṣafawī outlook 349 ; Ṭahmasp's Āūzbeg campaign 622 ; Battle of Jām 623 ; insignificant appearance of 'Ubaidu'l-lāh 636.

,, *-i-badāyūnī* see *Muntakhabu'l-tawārikh.*

,, *-i-dāudī*, 'Abdu'l-lāh—"Shaikh" and "Mīān" interchangeable titles 457.

,, *-i-firishta*, Muḥ. Qāsim *Fīrishta* [*trs. Major-Gen. J. Briggs*]—'Umar Shaikh 13 ; a mistake 15 ; Bābur's reluctance to rank himself with Timūr 134 ; his single combats 329 ; his sobriquet

[1] Cf. Mr. G. Murray's trs. (Euripides i, 86) suggesting that the Wooden Horse was a *sar-kob*.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · GSL

Qalandar 523; his Embassy to Persia 340; his siege of Chandīrī 596;—Yar-i-'alī *Balāl* 91; Ghāzī Khān's literary culture 460; the cognomen *jān-dār* 566; Badrū-ferry over Gogrā 667;—value of the book as a source 208, 349, 694; date of its revision 694.

Tārīkh-i-Gāūlīārwār, Jalāl *Ḥiṣārī* and Hirāman—Gāūliār 605; Khw. Raḥīm-dād 607, 688, 704.

,, *-i-Ḥājī Muḥ. 'Ārif Qandahārī*—account of Qandahār 348.

,, *-i-Khān-i-jahān Lūdī*, Ni'amatu'l-lāh—helped in his book by Haibat Khan 693.

,, *-i-rashīdī*, [Muḥ.] Haidar Mirza *Dūghlāt* [*ed. Ney Elias, trs. E. D. Ross*]—**Places**:—Almaligh 2; Yīti-kīnt 11; Qilāt-i-nādarī 263; Qila'-i-gaṭar 21; Herāt 306; Qandahār [Insc.] App. J, xxxv; **Tribes** *etc.*:—tūmān-begs 17; *qūchīn* 26; *chuḥra-jirga* App. H, xxvii; Chaghatāīs and Mughūls distinguished 320; Chaghatāī or Timurid supremacy 344, Begchīks 50, 712 or Chīrās 155; Tarkhāns 31; Greek descent 317; Jigrāks 55; Turkmān Hazāras 311; **Persons**:—12—App. A, iii; 21; 23; 32; 48; 62; Jahāngīr 183, 254–94–302; 195–242–56; 249–272; 273; 330–41–96–7; 409; 641; 694–6; **Varia**:—fruit as food 3; *yāk*, *qūtās* App. M, xlvii; on joint-rule 293; epoch-making events 20, 35, 158, 182, 350; **Bābur**:—name 17; character 194, 320; Script App. Q, lxii; disastrous expedition (910 AH.) 241; relationships 246; single combats 349; Tramontane campaign 349 to 366; hospitality to exiles 350; a frontier affair 412; onset of last illness 706; **Haidar**:—his life saved 21; descent and other particulars 22; excuses his father 317; his list of tribes and chiefs valuable 415; his book of great and, perhaps, unique value for Bābur's *lacunæ* 347–8; referred to Preface xxxiv, xxxviii; his Codex xli, xlii (No. iv);

,, *-i-salāṭīn-i-afāghana*, Aḥmad Yādgār [*part-trs. E. & D. vol. I*]—Hindustan in 929 AH. 439–40; Pānīpat 474; Bābur's visit to Lāhor (936 AH.) 604–98 to 700, 703–6; Mundāhirs 700; anachronism 707; Bābur's "selection" of a successor 707; importance of its contribution for filling a *lacuna* 693, 702–6.

,, *-i-shahrukhī*, Niyāz Muḥ. *Khukandī*—tradition of a babe abandoned 358.

,, *-i-sher-shāhī*,—'Abbas Khān *Sarwānī*—"Shaikh" and "Mīān" 457; 'Aẓam Humāyūn 477; Sher Khān *Sūr* 659, 664.

,, *-i-Sind*, Muḥ. Ma'ṣūm *Bhakkarī*—a chief authority 336, 428; Shāh Beg 338, 427, (death) 437; sieges of Qandahār 431 to 436; the Inscription App. J, xxxiii.

Tarkhān—suitable meaning 31 [where add ref. E. & D.'s H. of I. i, 300, 20, 21, 498] privileges nine 250; not given to all Arghūn chiefs 249 n. 2; a merchant Tarkhān 133; marriages 49, Preface xxviii; revolt 61 to 64, 86, 112; see *s.n. Nine* & H. Beveridge's note on Etruscan names).

Tarkhān-nāma or *Arghūn-nāma*, Sayyid Jamāl—a useful source 428.

Tawārīkh-i-guzīda — (Select Histories) — fashions of sitting and kneeling 33, 54–9; Tūlūn Khwāja *Mughūl* 66; supplements the B.N. 127.

,, *-i-ḥāfī-i-raḥmat-khānī* (*part-trs. H. Beveridge* AQR. 1901)—Bībī Mubārika's marriage with Bābur 375, App. K, *An Afghan Legend.*

Taẕkirātu'sh-shu'arā (*Memoirs of Poets*) Daulat-shāh (*ed. Browne*)—[*see nn. on pp. named*], Akhsīkīti 9; dates of Maḥmūd *Mīrān-shāhī's* boyhood 46; Aḥmad *Mushtāq* 47; Hazārāspī 50; a couplet 85; Ḥusain *Bāī-qarā* 259–60–73; Gāzur-gāhī's good birth 281; Rabāt-i-sangbast 301–30; Bīh-būd Beg App. H, xxvi–vii; Rādagān-(town) 622; Jamī's birthplace 623;—the author in the battle of Chīkmān-sarāi 46; one of his collaterals 274.

,, *-i-Sulṭān Sātūq-būghrā Khān*—a seeming descendant 29.

,, *-i-Ṭahmāsp*, Shāh Ṭahmāsp *Ṣafawī* (*ed. D. C. Phillott*)—Div Sulṭān 635; battle of Jām 636.

,, *-i-Wāqi'āt* (*var.*) Jauhar (*trs. C. Stewart*)—outside literary criticism 619; a date at which Bābur's body lay near Kābul 709

Tents—*ālāchūq* 188; *aūtāgh* 339; *aq-awī*=*chādar* 169–88, 239, (flooded) 339, 678; *chār-ṭāq* 264; *khar-gāh* (=*kibitka*, and *ālāchuq* ?) 239, 678;—*shamīāna* (awning) 358; *tūnglūq* (roof-flap) 678; *pesh-khāna* 678.

Thesaurus, Meninsky—*bāghrīgarā* cry App. B, vi; *baḥrī-qūṭās* App. M, xlvi.

Thomas, F. W., Ph.D.—his help App. J, lxxiv with Preface lii.

Thorn-defences 487.

Timūr-pūlād, buys a Codex of the *Wāqi'āt-i-nāmā-i-padshahi q.v.*

Three (Turkī) MSS. from Kāshghar [*ed. Sir E. Denison Ross*]—the title *Jūn-wang* 567.

Through unknown Pamirs, O. Olufsen—yāk App. M, xlvii.

The Times—on diverse names of a single place 209.

Tongues and utterance—Andijān Turkī 4; Farsī (Persian)-speaking Sārts of Asfara 7; Kābul's polyglot tongues 207; Mughūli-

GSL

speaking Hazāras; Bābur on clipped Hindustānī utterance 380, and on the words Kās and Sawālak 485.
Trade—202–35, 331, 416–85.
Traditions—4, 5; one versed in 283–4.
Translators:—Bābur [*Wal.-nis.*]; E. C. Bayley (*Mirāt*); A. S. Beveridge [*s.n.*]; H. Beveridge [*s.n.*]; H. Blochmann [*s.n.*]; H. S. Jarrett [*Ayīn*]; J. Briggs [*Tār.-i-fir.*]; F. C. Charmoy [*Sharaf-n.*]; W. Clarke [*Dīwān-i-H.*]; A. P. de Courteille [*Mém.*]; Delmar-Morgan [*Mong.*]; Desmaisons [*Shaj.-i-Turk*]; E. B. Eastwick [*Gul.*]; H. M. Elliot and J. Dowson [*H. of I.*]; Forster & Daniel [*Life of O. de B.*]; C. Hamilton [*Hidāyat*]; W. H. Lowe & G. S. A. Ranking [*Munt.*]; H. E. Lloyd [*Travels*]; G. du Laurens [*Voyages*]; C. E. Markham [*Embassy*]; R. Marvin [*Ride*]; W. Ouseley [*Or. Geo.*]; F. Pélis de la Croix, *elder & younger* [*Histoire*]; G. S. A. Ranking [see *Lowe*; *and 'Arūa*]; H. G. Raverty [*Tab.-i-n.*]; M. Reinaud [*Géo.*]; G. Sale [*Qorān*]; B. R. Sanguinetti & T. Lee [*Travels*]; H. Sastri [*Rama.*]; C. Stewart [*Tas.*]; A. Vambéry [*Shai.-n.*]; Warner [*Shāh-n.*]; E. H. Whinfield [*Mas. and 'Umar*].
Transliteration 2.
Transmigration 518.
Travels in Bukhara, Sir Alex. Barnes—[*see nn. on pp. named*], *nuzla*, a Panj-āb disease 446; water-fall fishing 227;
,, *in Europe and Asia*, Peter Mundy (*ed. Sir R. Temple*)—*baoli* (a well) 533; Gūāliār 605.
,, *in India*, Pietro della Vallé—the morning-draught 395.
,, *of Ibn Batūta* (*trs. Sanguinetti & Lee*)—Samarkand the Protected City 75, Add. N.P. 75; Kajwarra 590; Rahīmdād 693; 704.
,, *in Kashmir*, G. T. Vigne—*yāk* and *kosh-gau* App. M, xlv–vii.
,, *in Panj-āb* (*etc.*), Mohan Lall—Herāt 305–6; Qandahār Insc: App. J; Bābur's burial-place 710.
,, *of the Russian Mission*, G. Timkovsky [*trs. H. E. Lloyd*] fruit as food 3.
,, *on the Upper and Lower Amoor*, T. W. Atkinson—*marāl* 8.
Tribes and Castes of the N.W.P. and Oude, W. Crooke—Jats 454; Nuhānī (or Luhānī) 455; Jaghat (serpent) 456; Tānk 481.
Tribes and other groups:—
Afghān:—'Abdu'r-rahmān 403; Afridī 411–2; Aūghān 217–20; Aūrūq-zāī 526; Bilūt 248; Bīrkī 207; Dilah-zāk 231, 367–94, 412–3; Dilah-zāk Ya'qūb-khail 394; Gagiānī 251; Ghilji 323–31; 'Isa-khail 233; Jasawāl *see*. Jaswān 462 Jalwānī *see* Index I; Khattak 439; Khirilchī 208–20–49–413; Khizr-khail 413; Khūgiānī 220; Kiwī 233; Kūrānī, Kārānī, Kararānī 233, 477; Landar 220; Lūdī 481, Index I; Lūdī *khaṣa-khail i.e.* Sahū-khail 465; Lūdī Sarang-khānī 540, 654; Luhānī *see* Nuhanī; Mahmand 221, 323–31–45; Muḥammad-zāī 376 (*where read as here*); Niā-zāī 233; Nuhānī 235 (*cf. 455 n.3*), Index I; Pānī 540; Pashāī(?) 207; Samū-khail (Khirilchī?) 412; Sūr 233; Tarkalānī 242, 424; Tūrī 220; Waziri 413; Yūsuf-zāī 231, 371–3–5–6, 400–10–19;—Afghāns of Bhīra 399, Ghazni 218, Sind riverain 218–36, Kābul 207–21;—Afghān thieves 208, 341; Afghān warrings in Hind 426, and power 480–1; serving Bābur 522; bad-mannered 451;—
Aūz-beg ("*Uzbeg*"):—2, 37, 135, 622, Index I; Aūz-beg Qāzzāq ("*Cossack*") 23; Aūz-beg Mankfit 195;—
Chaghatāī *i.e.* Chaghatāī Khān's tribal appanage):—extinct but for their Khāns in 1547 (953 AH.) *Tār. Rash.* trs. 149; near Herī 320, 689; its Kohbur clan 55; high families in, Sighal 66, 72, Nawā'ī's (*Index I*); distinguished from Mughūls 320, 351, Turks 340;—
Mughūls of the Horde:—105–92; *tūmans* (*groups of 10,000*):—Bārin 19, 473; Begchik 155; Chīrās 158; Sāgharīchī 20; *sub-divisions* (?):—Bīshāghī (*var.*) 473; Darbān 60; Itāraji 161, 415; Jalair 91; Kūnchī 20; Qālmāq 23; Manghīt 101[1];—Mughūl devastation 2, 98, 172, 362; faithlessness 105, 140 *etc.*; conduct on the Chīr 17, 31–4; the Horde divided 19; its dislike for cultivated lands 12; its *dīmāqs* in open land 221–54–55; return from enforced migration 20, 350–1;—
Turk:—Afshār 354; Aūighūr (*Awīghūr, Uīghūr*) 40, 118; its Ishrit clan 40, 65; Barlās 51, 429, Index I; Barlās Dūldāī 25, 37; Daryā-khānī 231, 589; Istiljū 353; Khilij 482; Qipchāq 19, 49;—Turks of Andijān 4, Kabul-lowlands 207–15–21; early Turk rulers of Kābul 200; contrasted with Sārts 149;— Uses of the name, "Mughūl and Turk" 158, 402, "Chaghatāī and Turk" 340; "Turk and Timūrid" one 380–2–4–8–9; probable statement of B.'s descent 320; his claim to rule in Hind, based on Turk descent 380–2–4; 476–9; Turk warning to Bīāna 529;—
Turkmān:— White-sheep Horde 49 (*where read White for "Black"*);—its Bahārlū clan 49; its Balāl 911 and Bayandar 279;—Black-sheep Horde 10;—Qajar 666; Turkmāns serve Bābur 47, 279, 361;—features 111;—Hazāras (*infra*); Tūrūq-shār 101;—

[1] Abūl-ghāzī classes Manghit with Mughul tribes, Radloff with Turk tribes (*Récueils p. 325*), Erskine says, "modern Nogais."

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA · सत्यमेव जयते

GSL

Various :—'Arab 207, 522, 631; Arlāt (Turk?) 265; Ashpārī 101; Asiqānchī (*var.* Saqānchī) 197; Balūchī 383, 459, 522; Bengali (race) 482; Būgiāl 452; Kāfir 212–3, 342–72, 421; Kakar (*var.*) 387–9; Kas 484; Kīb (or Kitib) 393; Meos 577; Parsī (Persian, race) 7, 207, 507–55; Ghiyās-wāl (or-dāl) 393; Gūjūr 250, 379–87, 454; Habshi 483; Janjuha-khail and Jūd-khail 379–80–87; Jats 250, 387, 454; Jigrāk (*var.*) 55, 101; Nīkdīrī (*var.*) 196–7, 200–1–7, 275, 326, 430 (*cf. E. & D. iv, 304, Tukdari*) Nil-ābī 379 (*see Index II*); Parājī 207;—Rājpūt;—Chūhān 573, Tānk sept 481;—Tājik 6, 207, 420, 535;—

Hazāra (1000) :—Gadāī or Kidi 250, Qārlūq 391–3, 403; Rustāq [or Rusta] 196; Sl. Mas'ūdī 221–8, 525; Turkmān 27, 214–51, 311 to 313; **Hazāras** :—w. of Kābul 200–7–22, 430; e. of the Sind 457, 522; in the open country of Ghazni 218, Kābul 221, Heri-rūd valley 308; refuge taken amongst 95; traversed 254.

Tribute—Jigrāk 55, Ghazni 240, Yūsuf-zāī 375, Bhīra 384, Kakar 391, Bajaur and Sawād 400, Balkh 402; Nijr-aū 421; Koh-i-jūd 379.

Tuhfa-i-sāmī (*a Turkī anthology*), Sām M. *Safawi*—Marwārīd 278; syphilis 279; a jeer 648.

The twelve Imāms, 258, 354.

Turkī tongue, Preface xxvii, Cap. iv.

Turkistan, Alex. Petzhold—Ṣārts 6.

,, E. Schuyler—[*see nn. on pp. named*],

Farghāna :—extent of 2, various 5, 6, 8; (wind) 9; (out-of-doors life) 29; *kūk-būrā* (a game) 39; Old Akhsī App. A; Ṣārts 6;—**Samarkand** :—67, 74–5–7, 83, (Aūrgūt) 68; Kesh 83; **Various** :—Sarā-tāq pass 129; Lake Iskandar *ib.* Hazrat Turkistan (shrine) 356; a distance 9; a lizard 501:—Bābur's Moscow Embassy App. Q, lxiii; Gregorief's *Russian Policy*, (*App. iv trs.*) Preface, liii.

,, Franz v. Schwarz—autumn fever 4; running-waters 4, recipe for *ma'jūn* 16; *yīghāch* (measure) 4; a Kīrghis measure 196; loess constructions 30; *charkh* (a hunting bird) 224; Mogol-tau 8; duties of the Lord of the Gate 24; *kūk būrā*, *baiga* 39; Greek descent 22; various App. A, v.

Tūzūk-i-jahāngīrī, Jahāngīr Pādshāh (*trs. Rogers and Beveridge*)—Bugials 452; Daulat Khān *Lūdī* 461; measures 189; birds 497; *kīshmish* 515; couplet 670; metrical amusement App. Q, lxvi–vii; its titles for Bābur varied *ib.* lxi; Jahāngīr's additions to the B.N. App. D, xiii, Preface xlv (No. viii), lii; his pilgrimage to B.'s burial-garden App. V, lxxx; his stay in B.'s Garden *ib.*

Noticeable words :—*tabalghū*, a [illegible] 11; *tāsh-chantāī*, outside bag (?) 160; *tāsh*, stone confused with *tāsh*, outer 3, 43, 78, 80, 160; *tatūrī*, complete, enclosed 109, 280, 501 (*where this better describes the koel's song*); *tīpūchāg* a horse and its points 38; *tīr-gīz*, arrow 34; *tīrik* 36, 362; P. *tū*, turn of a hill 205–8 *etc.*; *tūluk* vegetable food, other than grain 114; *tūnyārim*, half-dark 100; *tūrā* (ordinances) 38, *tūrā* (army mantelets) 108–13–53, 368, 469, 593; *tūmān*, 10,000, a district command 17; *tūq-bāī*, one using a standard 313; *tūlghuma s.n.* Military; *tusgāwal* 224, 314; *tughāī* and *tuqāī* 643.

'Umar Khayyām's Quatrains (*trs. E. H. Whinfield*) — a couplet Babur's words' recal 203.

Upper Basin of the Kābul-river, Sir C. Markham (*PRGS. 1879*) — Hindu-kush passes 204, maps of Koh-i-baba 216.

Veliaminof-Zernof, editor of the *Sharaf-nāma* 635 and *Abūshqa* App. Q, lxiii.

Vergleichunge-Tabellen des Muh. und Christlichen Zeitrechnung, F. Wüstenfeld—dates of 935 AH. 629, App. S.

Verses :—of untraced authorship 332, 316 and 670; verse-making 15, 22, 38–9, 46, 54, 111, 136–7, 154; Bābur's opinion of Nawā'ī's Turkī verse 271; Shaibanī's verses made public 329; composition on a model 448; — Metrical amusements 585–6, App. Q, lxv–vi.

Vikramāditya Era 79 (where *read* began).

Virgil — citron-juice as an antidote 511; Scorpio and Libra 623.

Visit to Ghuzni (etc.), G. T. Vigne—[*see nn. on pp. named*], boundary between Afghans and Khurāsān 200; Kābul-river *ib.*; 'Uqābain 201; rhubarb 203; ṣāhibī-grapes 203; Dūr-nāma 215; Running-sands 215; Pāmghān villages 216; *arghwān* 217;—various :—218–9, 224, 227; "Tānk" for Tāq 233; routes 208, 235; Bīlah on the Indus 237; *see* App. E, xxiii.

Visit to Kafiristan, W. W. Macnair (*PRGS. 1884*)—Ning-nahār App. E, xxiii.

Voyage dans le Turkistan, Fedtschenko (*trs. G. du Laurens*) — Sang-aina, Mirror-stone, 7.

,, *dans l'Asie septentrionale*, P. S. Pallas —*aq kiytk*, *argāli* (Ovis poli) 6.

,, *des Pélerins Bouddhistes*, S. A. Julien—Nanganahāra App. E, xviii.

Voyages en Perse et autres lieux d'Orient, Jean Chardin—lovers'-marks 16; square seal 28; Sikiz-yīldūz, Eight-stars 139; *kipkī* "casbeké" (a coin) 296; epistolary etiquette 332.

Wāqi'-nāma-i-pādshāhī (Record of Royal Acts), 'Abdu'l-wahhāb *akhund* of Ghaj-

GSL

davān (1709)—(*found mentioned as the Bābur-nāma, the "Bukhārā Bābur-nāma" and the "Bukhārā Compilation"*)—for its seeming author's colophon JRAS. 1900, p. 474 and Preface lvii; its divergence from the true text Preface xxxix, its element of true text (Kāmrān's tattered Codex) li; its dual purpose xxxix, lxii; its character xl; its stop-gaps xlv; its use by Leyden xlviii; **Described** (*as it is in Kehr's transcript*):—Preface, Cap. III, Parts I and III; its history liii, author and colophon lvii, (*cf.* JRAS. 1900, p. 474); its identity confused with Bābur's true text Preface, Cap. III, Part III;

ITS DESCENDANTS AND OFFTAKES Table lvii;—(*a*) Petrograd F. O. Codex (*an indirect copy (?)*, described by purchaser as *Bābur-nāma*, Preface xliii–iv;

(*b*) Pet. F. O. School of Oriental Languages Codex, entitled *Bābur-nāma*, scribe G. J. Kehr—referred to *in loco*:—diction of the Farghāna Section 1, of the Kābul Sect. 187, of the Hindūstān Sect. 445; its Persified character exemplified 147, 150, 167, and Add. Note, 177, (*cf. JRAS. 1908, pp. 76, 88*); its Latin version App. J, xxxv, Preface liv;—Other references 9, 18, 19, 44–8, 88, 164, 169;

Full contents:—Preface lii; their reconstruction by Ilminski lii–iv, (*cf. his own Preface JRAS. 1900 and a separate form in B.M., I.O., R.A.S. Libraries, etc.*); the "Fragments" Preface xlv (No. viii), lii, (*in loco*) 438, 549, (*a discussion*) 574, 630, 640 (*cf.* JRAS. 1900–6–8).

(*c*) The "*Bābur-nāma*" Imprint (*constructed and edited by*) N. I. Ilminski—referred to *in loco*, App. D, 227–59, 336, 420, App. F, xxxii; modelled on the L. and E. *Memoirs of Baber* 326, 337, App. T, lxxiv, Preface lii (*cf. Ilminski's Preface ref. supra*), 574; Preface:—its Kasan publication li; its deviation from its sole basis (*Kehr's Codex*) lii; Ilminski's work and some results lii, with n.1 mid-page, liv; his doubts and achievement of a Turki reading book *see* his own Preface ref. *supra*;

(*d*) *Mémoires de Bâber*, (*French trs. of Ilminski's Bābur-nāma*) A. Pavet de Courteille—referred to *in loco*, 215, 227, 346, 347, 407, 446, 478, 489, 559, 632, App. T, lxxviii, App. M, xlv;—the *Mubīn* not recognized 449, 630; an illness 619; mistakenly controverted 468; surmised ground on which it accepted the "Rescue Passage" App. D, xiv; its help in considering Shaikh Zain's compositions 553, 559;—questioned readings 223–5, 327–33–69, 421 (*chūrtīka*), 462–70, 534, 617–19–38–40–47; a surmise discussed 574;—reviewed by Defrémery 562; its title Preface xxxiii, translation li, source liv, diction lix.

Water—water-thief 109, -road 595; dug for 234; under-ground courses of 417.
Wedding-gifts—43, 400.
Wednesday (*Chār-shamba*)—coincidences of the day 71.
Wells—chambered (*wāīn, baoli*) 532–3; dug 548, 552; purified when new 634.
White cloth—traded 202; booty 233–4–5–7–8.
Whiteway, Mr. R. S.—his help App. B, vii.
Wilāyat = Kābul 414.
With the Kuram Field-Force, J. A. S. Colquhoun—a route 231.
Wine (*i.e. any fermented liquor*)—*'arāq* (spirit) 385–6–7–8, 453–61–76; mahuwa-flower 505; beer 423; cider (*chagīr*) 83, Add. Note, P. 83; wines of Bukhārā 83, Herī 265, Kābul:—Ālā-sāī 221, Dara-i-nūr 210, 410, App. G; Ghazni 461, Kābul-*tumān* 203, Nijr-aū 213;—Kāfiristan 211–12, 372;—**rules in use**:—drinking-days 33–4, 111, 447; one liquor only 386; no-pressure on a non-drinker 406–10; **wine-parties**:—Bābur protests against excess 398; excludes drunkards 419, is disgusted by drunken uproar 386 and by beer-intoxication 423; gives his followers freedom to do as Herātīs did 304; givers of "wines", Khw. Kalān 371–5, 461, Shāh Beg 400, the Bāī-qarā Mirzas 299, 302, Khw. Muh. 'Alī 411 (a business-party), 413;—**Bābur's breaches of Law** not committed till *cir.* his 28th year 83, 355; resisted temptation in Herāt 299, *etc.*—his parties associated with beauty of scene *e.g.* autumnal 414–16–18; in his gardens 412, 406 and 420; under a plane-tree 405, at Istālīf 406, near an illuminated camp 450; after and before long marches (*frequent*); mention made of (925 AH.) 375–85–88, 408–10–14–15–16–17–19; (926 AH.) 420–1–2–3–4; (932 AH.) 447, 450–53–61; (933 AH.) 537;—drinks a few cups to console 418, out of courtesy in a charmless place 424; "morning" 395–8, 415–20–22; gallops when not sober 388–98;—

Other Law-breakers Preface xxix, 16, 33–4, 45, 70 134, 259–68–73, (woman) 36, 417; Herātīs 259, Hisāris 42, Pich-Kāfirs 22;—

Parties accompanied by improvisation 26, dancing 299, music (*usually*); (*for return to obedience see Law and Index I s.n. Bābur*).
Wordsworth's "undying fish" recalled 305.
Workmen—Timūr's 77, 520; Bābur's 520, 634.
Wray, Mr. Cecil and Mr. Leonard—their help 495, 502.

Yajuj and Majuj (*Gog and Magog*) 560.
Yāqūt *see* Dictionary of Towns.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

Noticeable words:—*Yada-tāsh*, jade-stone *see* Magic; *yāghrūnchī*, divination from sheep's-blades 233; *yīghāch*, tree, wood 11, 81; *yīghāch see* Measures; *yīgīt*, a brave 16, 53, 70, App. H, xxvii; *yīlāq*, alp see *i.a.* Yār- and Būrka-; *yīnka-chīcha*, maternal-uncle's mother-in-law (?); *yīnkalīk*, levirate 23, 267, 306, 616; *yūkūnmāk*, to bend the knee 301; *yūsūnlūq*, hereditary 23.

Ẓafar-nāma (Book of Victory *i.e.* Tīmūr's) Maulana Sharafu'd-dīn 'Alī *Yazdī* —[*see nn. on pp. named*], places 10, 74–8, 83–4; persons 39, 272; meaning of Sawālak 485; Tīmūr's capture of Qarshī 134; his burial at a saint's feet 266; his workmen 77, 520; partly translated in *Histoire de Timūr Beg q.v.*; the book and its main basis, the *Malfūzāt-i-tīmūrī* Preface xxix, xxx, its author xxxiii.

Zainu'd-dīn *Khawāfī* (Shaikh Zain)'s writings —(1) *Ṭabaqāt-i-bāburī q.v.*; (2) *Mubīn*, a Commentary on Bābur's *Mubīn* 438; (3) *Farmān* announcing Bābur's renouncement of wine and remission of *tamghā*-tax 553; (4) *Fatḥ-nāma* of the victory at Kānwa 559 to 574; Bābur's reason for inserting it (4) in his book 559; the sole Letter of victory so preserved 561; grounds against supposing Bābur wrote a plain Turkī account of the battle 574.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

GSL

OMISSIONS FROM TRANSLATION AND FOOT-NOTES.

p.7 l.1 "turbulent" *add* They are notorious in Mawara'u'n-nahr for their bullyings.
p.27 l.5 "(1504)" *add* when, after taking Khusrau Shah, we besieged Muqim in Kabul.
p.31 l.1 "paid" *add* no (attention).
p.43 l.9 *enter* f. 24*b*.
ib. l.8 fr.ft. "Taghai" *add* and Auzun Hasan.
p.45 Sec. c, l.2 "good" *add* he never neglected the Prayers.
p.48 l.16 "grandmother" *add* Khan-zada Begim.
p.52 l.4 fr.ft. "childhood" *add* and had attained the rank of Beg.
p.88 l.9 Hasan *add* and Sl.Ahmad Tambal.
p.92 l.8 "on" *add* to Sang-zar.
p.95 l.12 "service" *add* did not stay in Khurasan but.
p.128 l.18 "two" *add* young (sons).
p.131 l.12 "Jan-wafa" *add* Mirza.
p.134 l.7 fr.ft. "that" *add* night that.
ib. l.3 fr.ft. "was" *add* in my 19th (lunar) year.
p.136 l.5 "was" *add* in my 19th (lunar) year.
p.139 l.11 fr.ft. *read* Jani Beg Sultan.
p.141 l.10 "Khusrau Shah" *add* my highly-favoured beg Qambar-i-ali *the Skinner Mughul*, not acting at such a time as this according to the favour he had received, came and took his wife from Samarkand; he too went to Khusrau Shah.
p.143 l.16 "that" *add* near Shutur-gardan.
p.152 l.12 fr.ft. "dead" *add* A few days later we went back to Dikh-kat.
p.164 Sec. d, l.6 fr.ft. "for" *add* Sairam.
p.201 l.12 *read* Kabul-fort.
p.205 l.10 fr.ft. *read* "are closed for" 4 or 5 months in winter. After crossing Shibr-tu people go on through Ab-dara. In the heats, when the waters come down in flood, these roads have the same rule as in winter ("because" *etc.*).
p.217 l.11 "Sih-yaran" *add* It became a very good-halting-place. I had a vine-yard planted on the hill above the seat.
p.221 Sec.h, at the beginning *insert* The mountains to the eastward of the cultivated land of Kabul are of two kinds as also are those to its westward ("Where the mountains" *etc.*).
p.230 last line "men" *add* Khusrau *Gagiani*.
p.247 l.1 "Qush-nadir" *add* meadow.
p.308 l.14 "ground" *add* Moreover it snowed incessantly and after leaving Chiragh-dan, not only was there very deep snow but the road was unknown.
p.391 March 18th "daroghа-ships" *add* Sangur Khan Qarluq and Mirza-i-malui Qarluq came leading 30 or 40 men of the Qarluq elders, made offering of a horse in mail, and waited on me. Came also the army of the Dilah-zak Afghans.
p.393 March 25th l.2 "out" *add* from the river's bank.
p.454 l.5 "boat" *add* There was a party; some drinking *'araq*, some beer. After leaving the boat at the Bed-time Prayer, there was more drinking in the *khirgah* (tent). For the good of the horses, we gave them a day's breathing on the bank of this water.
p.468 l.3 "sent" *add* Yunas-i-'ali and Ahmadi and ("'Abdu' l-lah").
p.484 l.1 "Rao" *add* with four or five thousand Pagans.
p.498 (*s.n.* florican), "colour" *add* The flesh of the florican is very delicate. As the *kharchal* (Indian buzzard) resembles the *tughdaq* (great buzzard) so the *chars* (florican) resembles the *tughdiri*.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

ib. (*s.n.* sand-grouse) "Tramontana" *add* the blackness of its breast is less deep, its cry also is sharper.

p. 500 after l. 11 "eagle" *add* (new para.) Another is the buzzard (T. *sar*); its tail and back are red.

p. 506 (*s.n. kamrak*) "long" *add* It has no stone.

p. 507 n. 3 "name" *add* also; "plantain" *add* (banana).

p. 510 l. 5 see App. O, p. liv for *addendum*.

p. 529 l. 4 fr. ft. "Dulpur" *add* Gualiar.

p. 595 l. 19 "other" read 2 or 3 (places); the Pagans in the *du-tahi* began to run away; "the *du-tahi* was taken."

p. 603 l. 7 fr. ft. "(366*b*)" *add* and between Ghazipur and Banaras (p. 502).

p. 674 l. 2 "river" *add* in his mail.

p. 678 l. 2 "amirs" *add* Sultan.

p. 679 l. 8 fr. ft. "given" *add* It was settled that a son of each of them should be always in waiting in Agra; l. 7 fr. ft. "Araish" *add* and two others; l. 2 fr. ft. "Saru" *add* towards Oude.

p. 689 l. 2 fr. ft. "laks" *add* and a head-to-foot (dress).

App. Q l. 1 "interpret" add those of.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
संस्कृति मंत्रालय · भारत सरकार

GSL

CORRIGENDA.

To ensure notice many of these are entered in the Indices.

Pages

6 l.4 "meadow" *read* plain (*maidan*).
11 n.4, "siyar" unaccented; (H.S.) ii *read* iii n.n. pp. 18, 38, 48, 244.
12 n.4 l.3 "attack in" *read* attacking.
14 l.3 "and" *read* who.
16 l.10 n. ref. "3" *tr. to* "amorous".
24 n.1 "932" *read* 923.
27 para.2 *read* "Baba 'Ali Beg's Baba-quli".
28 l.8 "leaders" *read* Mughul mirzadas.
29 n.6 l.5 "then" *read* his.
37 l.8 "916" *read* 917; and tr. nn. 2 and 3.
38 l.9 "favour" *run on* to Ahmad.
44 l.9 55 l.12 *delete* "Sayyid".
46 l.12 *read* Chikman.
49 l.3 "Black" *read* White.
51 l.12 fr. ft. "Badakhshan" read Hisar.
55 "f. 34" *read* f. 32*b*.
57 l.1, enter f. 33 and *move* "f. 33*b*" to 58 l. 2.
61 l.4 "Beg" *read* Baba-quli Beg.
68 l.10 fr. ft. *tr.* n. ref. 4 to "Aurgut".
69 n.2, read *aunutung*; and *tr. nakunid* and *bakunid*.
79 l.5 tr. n.ref. 3 to *qibla*; in author's n. *read* Batalmius; and in n.4 *read Ayin*.
85 l.9 *read* 851 A.H.–1447 A.D.; l.3 fr.ft. *move* "Jumada I, 22, 855 A.H." to p.86 l.1, after "years".
94 l.6 "Chirik" *read* Char-yak.
95 l.2 fr.ft. "Aubaj" *read* Char-jui.
96 last line "Qasim" *read* Kamal (or Kahal).
109 l.16 "qasim" *read* qadus.
ib. n.5 l.3 *read* grand "father".
117 n.2 "909" *read* 908.
122 n.4 "*bulghar*" *read buljar*.
129 l.14 "*daban*" *read kutal*.
131 ll.3-4 fr.ft. *read* Khan-quli and Karim-dad.
134 l.3 fr.ft. and 136 l. 5 *read* in my 19th (lunar) year.
144 para.3 "rain" *read* grain.
148 n.2 "f. 18" *read* f. 118.
149 l.17 *read* Khanim.
154 n.3 "f. 183*b*" *read* f. 103*b* and for f. 264*b read* f. 264.
168 Sect. heading "Kasan" *read* Karnan.
175 l.11 *read* Mirza-quli.
183 last line "Kulja" *read* Khuldja.
192 l.3 *read* Taliqan.
194 l.12 *read* Quhlugha.

Pages

ib. n.3 *read* Bai-sunghar.
204 l.16 *read* Curriers'.
205 l.5 *read* Sir; l.13 *read* Wa(lian); l.14 *read* Qibchaq.
205 l.10 fr.ft. "three or four" *read* four or five (cf. omissions p.205).
211 para. 3, end, "920" *read* 924.
212 n.2 l.2 *read chighmaq*.
213 n.5 "*parwan*" *read parran*; and nn.5, 6, 7 *read* Blanford.
244 ll.8 and 25 "page" *read* preferably, brave; l.19 *read* gallopers.
273 n.2 *read* grand-"daughter".
282 n.3 l.2 "345" *read* 348–9.
289 l.5 "wonderful" *read* metaphorist.
342 mid-page *read* Pur-amin.
344 last line "Appendix" *read* Trs.' note 711.
351 l.15 "Akhsi" *read* Archian.
387 n.3 *delete* sentence 2.
410 last line "*khuntul*" *read hunzal*.
414 l.2 "18th" *read* 13th; and l.2 fr.ft. "purslain" *read* poplar.
438 l.15 "son" *read* grandson.
447 n.3 para.2 l.1 "month" *read* week.
470 n. l.5 fr.ft. "p.66" *read* p.166.
482 n.3 "Gujrat" *read* Malwa.
485 sec.e l.7 "Gumti *read* Gui.
499 l.17 "*yak-rang*" *read bak-ding* (see Add. Note P.499).
500 l.15 *s.n.* crow "*qarcha*" *read qargha*; n. 6 "f. 136" *read* f. 135.
505 l.6 tr. n.ref. "2" to, *buia*.
520 n.1 "1854" *read* 1845.
534 l.2 fr.ft. "and" *read* 932.
535 l.2 fr.ft. *delete* "others".
579 l.8 "April 13th" *read* April 3rd.
591 n.2 "*qurughir read quruqtur*.
604 n.l.1 *read Afaghana*.
616 l.5 *read* Madhakur; and Sect. m "*qara-su*" *read darya qaraghi* or *qaraghina*.
620 l.7 *rahim read rahman*.
621 l.11 after "servants" *read* Beg-gina "had come".
622 l.12 *read* Siunjuk; l.13 Tashkint.
631 l.13 *delete* the parenthesis (see Add. Note P.631).
632 l.4 *read* Farrukh.
636 l.7 "rest" *read* eight others.
640 l.1 *read* quli.
643 (Feb. 4th) "Muhammad" *read* Mahmud.
644 n.5 "323" *read* 232.
699 l.13 "935" *read* 938.
713 l.3 *read* Saliha; and l.11 fr.ft. Miran-shahi.

ADDITIONAL NOTES

P. 16 l. 11.—Nigāmī mentions "lover's marks" where a rebel chieftain commenting on Khusrau's unfitness to rule by reason of his infatuation for Shīrīn, says, "*Hinoz az'āshīqbāzī garmi dāgh ast.*" (H.B.)

P. 22 n. 2.—Closer acquaintance with related books leads me to delete the words "Chaghatāī Mughūl" from Haidar *Dūghlāt's* tribal designations (p. 22, n. 2, l. 1). (1) My "Chaghatāī" had warrant (now rejected) in Haidar's statement (T.R. trs. p. 3) that the Dūghlāt amīrs were of the same stock (*abna'-i-jins*) as the Chaghatāī Khāqāns. But the Dūghlāt off-take from the common stem was of earlier date than Chingiz Khān's, hence, his son's name "Chaghatāī" is a misnomer for Dūghlāts. (2) As for "Mūghūl" to designate Dūghlāt, and also Chaghatāī chiefs—guidance for us rests with the chiefs themselves: these certainly (as did also the Begchik chiefs) held themselves apart from "Mughūls of the horde" and begs of the horde—as apart they had become by status as chiefs, by intermarriage, by education, and by observance of the amenities of civilized life. To describe Dūghlāt, Chaghatāī and Begchik chiefs in Bābur's day as Mughūls is against their self-classification and is a discourtesy. A clear instance of need of caution in the use of the word Mughūl is that of 'Alī-sher *Nawā'ī Chaghatāī*. (Cf. Abū'l-ghāzī's accounts of the formation of several tribes.) (3) That "Mughūl" described for Hindustānis Bābur's invading and conquering armies does not obliterate distinctions in its chiefs. Mughūls of the horde followed Timūrids when to do so suited them; there were also in Bābur's armies several chiefs of the ruling Chaghatāī family, brothers of The Khān, Sa'īd (*see* Chīn-timūr, Aīsan-timūr, Tūkhta-būghā). With these must have been their following of "Mughūls of the horde".

P. 34 l. 12.—"With the goshawks" translates *qīrchīgha bīla* of the Elph. MS. (f. 12*b*) where it is explained marginally by *ba bāzī*, with the falcon or goshawk. The Ḥai. MS. however has, in its text, *pāzī bīla* which may mean with arrows having points (*Sanglākh* f. 144*b* quoting this passage). Ilminski has no answering word (*Mém.* i, 19). Muh. *Shīrāzī* [p. 13 l. 11 fr. ft.] writes *ba bāzi miandākhtan*.

P. 39.—The *Ḥabību's-siyar* (lith. ed. iii, 217 l. 16) writes of Sayyid Murād *Aūghlāqchī* (the father or g.f. of Yūsuf) that he (who had, Bābur says, come from the Mughūl horde) held high rank under Abū-sa'īd Mīrzā, joined Husian *Bāī-qarā* after the Mīrzā's defeat and death (873 A.H.), and (p. 218) was killed in defeat by Amīr 'Alī *Jalāīr* who was commanding for Yādgār-i-muḥammad *Shāh-rukhī*.

P. 49.—An *Aīmāq* is a division of persons and not of territory. In Mongolia under the Chinese Government it answers to khanate. A Khān is at the head of an *aīmāq*. Aīmāqs are divided into *koshung*, *i.e.* banners (*Mongolia*, N. Prejevalsky trs. E. Delmar Morgan, ii, 53).

P. 75 and n. 1.—For an explanation, provided in 94 AH., of why Samarkand was called *Baldat-i-mahfūza*, the Guarded-city, see Daulat-shāh, Browne's ed. *s.n.* Qulaiba p. 443.

P. 85 n. 2.—The reference to the *Ḥabību's-siyar* confuses two cases of parricide:—'Abdu'l-latīf's of Aulugh Beg (853–1447) to which H.S. refers [Vol. III, Part 2, p. 163, l. 13 fr. ft.] with (one of 7–628) Shīrūya's of Khusrau Parvīz (H.S. Vol. I, Part 2, p. 44, l. 11 fr. ft.) where the parricide's sister tells him that the murderer of his father (and 15 brothers) would eventually be punished by God, and (a little lower) the couplet Bābur quotes (p. 85) is entered (H.B.).

P. 154 n. 3.—The Persian phrase in the *Siyāsat-nāma* which describes the numbering of the army (T. *dīm kūrnāk*) is *ba sar-i-tāzīāna shumurdan*. Schafer translates *tāzīāna* by *cravache*. I have nowhere found how the whip was used; (cf. S.N. Pers. text p. 15 l. 5).

P. 171 n. 1.—Closer acquaintance with Bābur's use of *daryā*, *rūd*, *sū*, the first of which he reserves for a great river, casts doubt on my suggestion that *daryā* may stand for the Kāsān-water. But the narrative supports what I have noted.

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
878
GSL

The "upper villages" of Akhsī might be, however, those higher up on the Saihūn-daryā (Sīr-daryā).

P. 189 and n. 1.—A third and perhaps here better rendering of *bī bāqī* is that of p. 662 (*s.d.* April 10th), "leaving none behind."

P. 196.—The *Habību's-siyar* (lith. ed. iii, 250 l. 11 fr. ft.) writes of *barādarān* of Khusrau Shāh, Amīr Walī and Pīr Walī. As it is improbable that two brothers (Anglicé) would be called Walī, it may be right to translate *barādarān* by brethren, and to understand a brother and a cousin. Bābur mentions only the brother Walī.

P. 223 ll. 1–3 fr. ft.—The French translation, differing from 'Abdu'r-rahim's and Erskine's, reads Bābur as saying of the ranges separating the cultivated lands of Kabul, that they are *comme des ponts de trèfle*, but this does not suit the height and sometimes permanent snows of some of the separating ranges.—My bald "(great) dams" should have been expanded to suit the meaning (as I take it to be) of the words *Yūr-ūnchaqā pul-dīk*, like embankments (*pul*) against going (*yūr*) further; (so far, *ūncha*). Cf. Griffiths' *Journal*, p. 431).

P. 251.—Nizāmī expresses the opinion that "Fate is an avenging servitor" but not in the words used by Bābur (p. 251). He does this when moralizing on Farhad's death, brought about by Khusrau's trick and casting the doer into dread of vengeance (H. B.).

P. 266 n. 7.—On p. 266 Bābur allots three daughters to Pāpā Aghācha and on p. 269 four. Various details make for four. But, if four, the total of eleven (p. 261) is exceeded.

P. 276 para. 3.—Attention is attracted on this page to the unusual circumstance that a parent and child are both called by the same name, Junaid. One other instance is found in the *Bābur-nāma*, that of Bābur's wife Ma'ṣuma and her daughter. Perhaps "Junaid" like "Ma'ṣūma" was the name given to the child because birth closely followed the death of the parent (*see s.n.* Ma'ṣūma).

P. 277.—Concerning Bih-būd Beg the *Shaibānī-nāma* gives the following information:—he was in command in Khwārizm and Khīva when Shaibānī moved against Chīn *Ṣāfī* (910 AH.), and spite of his name, was unpopular (Vambéry's ed. 184, 186). Vambéry's note 88 says he is mentioned in the (anonymous) prose *Shaibānī-nāma*, Russian trs. p. lxi.

P. 372 l. 2 fr. ft.—Where the Hai. MS. and Kāsān Imp. have *mu'āraẓ*, rival, E. and de C. translate by representative, but the following circumstances favour "rival":—Wāis was with Bābur (pp. 374–6) and would need no representative. His arrival is not recorded; no introductory particulars are given of him where his name is first found (p. 372); therefore he is likely to have joined Bābur in the time of the gap of 924 AH. (p. 366), before the siege of Bajaur-fort and before 'Alā'u'd-dīn did so. The two Sawādī chiefs received gifts and left together (p. 376).

P. 393 l. 4.—In this couplet the point lies in the double-meaning of *ra'iyat*, subject and peasant.

P. 401.—Under date Thursday 25th Bābur mentions an appointment to read *fiqah sabaqī* to him. Erskine translated this by "Sacred extracts from the Qorān" (I followed this). But "lessons in theology" may be a better rendering—as more literal and as allowing for the use of other writings than the Qorān. A correspondent Mr. G. Yazdānī (Gov. Epigraphist for Muslim Inscriptions, Haidarabad) tells us that it is customary amongst Muslims to recite religious books on Thursdays.

P. 404 l. 7 fr. ft.—Bābā Qashqa (or Qāshqā)'s family-group is somewhat interesting as that of loyal and capable men of Mughūl birth who served Bābur and Humāyūn. It must have joined Bābur in what is now the gap between 914 and 925 AH. because not mentioned earlier and because he is first mentioned in 925 AH. without introductory particulars. The following details supplement *Bābur-nāma* information about the group:—(1) Of Bāba Qashqa's murder by Muḥammad-i-zamān *Bāī-qarā* Gul-hadan (f. 23) makes record, and Badāyūnī (Bib. Ind. ed. i, 450) says that (*cir.* 952 AH.) when Bābā's son Ḥājī Muḥ. Khān *Kūkī* had pursued and overtaken the rebel Kāmrān, the Mīrzā asked, as though questioning the Khān's ground of hostility to himself, "But did I kill thy father

Bābā Qashqa?" (*Pidrat Bābā Qashqa magar man kushta am*?).—(2) Of the death of Bābā Qashqa's brother "Kūkī", Abū'l-faẓl records that he was killed in Hindūstān by Muḥammad Sl. M. *Bāī-qarā* (952 AH.), and that Kūkī's nephew Shāh Muḥ. (*see* p. 668) retaliated (955 AH.) by arrow-shooting one of Muḥ. Sl. Mīrzā's sons. This was done when Shāh Muḥ. was crossing Mīnār-pass on his return journey from sharing Humāyūn's exile in Persia (*see* Jauhar).—(3) Hāji Muḥ. Khān *Kūkī* and Shāh Muḥammad Khān appear to have been sons of Bābā Qashqa and nephews of "Kūkī" (*supra*). They were devoted servants of Humāyūn but were put to death by him in 958 AH.–1551 AD. (cf. Erskine's *H. of I. Humāyūn*).—(4) About the word *Kūkī* dictionaries afford no warrant for taking it to mean foster-brother (*kohah*). Chingīz Khān had a beg known as Kūk or Kouk (or Gūk) and one of his own grandsons used the same style. It may link the Bābā Qashqā group with the Chingīz Khānid Kūkī, either as descendants or as hereditary adherents, or as both. (*See* Abū'l-ghāzī's *Shajarat-i-Turk*, trs. Désmaisons, Index *s.n. Kouk* and also its accounts of the origin of several tribal groups.)

P. 416.—The line quoted by 'Abdu'l-lāh is from the *Anwār-i-suhailī*, Book II, Story i. Eastwick translates it and its immediate context thus:—

"People follow the faith of their kings."

"My heart is like a tulip scorched and by sighings flame;

"In all thou seest, their hearts are scorched and stained the same." (H.B.)

The offence of the quotation appears to have been against Khalīfa, and might be a suggestion that he followed Bābur in breach of Law by using wine.

P. 487 n. 2.—The following passages complete the note on *wulsa* quoted by Erskine from Col. Mark Wilks' *Historical Sketches* and show how the word is used:—

"During the absence of Major Lawrence from Trichinopoly, the town had been completely depopulated by the removal of the whole *Wulsa* to seek for food elsewhere, and the enemy had been earnestly occupied in endeavouring to surprise the garrison." (Here follows Erskine's quotation *see in loco* p. 487).

"The people of a district thus deserting their homes are called the *Wulsa* of that district, a state of utmost misery, involving precaution against incessant war and unpitying depredation—so peculiar a description as to require in any of the languages of Europe a long circumlocution, is expressed *in all the languages of Deckan and the south of India by a single word.* No proofs can be accumulated from the most profound research which shall describe the immemorial condition of the people of India with more precision than this single word. It is a bright distinction that the *Wulsa* never departs on the approach of a British army when this is unaccompanied by Indian allies."—By clerical error in the final para. of my note *ūlvash* is entered for *ūlvan* [Molesworth, any desolating calamity].

P. 540 n. 4.—An explanation of Bābur's use of Shāh-zāda as Tahmāsp's title may well be that this title answers to the Timūrid one Mīr-zāda, Mīrzā. If so, Bābur's change to "Shāh" (p. 635) may recognize supremacy by victory, such as he had claimed for himself in 913 AH. when he changed his Timūrid "Mīrzā" for "Pādshāh".

P. 557.—Ḥusain *Kashifī*, also, quotes Firdausī's couplet in the *Anwār-i-suhailī* (Cap. I, Story XXI), a book dedicated to Shaikh Aḥmad *Suhailī* (p. 277) and of earlier date than the *Bābur-nāma*. Its author died in 910 AH.–1505 AD.

P. 576 n. 1.—Tod's statement (quoted in my n. 1) that "the year of Rānā Sangā's defeat (933 AH.) was the last of his existence" cannot be strictly correct because Bābur's statement (p. 598) of intending attack on him in Chitor allows him to have been alive in 934 AH. (1528 AD.). The death occurred, "not without suspicion of poison," says Tod, when the Rānā had moved against Irij then held for Bābur; it will have been long enough before the end of 934 AH. to allow an envoy from his son Bikramājīt to wait on Bābur in that year (pp. 603, 612). Bābur's record of it may safely be inferred lost with the once-existent matter of 934 AH.

P. 631.—My husband has ascertained that the "Sayyid Dakni" of p. 631 is Sayyid Shāh Ṭāhir *Dakhnī* (*Deccanī*) the Shiite apostle of Southern India, who in 935 AH. was sent to Bābur with a letter from Burhān Niẓām Shāh of Ahmadnagar, in which (if there were not two embassies) congratulation was made on

MINISTRY OF CULTURE · GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
880

GSL

the conquest of Dihlī and help asked against Bahādur Shāh *Gujrāti*. A second but earlier mention of "Sayyid *Dakni*" (*Zakni*, *Rukni*?) *Shīrāzī* is on p. 619. Whether the two entries refer to Shāh Ṭāhir nothing makes clear. The cognomen Shīrāzī disassociates them. It is always to be kept in mind that preliminary events are frequently lost in gaps; one such will be the arrivals of the various envoys, mentioned on p. 630, whose places of honour are specified on p. 631. Much is on record about Sayyid Shāh Ṭāhir *Dakni* and particulars of his life are available in the histories by Badāyūnī (Ranking trs.) and Firishta Nawal Kishor ed. p. 105); B.M. Harleyan MS. No. 199 contains his letters (*see* Rieu's Pers. Cat. p. 395).

P. 699 and n. 3.—The particulars given by the *Ṭabaqāt-i-akbarī* about Multān at this date (932–4 AH.) are as follows:—After Bābur took the Panj-āb, he ordered Shāh Ḥasan *Arghūn* to attempt Multān, then held by one Sl. Maḥmūd who, dying, was succeeded by an infant son Ḥusain. Shāh Ḥasan took Multān after a 16 (lunar) months' siege, at the end of 934 AH. (in a B.N. *lacuna* therefore), looted and slaughtered in it, and then returned to Tatta. On this Langar Khān took possession of it (H.B.). What part 'Askarī (*ær.* 12) had in the matter is yet to learn; possibly he was nominated to its command and then recalled as Bābur mentions (935 AH.).

21661

Stephen Austin and Sons, Ltd., Printers, Hertford.